CFA level III

学习笔记



版本控制

版本号	日期	修改人	说明	
V.1.0	2017-09-14	Chris Lan zengshi	文档建立	
V.1.1	2018-01-29	Chris Lan zengshi	补充及修正	
V.1.2	2018-05-28	Chris Lan zengshi	修正错误	
作者微信: 13165088879 (笔记用于学习交流,请勿用于商业目的)				

目录

SS 1-2	2: ETHICS & PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS	3
SS 3:	BEHAVIORAL FINANCE	18
SS 4:	PRIVATE WEALTH MANAGEMENT (1)	28
SS 5:	PRIVATE WEALTH MANAGEMENT (2)	37
SS 6:	PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT FOR INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS	43
SS 7:	APPLICATIONS OF ECONOMIC ANALYSIS TO PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT	51
SS 8:	ASSET ALLOCATION AND RELATED DECISIONS AND IN PORTFOLIO MANAGEMEN	T (1) 60
SS 9:	ASSET ALLOCATION AND RELATED DECISIONS AND IN PORTFOLIO MANAGEMEN	T (2) 70
SS 10	: FIXED-INCOME PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT (1)	82
SS 11:	: FIXED-INCOME PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT (2)	93
SS 12	: EQUITY PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT	108
SS 13	: ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS FOR PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT	114
SS 14	: RISK MANAGEMENT	122
SS 15	: RISK MANAGEMENT APPLICATIONS OF DERIVATIVES	130
SS 16	: TRADING, MONITORING AND REBALANCING	144
SS 17	: PERFORMANCE EVALUATION AND ATTRIBUTION	152
	: GLOBAL INVESTMENT PERFORMANCE STANDARDS	

SS 1-2: ETHICS & PROFESSIONAL STANDARDS

R1 Code of Ethics and Standards of Professional Conduct

✓ Primary Principles: 两个主要原则

- fairness of the process to members and candidates: 公平的对待 members 和 candidates
- confidentiality of the proceedings:诉讼的程序保密

可能被调查的几种信息来源:

- Self-disclosure: 自我披露
- Written complaints: 书面的投诉
- through public sources: 公开资源
- violation during the examination: 违反 CFA 考试规定

一旦调査开始,professional conduct staff 会要求 members 或 candidates 进行解释,并进行:

- interview the subject member or candidate: 访问当事的 members 或 candidates
- interview the complainant or other third parties:访问投诉人或第三方
- collect documents and records relevant to the investigation: 收集文档并记录相关的调查

Designated Officer 可以做如下决定:

- that no disciplinary sanctions are appropriate: 不进行处罚
- to issue a cautionary letter: 发警告信
- to discipline the member or candidate: 处罚 members 或 candidates

Disciplinary Review Committee(DRC): 纪律检查委员会,检查<u>七大准则</u>是否正确实施; 检查金融行业 从业者的日常行为是否遵守了 **PCP(Professional Conduct Program)**

Hearing Panel: 听证会由 <u>Disciplinary Review Committee(DRC)</u>成员和 CFA 协会会员志愿者组成<u>(CFA</u> Institute member volunteers)

√如果 CFA 协会对你进行调查,协会鼓励你提供一些客户的保密信息,但不是强制要求的,处罚的三个阶段(从轻到重): public censure(公开批评),suspension of membership and use of the CFA designation(暂停),and revocation of the CFA charter(吊销)

注意: code and standards 针对 individual investment professionals 是 mandatory 的; Asset Manager Code (AMC) 针对 specifically for firms 是 voluntary

Ethics & Professional Standards (六大纲领)作为金融从业人员,必须保证良好的行为,同时促进资本市场可持续发展,使资本市场达到一种完美的状态,会员必须做到:

- 1. Code: 个人行为要诚信(integrity)、有能力(competence)、勤勉(diligence)、尊重(respect),确保与投资公众(public)、客户(clients)、合格潜在客户(prospective clients)、雇主(employers)、雇员(employees)、同事(colleagues)以及其它全球资本市场参与者的投资行为中遵守职业道德(in an ethical manner)
- 2. 确保投资行为中的诚信,把客户的利益放在个人利益之上
- 3. 当进行投资分析、投资推荐、投资活动以及从事其它专业活动时,使用合理的关注<u>(reasonable care)</u>和独立的执行<u>(exercise independent)</u>进行专业的判断
- 4. 促进诚信以及社会能够最终从资本市场获益的可行性(资本市场的利益高于一切)
- 5. 实践和鼓励其它的专业人员在他们的行为中体现专业性和职业道德
- 6. 保持和提高自己的专业能力,力求保持和提高其他投资专业人员的能力

R2 Guidance for Standards I - VII

I.Professionalism: 专业性

A.Knowledge of the law: 法律知识

- ◆ **知法**: 了解与<u>工作相关</u>的法律,例如:某从业人员是在投行从事兼并收购的工作,因此他只需要了解与之相关的法律即可,不需要了解与之无关的法律,例如:有关 IPO 的法律
- ◆ 守法: 遵守更为严格(most strict)的法律,即法律条款与 CFA 协会条款中<u>更为严格</u>的要求(包括本国,公司所属国,工作所在国,产品发行地,客户国家,协会规定)

◆ **违法行为处理**: 第一种情况: 发现违法行为已经成为事实(例如: 有人确切地在做假账),首先应该先报告给上司或公司合规部门,如果上司或合规部门对违法行为进行了制止,则本人可以继续留在公司工作;如果上司或合规部门未对违法行为加以制止(或违法行为就是受高层指使),这时自己应该记录好相应的文档,并从工作中脱离出来(退出的几种形式: 1.移除自己名字,2请求更换工作任务,3.拒绝对当前客户提供服务)。第二种情况: 只是怀疑存在违法行为,首先咨询上司、合规部门或者外部法律咨询,但如果资讯方提供的意见或结果本身是错误的,自己也不能免责

细节:

- ◆ 不需要成为法律专家,只需了解和工作相关的法律即可
- ◆ 协会<u>没有要求</u>一定要将违法的行为向政府汇报,也没有规定一定要向协会汇报,但是鼓励向协会揭发,如果法律规定发现违规行为要向政府汇报,此时应该按法律规定行事
- ◆ 如果协会规定与法律规定相冲突,此时应该以法律为准(一定不能违法)
- ◆ 如果确切发现违法行为,而自己因为个人利益或其它原因的无作为等同于自己违法
- ◆ 如果要到国外进行投资,需要先做尽职调查,先了解当地的法律法规,并查看投资的产品是否符合 当地的法律法规
- ◆ 如果当地法律没有明确禁止金融从业人员从事 IPO,则本人经公司事先批准可以参与 IPO,参加定向增发要有更严格的限制,但一定不能参与超额认购

B.Independence and objectivity: 独立客观性

- ◆ 核心因素: 威逼利诱, 原则是分析师或基金经理的行为在客户眼中是否影响了客观独立性
- ◆ **分析师**: 1.贵重礼物不能收,非常稀少(限量的)的礼物不能收(例如: 世界杯门票),2.上市公司以将兼并收购业务或其它业务交给分析师所在投行为<u>条件</u>,要求分析师按他们希望的结果来写研报是不允许的,★3.一般的象征性礼品 **modest、normal gift、token**(小杯子、小本子之类)可以收,但必须要进行披露(broker 给基金经理,上市公司给 analyst,只能是 token)
- ◆ 所谓客观独立是站在客户的角度来考虑的,以客户的角度来考虑分析师或基金经理的客观和独立性
- ◆ 经济商 (Broker) 给基金经理送礼物,希望基金经理在他们的平台开户,这种礼物是不能收的
- ◆ **基金经理**:客户为了答谢基金经理好的业绩,所给基金经理的奖励性礼物(bonuses、tips)是可以收的,可以事后披露,但是基金经理尽可能<u>事前</u>向雇主披露且得到<u>雇主的书面确认</u>(雇主会衡量此事,会不会伤害其它用户的利益)之后才可以收受;如果雇主不允许收受,则不能收客户的礼物;如果没有得到雇主书面确认就收受这类礼物,属于违反 Additional compensation arrangements,但并不违反独立客户
- ◆ 分析师和基金经理面对威胁时,其判断不能被影响
- ◆ 卖方分析师不能受买方基金经理的各类威胁(例如:以威胁影响卖方分析师或分析师所在公司利益的方式为前提,要求分析师按买方的要求写研报,例如:基金经理重仓某支股票,基金经理就可能威胁分析师按他的要求写研报,否则就威胁从分析师所在公司的交易平台撤走)
- ◆ 关于选择外部基金经理: 公司会聘用基金经理为其管理养老金基金,而基金经理在管理养老金时,可能想投资不熟悉投资领域,这时基金经理会通过聘请外部基金经理的方式进行投资(第三方受托人),此时相当于基金经理将业务交给外部基金经理,这种情况下外部基金经理以获得相应业务为前提,送给基金经理的礼物(好处)是不能收的,同时基金经理也不能以获得公司养老金的业务为前提,给公司的相应决策人送礼物(例如:基金经理出资资助某人竞选工会主席,且要求某人承诺当选后要将公司的养老金交由基金经理管理,这种情况称为: pay to play scandal),基金经理在选择外部基金经理时要以客户的利益为先,应该通过尽职调查后,选择最好的执行,最低的价格的外部基金经理
- ◆ 研究部与投行部的关系: 防止研究部为了投行部的业绩而作出不客观的研报,部门之间必须建立物理及信息的防火墙(投行部(IBD)与所有部门都要隔离,因为投行部是可以合法的获得内幕消息,特别强调研究部和投行部的隔离),防火墙的两个重要要素: 1.研究部的上司和投行部的上司不能是同一个人,且禁止两个部门的高层互相拥有决策权; 2.禁止研究部的奖金机制与投行部的业绩挂钩(not link analyst remuneration directly to investment banking),但与全公司业绩挂钩是允许的。研究部和投行部尽量不要一起工作,但也有特殊情况,例如: 投行部要做 IPO 路演,这时可以邀请

研究部的分析师一起进行讲解,但是路演中分析师必须保持客观独立,即<u>只能陈述事实</u>(例如:财报中的数据),不能发表个人的观点(例如:不能推荐投资者具体的投资行为,即买、卖等)

◆ **业绩分析师的规定(新增)**: 投资业绩通常由业绩分析师进行计算,业绩分析师在披露业绩时,是 将相似投资风格的全部 portfolio 放在一个 composite 中计算<u>加权平均</u>的值进行业绩展示,不可以随 便修改 composite 的构成,不能只展示业绩好的部分,必须所有的 portfolio 都包含。业绩分析师可 能会受到基金经理(业绩表现好基金经理奖金高资源多)或销售人员(业绩表现好容易销售给顾客) 的威胁,这时业绩分析师必须保持客观独立

细节:

- ◆ 帮客户选择 Primary and **secondary fund managers** and **third-party custodians** 时,也应该保持客观独立(新增)
- ◆ 业绩分析师有负责检查基金经理是否违背相关指令(mandate),例如养老金基金只能投资低风险的产品,如果业绩分析师发现基金经理的投资行为偏离了基金的指令时,业绩分析师有责任披露出去
- ◆ 上市公司威胁分析师按他们的期望写研报,即使威胁使用暴力或威胁生命安全时,分析师也不能影响其客观独立性
- ◆ **信用评级机构**:目标公司可能会威逼利诱信用评级机构,要求给他们比较高的评级,这样他们发行 的金融产品可以融到更多的资金,信用评级机构此时也必须保持客观独立性
- ◆ **付费的研报**(**Issuer-Paid research**): 通常小型上市公司会付费(**flat fee**: not linked to their conclusions or recommendations) 让分析师写研报,这笔费用分析师可以收,但不能与研报的结果挂钩,如果公司承诺分析师,因为你的研报,促使公司的股票销售情况良好,这时公司<u>额外</u>付给分析师的 bones 是不能收的,即研报不能与结果挂钩,例如: 独立分析师收取 flat fee 帮某上市公司写研报,最终的结果是 sell,此时分析师把 flat fee 退还给上市公司是违规的(本质与结果挂钩)
- ◆ **差旅安排(Travel Funding)**:分析师去公司拜访,差旅费用必须自己支付,而公司所在地是公共 交通不能达到的地方,例如偏远的矿区,这时公司安排相应的差旅是可以接受的,但要进行披露, 但不能接受奢侈的差旅安排(例如:五星级酒店、头等舱等),分析师可以自己程塔公共交通去上 市公司拜访,但不能要求上市公司报销相应的差旅费
- ◆ **限制性清单(restricted list)**:将存在潜在利益冲突或可能影响客户独立的客户列入限制性清单, 此时分析师只能发表已经成为事实的数据,不可以发表观点

C.Misrepresentation:不正当陈述(未及时改正的打字错误,胡说八道,剽窃,不适当的基准)

- ◆ **遗漏重大信息**:不能故意的去遗漏任何的信息,特别是重大的信息(重大信息:可以影响客户做投资判断的信息),另外需要将可能出现的好的情况以及极端不好的情况,都要告知客户。不能故意遗漏量化投资模型中的一些重要因素,导致模型只出现一个比较好的状态,这是不允许的;通过量化模型得到的结果不能作为事实,只能作为预测的结果
- ◆ 不真实或不正当陈述(untrue statement or omission of a fact): 1.吹业绩,包括向客户保证投资业绩(美国国债这种无风险的固定收益例外,但基于投资美国国债的基金不能担保业绩),业绩陈述中无中生有,胡说八道; 2.吹资质,不是 CFA 持证人,说是持证人; 3.吹服务,宣称可以提供<u>所有</u>(全套)服务
- ◆ **可以保证业绩的特殊情况**:某些结构化产品,公司向客户保证可以达到一定的业绩,如果达不到将由公司赔偿客户的损失部门,这种情况下可以做业绩的保证
- ◆ **业绩报告**:在业绩报告中,必须选择适合的 benchmark 进行比较。另外有一些业绩展示中可以不体现 benchmark,例如不同交易策略的对冲基金,不便于去选择一个 benchmark,这时就可以不选择 benchmark 进行业绩的披露
- ◆ 流动性比较差的资产: 例如房地产,使用不同的估值模型,就可能会有不同的估值(模型结果要交 代清楚),不能通过改变估值模型去选一个估值最高的模型(估值的模型要有连续性和一致性,不 能随意更改估值模型,如果想要改变模型必须披露改变模型的目的)
- ◆ **社交媒体**:无论在传统媒体还是社交媒体平台上披露信息时,所披露的内容必须与事实相一致
- ◆ **匿名发布**:通过匿名的形式在传统媒体或社交媒体上发布的信息也必须是适当的陈述,且不能发布

重大非公开信息

- ◆ 抄袭(Plagiarism):即不当引用,引用别人的主观观点、思想等都要引用出处
 - 他人独创性的观点,我用自己的语言进行表述未说明出处,以及直接作为自己的观点使用属于 剽窃
 - 类似 GDP、CPI、PPI 这类的数据,所有人都知道是统计局发布的信息,引用时可以不说明出处,但如果是统计局的一篇文章,需要说明出处
 - 常识性的术语,例如债券的久期,如果不想引用,可以使用自己的语言去描述,如果按金融书籍的原话进行表述,就必须引用出处
 - Work Completed for Employer: 两个分析师研究的领域不同,张三研究钢铁版块,李四研究宏观经济,此时张三在研报中放入李四对于宏观经济的分析,可以不引用出处,不提对方名字,因为两者都是在为雇主工作,但提前要征得对方同意
- ◆ **第三方研报**:在使用第三方研报之前必须先尽职调查,可以将第三方的研报发给客户,但是必须披露给客户
- ◆ **离职同事的研报**:某分析师在离职前为公司写的研报,在其离职后,公司的其它同事可以进行修改 更新,并以<u>公司的名义</u>发布,是不违规的;如果其它同事将离职同事的研报以<u>个人的名义</u>进行发布 是违规的,如果想以个人的名义发布,必须引用出处说明这是离职同事某某写的研报,以及说明自 己对研报做了哪些更新及贡献

细节:

- ◆ 出现打印错误或排版错误不违规,但没有立即纠正就是违规
- ◆ 在业绩度量和归因上存在问题,是属于 Misrepresentation,例如: cherry picking 行为
- ◆ 如果公司的一些核心竞争力来自于外部基金经理,就需要详细披露
- ◆ 引用第三方信息时,如果第三方是胡说八道,最终你要承担责任
- ◆ 引用时只描述为首席分析师或投资专家,没有具体说明姓名,这是违规的
- ◆ 引述金融词典中术语的原话需要引用,用自己的语言表述这个术语,不需要引用(例如:标准差的定义);如果是别人写的一个文章的观点(idea),用自己的语言表述,没有说明出处是违规的
- ◆ 张三写了篇文章,引用了爱因斯坦的一句语,我的文章也想引用爱因斯坦的话,最好的做法是,自己查阅资料,找到爱因斯坦真的说了这句话,引用时说明爱因斯坦这句话的出处,以及张三文章,勉强说的过去的做法是只说爱因斯坦的出处或只说张三作为出处
- ◆ 如果同事写了一篇文章,自己只修改了一点点东西,就说是自己写的,这是违规的
- ◆ 如果公司在营销材料上故意夸大了某人的文凭资历等信息,如果这个人不知道有这个事情,公司违规,但其本人是不违规的,如果他一旦知道有这种事情存在,就必须立即让公司改正

D.Misconduct: 不正当行为

- ◆ **欺诈**:与工作相关的不诚信(dishonesty)、欺诈(fraud)和欺骗(deceit) → 与钱相关的不诚信
- ◆ **不正当行为**:与<u>本职工作相关</u>的不正当行为,例如:上班时间滥用酒精,导致影响其投资决策的能力是违规的
- ◆ **个人破产(Personal bankruptcy)**: 不是因为<u>非诚信</u>行为导致的个人破产,不属于 misconduct,但 需要披露给雇主,如果是时间很久以前的事情,可以不披露,时间很久事属于个人隐私

II.Integrity of capital markets:资本市场诚信

A.Material Nonpublic Information (MNI): 重大非公开信息

- ◆ **内幕信息**: 自己不能使用内幕信息,同时也不能给其它人使用,另外没有阻止内幕消息的泄漏也是 违规
- ◆ **内幕信息的特点:** 1.消息的来源可靠, 2.影响重大, 3.信息尚未对外发布
- ◆ **非公开**: 向 selective 对象披露的信息,不属于公开信息
- ◆ **大额订单**: 当出现大额订单购买某支股票时,这时股票的价格一定会上涨,提前利用这类信息进行 交易也是内幕交易
- ◆ **知名分析师研报**:提前获得知名分析师未发布的研报并基于此研报进行交易属于内幕交易
- ◆ 选择性披露(Selective disclosure):不可以选择性的将重大的非公开信息公布给几个特定的人

- ◆ **非公开信息**: (**主语选择性披露**,即选择权在发布信息的一方),例如:某机构将一些信息发布在 收费的报纸上,这就不是非公开信息,因为选择权在我,只要我愿意花钱买报纸我就可以看到
- ◆ 社交媒体:关于涉及重大非公开信息的消息,在信息发布给公众之前,某人提前获得了这个的信息,不可以提前通过社交媒体或传统媒体发布出去
- ◆ **行业专家**: 行业专家对行业内某公司或产品作出的结论或建议(行业中人都不了解的信息,且对公 众的投资决策有重大指导意义),在未对外公布之前,也算作内幕消息。但咨询行业专家有关一些 行业常识性的问题,并不算内幕消息(行业常识,公众不了解,不属于内幕消息)
- ◆ **目标公司高管**:如果目标公司 CEO 提前告诉你一个重大非公开信息,你应该要求 CEO 尽快对外发布,而不能自己先基于这个消息进行交易
- ◆ Issue press releases: 几个分析师在沟通研报的结果时,这些参与的分析师就知道了这个重大非公开信息,此时应该尽快将这个信息公布给公众,缩短内幕消息小范围扩散与公之于众的时间间隔,从而减少基于内幕信息交易的机会,例如:研究部的几个分析师通过讨论,最终定稿了研报,并通过了公司的审核,一个周期之后才发布给公众,就是违规的,协会建议研报完成后立即发布
- ◆ 个人交易的限制: 个人持股与交易应该披露,以便让雇主和客户了解金融从业人员是否使用了内幕消息,以及是否与客户利益产生了冲突
- ◆ **券商的自营业务(Proprietary trading procedures)**: 如果是作市商(market maker)角色获得了内幕消息,作市商因为要提供市场流动性,因此即使知道了内幕消息,也必须继续作市,但只能做消极的对手方(**Remain passive**: 对方卖作市商就买,对方买作市商就卖)。如果交易动机是进行风险对冲(Risk-arbitrage trading),这时获知了与之相应的内幕消息也是可以继续进行交易的,但必须将交易过程及交易目的清楚的记录下来以备 SEC 检查。例如: 航空公司担心油价上涨,就会买入石油公司股票进行风险对冲,如果油价真的上涨了,石油公司的股票也会上涨,这时就对冲掉了这个风险,如果这时航空公司知道了有关石油公司的内幕消息,如果其交易<u>动机</u>是单纯的为了风险对冲,这时也可以操作但必须清楚的记录相关的操作(协会不建议继续交易)
- ◆ **重大信息**: 重大宏观经济数字,tender offer(要约收购);但竞争对手的假设不属于重大信息(Competitor's estimation)

mosaic theory (马赛克理论):

V 12122 = 121		
	Material	Non-material
Public	✓	√, but unnecessary
Non-public	×	✓

注意: Public 且 Material 的信息以及 Non-public 且 Non-material 的信息是可以使用的

B.Market manipulation: 市场操纵

- ◆ **扭曲量价(Transaction-based)**:人为的<u>扭曲价格,虚增交易量</u>,违反市场操纵,即使是为了客户 利益也是不行(资本市场利益是第一位)
- ◆ **散播谣言(Info-based)**:通过散布谣言,影响市场的预期,进而影响标的价格,不当获利的行为 **例如**:两个基金经理在酒吧喝酒,期间他们说要联手做高某支股票,我听到后,回去研究了这支股票, 发现他确实是被低估的,于是我就买入了,几周后股票上涨,这种情况也算操纵市场,我只要参与其中 就算操纵市场

例外的情况:

- ◆ 以避税为目的,例如:日历效应(Calendar anomalies)中基金经理为了避税,将负收益的标的卖掉,将浮亏变为真实的亏损,从而达到少交税的目的,报税结束后再把标的资产买回来,这种情况不属于市场操纵(动机是为了避税)
- ◆ 某些对冲基金的交易策略就是波动率策略,同时 long 和 short 这种情况也不属于市场操纵(动机是对冲基金的策略)
- ◆ 期货交易所会员,为了达到交易所制定的增强流动性的规则,达到一定的交易量可以获得一定的优惠,要提前公开披露给客户且为了客户的利益,这类行为也不属于市场操纵(动机是为了达到交易量获得交易所奖励的好处)

III.Duty To Clients: 对客户的责任

A.Loyalty、prudence and care: 忠诚,审慎和仔细 (loyalty、prudence and care 与本章其它条款是包含关系,违反本章的其它条款,视同违反 loyalty、prudence and care)

◆ **受托责任(Fiduciary)**: 客户把钱交给基金经理投资,基金经理需要把客户的利益放在第一位(extra care),咨询专家也承担受托责任(客户会基于你的咨询建议进行投资决策)

不承担受托责任的特例:

- ◆ **交易员**:一般指基金交易中的交易员,因为决定购买具体的投资标的不是由交易员决定的,交易员只是利用专业知识去降低交易成本,因此交易员不承担受托责任
- ◆ **混合的环境(Blended environment)**:基金经理和交易员由同一人担任,这时有关<u>交易员方面的工</u> 作,是不承担受托责任的

识别四种类型的客户:

- ◆ 散户(Individual): 个人投资者
- ◆ **受益人(Beneficiary)**: 以最终受益人的利益为考量进行决策(最终受益人是真正的客户)
- ◆ **指令(Mandate)**:如果受益人存在很多个,而其中个别受益人希望按他们的要求进行投资,这时基金经理必须按照整个基金的指令进行投资,例如:某个养老金基金的个别受益人希望投资高风险高回报的产品,但养老金基金的指令就是投资低风险资产,因此就不能受个别受益人的意愿所影响
- ◆ **投资公众(Investing public)**:分析师写某上市公司的研报,但分析师的客户不是这家上市公司, 而是看研报的投资公众

备注:指令可以理解为指数基金,基金经理只对指数基金的说明书负责,例如:某跟踪 S&P 500 的指数基金,如果 S&P 500 指数下跌 50%,则基金也应该下跌 50%,说明基金经理按基金指令在操作

- ◆ ★Soft Dollar/Soft Commission: 券商为了争取业务(或维护现有业务关系),给基金经理的好处,如果这种好处是可以让基金经理的客户直接受益的好处,基金经理是可以收的(例如:研报,数据库之类,可以帮助基金经理更好的帮助客户做投资决策)
- ◆ Hard Dollar: 实实在在的钱,一定不能收(违法)
- ◆ 在选择经济商时,应该经过尽职的调查,选择<u>最好的执行(best execution)</u>,<u>最低的价格(lowest price)</u>, 并确保所选的经济商是<u>适合(Suitability)</u>客户的
- ◆ **Directed brokerage**: 客户指定 broker,即客户要求在他指定的证券公司开户,基金经理这时仍然有义务帮客户寻找最优交易(先比服务,后比价格),如果用户不同意,这时用户要签署书面的同意书,表示是自己愿意的
- ◆ **分散化(Diversify)**:基金经理必须帮客户分散化的投资,即使客户愿意只买入一支股票,基金经理也不能这样做,另外在给客户作投资组合时,我们判断的是<u>投资组合的整体</u>(total portfolio),而非单一投资品,例如一个小盘成长股的基金,发现了一支比较好的大盘价值股,这时我可以把这个大盘价值股放进这个基金(战术型资产配置),因为这并不会影响组合的整体。再例如:某个投资人不能承担风险,这个投资人持有 S&P 500 指数基金,此时基金经理帮客户 short 股指期货是允许的,虽然期货产品风险大,但站在整体组合角度,这会帮助用户降低风险
- ◆ Proxy Voting Policies: 代理投票权:基金经理帮客户管理股票,股票实际是客户拥有,因而客户享有投票权,而基金经理有义务根据性价比(cost-benefit)原则,去帮客户到上市公司进行投票,根据用户持有的股份数,审核该投票事务是否对客户利益有重大影响,如果有重大影响,应该去帮客户投票,另外如果多个上市公司在同一时间进行投票,这时应该选择参加影响更大,更为重要的事务去投票。在投票时应该<u>以客户的利益为重</u>,进行投票选择,另外需要告诉客户性价比分析的具体原则是什么(充分披露)
- ◆ 投资业绩至少每季度(at least quarterly)向顾客披露明细信息(itemized statement showing)

B.Fair dealing: 公平对待(Fairly≠equally)

- ◆ 核心原则:对所有的客户一视同仁,不能歧视客户
- ◆ <u>公平不等于平等</u>,允许根据不同的收费标准向客户提供差异化的服务(premium level service),但 必须向客户披露这种差别,必须让客户了解有这种差别化的服务(<u>选择权在客户</u>,客户只要付费就 可以享受这种服务,且这种服务不能伤害其它客户利益),对于重要的事实,无论客户等级,必须

- 一视同仁
- ◆ 研报完成后,应该尽快发布出去,且应该同时发送给客户(Simultaneous dissemination)

分配方案:

- ◆ 先下单的先获得
- ◆ 按订单(order size)交易量的比例进行分配(可以进行取整)
- ◆ 超额认购的股票必须全部分配给客户
- ◆ 存在最小交易量的分配原则,例如: ABCDE 五个投资者想要投资某个债券,ABC 三个人各想要投资\$10000, DE 两个人各想要投资\$50000, 而这个投资品的最小购买单位为\$5000, 如果交易员一共只买入了\$55000, 这时应该按订单比例取整后进行分配:

	A	В	С	D	Е	共计
期望买入	\$10000	\$10000	\$10000	\$50000	\$50000	\$13000
订单比例	1/13	1/13	1/13	5/13	5/13	13/13
应得金额	\$4230	\$4230	\$4230	\$21153	\$21153	\$55000
★实际金额	\$5000	\$5000	\$5000	\$20000	\$20000	\$55000

- ◆ a round-lot basis: 交易员今天吃进 1000 股,而我三个客户的订单数量是相同的,这时每人要分 333 股,因为 333 股没法交易,因此只能分配其中两个 300 股,另一个 400 股,而谁拿的多是随 机选择的,这样操作是可以的
- ◆ 如果投资建议出现了重大改变(例如:由"推荐买"变为"推荐卖"),基金经理应该<u>第一时间</u>通知<u>所有的客户</u>,特别是之前接收到以前推荐信息的客户。如果此时有客户想要买入你已经修改推荐为卖的股票,这时应该先跟客户解释改变了推荐建议,经过解释后,如果客户还是坚持要买(需要尊重客户意见),这时需要由客户提供书面的确认后,可以给用户买入
- ◆ 家庭成员(例如:父母、兄弟姐妹)的付费账户/family member account,视同与其它付费账户一样对待;住在同一居住地的人的账户(通常指夫妻),视同自己就是受益人/beneficiary(交易时先客户,再公司,最后自己的账户),是否是受益人的核心判断依据是是否存在利益分享

C.Suitability: 适合性

- ◆ 核心原则: 在做投资时,选择的投资产品一定要适合客户(充分考虑了 IPS 中 RRTTLLU 的因素)
- ◆ 1.需要<u>充分</u>了解客户(了解客户的资产规模、健康状况、风险承受能力、期望收益率等信息); 2. 根据沟通的情况为客户写 IPS(包含大类的资产配置), 3.根据 IPS 的内容进行投资
- ◆ **备注**: IPS 是投资活动的最高纲领,也是"秋后算账"的依据,至少<u>每年更新一次</u>,或当客户的情况出现重大改变时,就必须先更新 IPS (例如:客户突然继承了一大笔钱),再做资产配置
- ◆ The Need for Diversification: 客户的组合需要进行分散化,除非双方约定,且获得客户书面确认后,投资不需要分散化。例如: 顾客分配给你管理的资产只是其可投资资产的一小部分,且顾客指定投资某个领域不需要分散化,这种情况就不需要分散化

客户看重 Capital gain 类收益,即价差部分,应该投资成长型股票

客户看重 Income 类收益,即稳定现金流,股利、coupon,应该投资价值型股票

例如:一个基金经理买入一个零分红的股票,放在他的高分红基金中,这是违规的,因为零分红的股票与高分红的基金本身是有冲突的,除非题目说明购买这个股票不会对整体的 IPS 造成大的影响

◆ Addressing Unsolicited Trade Requests: 如果客户主动来找基金经理让基金经理帮他做投资,而基金经理经过分析发现这个投资并不合适这个客户,这时基金经理<u>拒绝</u>客户是不违规的,但如果基金经理选择帮客户投资,则客户必须提供书面的确认之后,基金经理才可以进行相应的投资操作。另外这个投资对组合的影响非常小(影响小于 5%),基金经理也是可以帮客户投资的;如果影响重大(影响大于 10%),应该先修改 IPS,再帮客户进行投资,如果用户不同意修改 IPS,又要进行相应投资,这时应该把这部分钱从组合中剥离出来,由用户单独管理

D.Performance presentation: 业绩陈述

- ◆ 如果违反了 Performance presentation 则一定违反 Misrepresentation
- ◆ 不得错误的陈述过去的业绩,必须如实的陈述,且业绩展示要有数据的记录作为证明
- ◆ 不得暗示或明示客户过去达成的业绩,在将来也一定能达成

- ◆ 在披露业绩时,必须将已经<u>终止的组合</u>(terminated portfolio)也包含在内,使用以市值为权重的加权平均收益率进行展示(细节:终止的组合需要展示到最后一个完整的行政年,例如:组合在3月结束,此时要展示之前完整年度的业绩,但今年的这3个月的业绩因为无法展示,因此可以不展示)
- ◆ 可以提供给用户一个简报(**brief**),但必须告知用户,可以为客户和合格潜在客户提供需要更为详细的资料(prospective client 是合格潜在客户,需要责任; potential client 是潜在客户,无责任)
- ◆ 推荐使用 GIPS 标准披露业绩,但并非强制要求
- ◆ 将类似的 portfolio 加权平均放进 **composite** 中进行业绩展示,业绩陈述必须充分披露,不得遗漏任何重要的、会影响客户决策的信息,另外模拟的业绩也可以包含在业绩中,但要披露是如何进行模拟的,且不可与真实的 portfolio 进行加权平均放进 **composite** 中做展示
- ◆ 如果基金经理跳槽去新的公司,在得到前雇主书面同意,并获得相关投资记录时,可以在新公司进行业绩的展示,但在业绩展示中要披露,这是在以前公司达成的业绩,以及在前公司的角色及对业绩的贡献
- ◆ 在业绩展示时,可以是扣除管理费用(net of fees)或没有扣除管理费用(gross of fees),也可以是 税前(before tax)或税后(after tax)的展示,但需要披露给客户(gross of fees 和 net of fees 都是扣 除了交易手续费的,cross of fees 没有扣除资产管理费,反应基金经理的投资水平,net of fees 扣除 资产管理费,反应投资者的真实收益)
- ◆ 业绩的归因(attribution)和度量必须要有连续性和一致性,如果修改归因和度量标准的<u>动机</u>是为了 让业绩更好看是违规的

E.Preservation of confidentiality: 保密性原则(保护过去客户、现在客户、合格潜在客户的保密性)

◆ 核心原则:客户的所有信息都应该保密(保密性特指客户,违反雇主的保密性属于 loyalty)

例外情况:

- ◆ 客户有违法行为时,不需要保密
- ◆ 如果你和同事服务于同一个客户时,可以将客户的信息告知给这个同事

特殊情况:

◆ 如果法律规定,即使是违法行为也必须保密时,就必须保密

免责的部分:即不需要保密的部分:1.违法信息,2.法律要求披露的信息,3.客户允许披露 **备注**:协会不要求会员将违法信息披露给协会,但协会进行调查时,鼓励会员配合协会对会员监督

- ◆ 在传统媒体或社交媒体上发布客户的信息是违规的
- ◆ 在使用社交媒体与客户群体沟通时,公司应该建立相应的合规部门,并告知用户在社交媒体上发布的信息都是可以从其它公共资源获得的公开信息,并提醒用户不要在社交媒体上发布有关其私人或重大的信息,公司如果发现客户发布了有关私人或重大信息,应该及时删除相应的信息

IV.Duty To employers: 对雇主的责任

A.Loyalty: 忠诚

- ◆ 在职时:公司不干涉雇员的私生活,但私生活不能影响本职工作
- ◆ **工作时间**:工作时间不得从事与本职工作无关的任何事情
- ◆ **与雇主相竞争的业务(competitive business/Independent Practice)**:不得在业余时间从事与雇主相 竞争的业务(在工作内容,时间,精力上与雇主广义竞争),除非得到雇主的书面同意
- ◆ 在职时,只能通过业余时间找其它的工作,且不可招揽当前公司的客户
- ◆ 自己打算创业(金融领域)时,可以利用业余时间进行登记注册新公司,一旦业务开始了,无论在工作时间还是在业余时间都是不允许的(违反与雇主相竞争的业务)
- ◆ 基金经理不能为其它组织,哪怕是慈善组织提供免费的投资建议,除非雇主许可,需要告知雇主三方面信息: 1.服务类型和性质(types of services),2.时间期限是多久(the expected duration),3.可能的收益是多少(the compensation),由雇主许可后你才可以做
- ◆ 在离职的情况下,将前公司使用过的模型,从零开始建立这个模型在新公司使用是可以的,除非原来的公司跟你签订过相关的保密协议(专业知识是自己的)
- ◆ 在离职的情况下,将原公司自己的历史投资业绩带走去新公司做业绩展示是违规的,除非<u>前雇主同</u> 意且从前雇主那里拿到相关的数据记录,或者通过公共来源能够重建你的投资记录,这两种情况可

以的做业绩展示使用

- ◆ **离职后**:前雇主的**任何东西不能带走**(除了知识和技能),离职时不能复制原公司的任何文件,包括 **rejected idea list**,除非得到前雇主的书面同意,但在原公司工作时的一些想法(idea)可以在新公司再创造使用
- ◆ 去新的公司以后,可以招揽原公司的客户来新公司,但离职前复制或背诵原公司的<u>客户名单</u>是违规 的(知道少数几家是可以的),即新公司使用的客户信息,要么是新公司本来就有的,要么是可以 通过公共资源获得的
- ◆ 即使是原公司不需要的文件也不能带去新公司使用(例如:分析师写了一篇研报,但是其结论公司 并不认可,因此没有发布给公众,但这篇研报也不能带去新公司使用)
- ◆ 在职员工不得在社交媒体上发布自己打算创业或打算跳槽到其它公司之类,可能损害原雇主利益的信息,协会建议公司建立单独的合规部门,用于监管社交媒体上的行为,且最好使用分离的账户(以公司名义建立和使用的社交媒体账户,而非雇员私人账户)
- ◆ 如果雇主存在违法行为,员工为了资本市场诚信和利益,在职揭发(Whistleblowing)雇主,不视 为对雇主的不忠诚
- ◆ 兼职工作(independent contractor)也需要对雇主体现忠诚,即只要是明确的<u>雇佣关系</u>都应该对雇 主忠诚
- ◆ Competition policy: 如果离职的雇员与雇主签订了非竞争协议,规定几年内不得从事同行业,此时就必须遵守协议的相关约定(即使法律不认可这种协议,道德上也应该遵守,道德与法律不同)
- ◆ **CFA 协会的核心理念**: 答应别人的事都应该遵守

B.Additional compensation arrangements: 额外的报酬安排

- ◆ 当可能与雇主有利益冲突时,一定不能接受 gifts, benefits, compensation or consideration
- ◆ 意为我除了为雇主 X 工作之外, 还为 Y 工作获得报酬, 需要得到雇主 X 以及 Y 的书面同意(all parties)
- ◆ 要告知 X 了解,我帮 Y 工作的: 1.工作性质,2.工作期限,3.报酬金额
- ◆ 当 Y 是客户时,且客户**事先**告诉你,当你的业绩达到一定的标准后,会给予额外奖励,这时必须告知 X,且要告知从 Y 那里拿了多少奖金
- ◆ 当我在 Y 公司董事会占有席位,如果我要买入 Y 公司的股票,需要向雇主 X 披露,因为标的股票 是给雇主 X 的客户买的,可能存在利益冲突,核心是潜在伤害雇主
- ◆ 基金经理去上市公司拜访或开会,如果对方提前告知你之后去高级酒店吃饭,这时应该拒绝,或征得领导同意的情况下 AA 制,核心是目标公司的<u>超标招待</u>,需要得到批准

几种特别注意的情况:

- ◆ 客户因为过去的业绩给基金经理的好处可以先接受,并事后告知雇主,如果是针对未来业绩,则必须事前告知雇主
- ◆ 在标的公司担任职务,拿到标的公司的好处,要披露并征得雇主同意,特别是我为公司买入了标的公司的股票,我为标的公司写研报,我自己持有标的公司股票等情况(存在潜在的利益冲突)
- ◆ 接受标的公司招待,应该征得雇主事先同意,特别是事先知道的超标招待,如果是事先不知道的超标招待,事后也必须向雇主披露

C.Responsibility of supervisors: 监管者的责任

- ◆ **积极预防**下属违规,加强对员工的培训,需要建立完善的规章制度;**积极发现**下属的相关工作是否存在违规(按规定间隔检查,不能嫌麻烦),如果发现违规行为,必须<u>立刻制止</u>(积极阻止),并彻底调查,必须有相应的<u>惩罚措施并限制其行动</u>,确保以后不再出现此类违规行为,同时加强对下属的监管
- ◆ 可以把监管的责任委托给下属带为执行,但如果下属违规,上司必须承担最终的责任
- ◆ 如果下属违规,上司也视为违规(监管不力),除非上司能够证明自己已经尽到了合理的努力,但 下属仍然违规,这种情况下上司可以免责
- ◆ 在接受监管责任之前,要确保公司有书面的合规体系(written compliance system),且公司目前按 照该体系正常执行
- ◆ 如果我负责监管工作,我必须要把不完善的合规体系的问题告知公司,并且提出修改意见,如果公

司不同意,我必须做出书面拒绝,直到公司同意之后,我才能接受领导岗位,即如果我要做领导,前提是公司必须有书面的完善的合规体系,否则我做领导就是违规的

V.Investment: 投资

A.Diligence and reasonable basis: (投资时)勤勉尽责

- ◆ 如果我要做研报或投资推荐,我必须做彻底的研究
- ◆ 作为模型的建立者,需要更加尽职调查,需要考虑产品所有的方方面面,要检测模型是否合理,同时也要看数据的使用是否合情合理,所选取数据的时间不能太长(50年的数据),也不能太短(1年),并要检测模型的结果是否合情合理
- ◆ 如果我要使用量化模型(Quantitatively Oriented Research)为客户做投资计划,不要求我成为这个模型的专家,但我必须**真的了解这个模型**,且知道这个模型的**局限性和假设**,且自己测试过这个模型(测试时要包含极好极坏的一些极端情况),并以此跟客户进行沟通和推荐,核心:真的懂,不拿量化模型忽悠客户,必须真懂,才能推荐与量化模型相关的东西
- ◆ 如果是集体的研究报告(Group Research),但是我不同意其结论,这时如果我认为研究过程是严谨的,我是可以署名的;也可以选择不署名(不同的结论及研究分析过程也必须内部记录下来,不能因为最终没有采纳就销毁掉,即不同意见要保留);另外要杜绝少数服从多数的原则,不能因为团队中多数人支持的结论与我的结论不同,就以少数服从多数的原则,同意其人的结论,自己必须认真的研究它人的分析过程
- ◆ 可以使用第三方的信息(Third-Party Research),但要确保第三方信息是勤勉尽责的,如果第三方没有勤勉尽责,视为自己没有勤勉尽责(即使是权威机构的研报,自己也必须进行尽职调查)
- ◆ 未做尽职调查就推荐<u>热门股</u>(hot issue)是违规的,从热门股出发,本身就是错的,应该先全球宏观经济,本国宏观经济,行业,再到行业内的个股
- ◆ 如果出现新的情况要及时更新给客户的资料,即使客户时间非常紧迫,也必须要更新

B.Communication with clients:与客户沟通(区分事实与观点)

- ◆ Will be 是事实; may be/would be/should be 是观点(虚拟语气),必须严格区分事实和观点
- ◆ 应该告诉客户投资过程中的信息,特别是投资的限制(例如:流动性等)和风险(例如:杠杆、市场相关的风险),都必须告诉给客户,另外公司重大的改变(可能潜在影响客户利益的重大改变)也需要及时通知客户
- ◆ 关于投资决策过程中的重大变更,要及时通知客户,例如:模型改变,投委会改变,投资范围改变
- ◆ 公司重大决策人或基金经理的变更,要及时通知客户
- ◆ 推荐报告可以是简要的(in capsule form/recommended stock list),但要告知客户,如果想了解更 多的信息,可以提供额外的详细的信息(提供详细信息为了杜绝没有做过详细的研究就做推荐)
- ◆ ★在与客户沟通的过程中,一定要告知客户风险和限制,即风险揭示,例如:要说明杠杆,使用了哪些复杂的金融工具,对手方风险,国家风险,行业风险,个体风险,信用风险等
- ◆ 要告知客户如果走势跟我的预期是相反时,客户所面临的风险是什么
- ◆ 如果公司推荐买入标的股票,而我私自跟客户说卖出标的股票,属于违反与客户沟通

C.Record retention: 记录保存

- ◆ 与投资相关的<u>所有的信息</u>,包括投资分析、投资推荐、与客户交流以及投资相关的信息等,都必须 有记录保存(纸制和电子版均可)
- ◆ 记录属于公司的财产,离职时不能带走,除非前雇主许可,且可以把相关记录带走后,才可以在新公司做业绩展示,或者可以自己通过公共资源重建,核心: 前雇主要许可,且允许拿走记录
- ◆ 记录保存多少年是根据当地法律规定,如果法律没有规定,则以 CFA 协会的规定保留 7 年为准
- ◆ 记录保存是公司的责任(公司提供设备),但相关录入工作都是由个人完成(最好异地备份)
- ◆ 如果使用传统媒体或社交媒体与客户进行沟通时,相应的记录也必须保留

备注:分析师保存的是与研报相关的记录(统计年鉴,拜访上市公司的会议纪要等与标的相关的原始记录):基金经理保存的是与分析师相似的记录以及交易记录

VI. Conflicts of interest: 利益冲突:

A.Disclosure of conflicts: 冲突披露(潜在伤害客户或投资公众,非雇主,只要披露就不违反利益冲突)

- ◆ 利益冲突即为他人<u>有理由怀疑</u>你做出伤害他们利益的行为,在阐述潜在利益冲突时,必须使用平实的语言(plain language),且事先告知
- ◆ 分析师必须披露自己的持股情况,在写某个上市公司研报时,如果分析师因为继承原因,持有这个公司的股票,也需要披露,如果继承的量很大,最好让其它人来跟踪写研报或放入限制性清单(量少基本可以,量多时消极状态也尚且可以,但积极状态不可以,例如:10年前持有了某支股票,期间没有卖出,未来也不打算卖出,这就属于消极的状态)
- ◆ 个人买卖股票要披露(Security holding)
- ◆ 写研报或做投资推荐的人是目标公司的外部董事会成员,一定要对外披露
- ◆ 分析师写标的公司的研报,如果公司的 IBD 部门也在为目标公司做服务(例如:融资),或是目标公司的做市商,都需要对外披露(corporate financing or market making relationship)
- ◆ 我与目标公司的高级管理层有特别亲昵的关系,需要对外披露,例如:从小就是好朋友(Individual relationship)或公司间有收费业务(Directorship)都属于这类关系,最好是将目标公司放入限制性清单
- ◆ 研究部与投行部(**内部矛盾**);投行和上市公司之间(**外部矛盾**)
- ◆ 公司的经纪商部门投资了一个的风险投资,目标公司没上市之前不需要披露(没上市之前跟投资者 没关系),但目标公司要 IPO 之前就必须披露
- ◆ 当薪酬结构与客户利益有冲突时,必须要披露给客户,但要征得雇主同意,如果雇主不同意,你需要离开这个工作(甚至离职),例如:基金经理的奖金是按每三个月的业绩表现进行评估发放,但是我的客户都是长期投资者,这种情况就需要披露给客户
- ◆ 公司的奖金激励计划不应该与客户的利益有冲突,如果存在这种情况,应该经雇主同意后披露给客户,如果雇主不同意披露,则应该退出工作
- ◆ 收费标准是业绩越好,收费越高的情况,必须要披露给客户(可能会拿客户的钱冒险)
- ◆ 如果分析师或公司持有目标公司的期权,也需要披露
- ◆ 分析师写目标公司的研报,如果分析师自己持有这个目标公司的股票,也需要披露
- 备注: 如果将某公司放入限制性清单,则只能陈述与之相应的事实,不发表观点

B.Priority of transaction: 优先交易

- ◆ 先客户→后雇主→再自己(包括视同自己是受益人的账户,即 beneficiary owner)
- ◆ 在做出投资推荐后,要留出足够的时间让客户先交易(大约 10-15 个工作日,决不能少过一周), 之后雇主的订单要全部交易完成后,才可以自己交易
- ◆ 有限制的投资 IPO 和定向增发(Limited participation in equity IPOs, Restrictions on private placement), 但不允许参与超额认购(oversubscribe)
- ◆ Family accounts: 一般家庭成员的账户,如果是基于付费账户,则视同普通客户
- ◆ immediate family: 住在同一主要居住在的家人,一般指夫妻关系,视同自己是受益人

C.Referral fees: 介绍费(与本职工作相关的介绍费)

- ◆ 我介绍客户去其它公司买产品或做服务,如果我能够从中获得介绍费(介绍费特指广义的好处,不一定是现金),就需要用平实的语言**事前**披露给客户知道
- ◆ 介绍费这类事情,必须<u>事先披露给</u>雇主、客户和合格潜在客户(为了让雇主和客户判断是否存在偏见以及真实成本)
- ◆ 雇主有权禁止雇员拿这种介绍费,且要向客户披露

VII.Responsibility as members: CFA 协会会员的责任

A.Conduct as members and candidates: 会员和考生的行为指导

- ◆ 会员和考生必须遵守 CFA 协会的规定,维护协会的利益
- ◆ 考试**不能作弊**(**cheating**),同时必须遵守考试时的各种相关规定(例如考试时间到,必须停笔不能再答题)
- ◆ 可以发表对考试的观点,公开信息可以讨论,但是不能泄漏考试具体的相关知识点

B.Reference to CFA institute, designation: CFA 头衔的用法

◆ CFA 是一个形容词, 不是一个名词

- ◆ 使用缩写时要大写,即 CFA
- ◆ 可以陈述自己是 CFA Level I 的考生,可以说自己通过了 CFA Level I 的考试,但不能说自己是 CFA Level I
- ◆ C.F.A 这种缩写也是不允许的
- ◆ 不能用 CFA 创建新词,例如 CFAer 是不允许的
- ◆ CFA 不能作为公司名称的一部分
- ◆ CFA 的三个字母不可以写的<u>更加显著</u>,即 CFA 三个字母不能比别的文字的字体大或加入加粗等效果,让他比其它的字更加明显,但可以写的更小
- ◆ 必须是 CFA 持证人,才可以在名片上写 CFA 三个字母
- ◆ 不能说自己会预计通过 CFA 考试
- ◆ 必须通过 CFA level III 考试,再加 4 年相关工作经验,并得到 CFA 协会认可,才能获得 CFA 持证 人资格,在此之前都不能说自己是 CFA 持证人(持证人一定是会员)
- ◆ 可以阐述自己通过了 CFA 的任何一级考试,自己投资技能增加了,但不能明示或暗示别人,因为自己通过了 CFA 的考试就比别人更优秀,也不能保证业绩(不能跟别人比较,不能跟业绩挂钩)
- ◆ CFA 考生不会得到具体的科目考了多少分,协会只会告诉考生的得分是高过 70%的人,即只会告诉你在哪个区间范围内,如果某人在宣传材料中声称他在 CFA 考试中得了高分是违规的
- ◆ 持证人每年要缴纳付费,每年要填写道德规范遵守的自我评估
- ◆ CFA 会员每年必须提交职业行为声明(Remit annually to CFA Institute a complete Professional Conduct Statement),并每年缴纳会费(Pay membership dues annually)

◆ 几个容易混淆的知识点:

I(C) Misrepresentation: 打字错误,所有的不正当陈述(胡说八道);剽窃;不适当的基准

III(D) Performance presentation: 过去业绩不代表未来业绩; 业绩的不正当陈述

V(B) Communication with Clients and Prospective Clients: 向客户披露投资流程中重大因素的变化; 区分事实与意见

III(B) Fair dealing, VI(B) Priority of Transactions: 公平对待是指客户之间要一视同仁; 优先交易是指先让顾客交易,再雇主交易,最后自己交易

IV(B) Additional compensation arrangement, VI(A) Disclosure of Conflicts: 前者潜在伤害了雇主,后者潜在伤害了客户或投资公众

III(A) Loyalty、prudence and care: 针对客户的忠诚

IV(A)Loyalty: 针对雇主的忠诚

备注:考试时极端描述通常都是错的

R4 Asset Manager Code (AMC)

AMC(Asset Manager Code)是帮助资产管理公司(firms)把规章制度建立完善,可以是分离的账户(separate accounts)也可以是集合的基金(pooled funds according to a specific mandate, strategy or style),包括 collective investment schemes, mutual funds, and fund of funds organizations (FOF: 母基金),另外 AMC 是自愿遵守的。如果遵守 AMC,则所有员工(Cover all employees)必须遵守 AMC,同时也必须遵守 AMC 的全部规定(★partial or incomplete compliance are prohibited)

★如果公司声明遵守了 AMC 的规定,必须声明"公司遵守 AMC 并没有被 CFA 协会所验证"(Firm] claims compliance with the CFA Institute Asset Manager Code of Professional Conduct. <u>This claim has not been verified by CFA Institute</u>) →必须有这句话

General Principles of Conduct: AMC 的主要原则

- Act in a professional and ethical manner at all times: 任何时间以专业和道德的态度行事
- Act for the benefit of clients: 为客户的利益服务
- Act with independence and objectivity: 独立和客观的行事
- Act with skill, competence, and diligence: 有技巧,有能力,勤勉的行事
- Communicate with clients in a timely and accurate manner: 及时和准确的与客户沟通
- Uphold the applicable rules governing capital markets: 秉承用适应的规则管理资本市场

■ 除了遵守 code and standards,AMC 还强调的一些其它要点:

✓客户关系本身就是保密的(confidential),如无同意不能泄露

- ★资产管理公司必须要有书面的反洗钱或非法金融活动的相关制度(written anti-money laundering policy to prevent their organizations from being used for money laundering or the financing of any illegal activities)
- ★资产管理公司必须要有书面的制度来限制收受礼物和娱乐活动的金额(written policy limiting the acceptance of gifts and entertainment to items of minimal value),例如:每人每次花销多少钱,禁止任何的现金礼物

side-letter,sidecar,tag-along:本质为跟投,在未进行充分尽调的情况下,跟随某大型机构投资的行为,只要是合适的 AMC 是允许跟投的

individual investments should be evaluated in the context of clients' total <u>assets and liabilities</u>: 个人投资应根据客户的总资产和负债进行评估

AMC 更强调是集合资产管理概念,所以 IPS 的作用非常重要;同时,要投资什么标的、风险水平、时间期限等问题必须严格遵守原定 IPS,要变动策略,必须有客户同意

备注: front-running client trades: 比客户先交易(违规)

- ★有一些资产管理公司,会要求基金经理把自己的钱放进组合中(**要求**:客户资金大,自己资金少),如果不影响客户利益,这样是可以接受的(permissible only if clients are not disadvantaged),此时也要确保先客户,再雇主,最后自己交易的规则顺序,只是轮到自己交易时不需要间隔半个月
- ★Managers could require employees to provide the compliance officer with copies of trade confirmations each quarter and annual statements of personal holdings: 管理人员可以要求雇员每季度或每年向合规官员提供个人持仓情况,且每笔交易都要报告(前提是公司允许雇员自己交易股票,且符合公司合规部门的规则)
- ✓ Managers must recognize that commissions paid (and any benefits received in return for commissions paid) are the property of the client: 基金经理必须认可交易佣金(和其它由交易佣金带来的好处,即 soft dollar)都是客户的财产
- ✓最好的执行(best execution),应该考虑以下因素:交易规模(transaction size),市场特征(market characteristics),流动性(liquidity of security),证券的类型(security type),交易佣金率(commission rates),交易的及时性(timeliness of trade executions),保密性(the ability to maintain anonymity),减少不能完成交易(minimize incomplete trades),减少市场影响(minimize market impact.)
- ★Appoint a compliance officer responsible for administering the policies and procedures and for investigating complaints regarding the conduct of the Manager or its personnel: 任命合规官员,负责管理政策和流程,并调查有关基金经理或其人员行为的投诉
- ★Ensure that portfolio information provided to clients by the Manager is accurate and complete and arrange for independent third-party confirmation or review of such information: 确保基金经理提供给客户的组合信息是准确和完整的,并安排独立第三方进行确认和检查这些信息
- ◆ Risk Management, Compliance, and Support: 组织结构的要求
 - ★资产管理公司要有风险管理人员(Risk Management), 合规人员(Compliance)和支持人员 (Support)
 - ,这些人员在雇佣时的原则是:雇佣合格的员工(qualified staff),足够的人力(sufficient human),要有技术资源(technological resources)
 - ★Establish a business-continuity plan to address disaster recovery or periodic disruptions of the financial markets: 建立业务连续性计划(冗灾机制),解决金融市场的灾难恢复或周期性中断
 - ★Establish a firm-wide risk management process that identifies, measures, and manages the risk position of the Manager and its investments, including the sources, nature, and degree of risk exposure: 建立一个全方位的风险管理流程,识别、衡量和管理基金经理及其投资的风险头寸,包括风险敞口的来源、性质和程度
- ◆ Risk Management, Compliance, and Support 的 Recommendations and Guidance:
 - ★Detailed and firm-wide compliance policies and procedures: 详细全方位合规的政策和流程
 - ★Documented compliance procedures: 记录合规的流程

- ★compliance programs, internal controls, and self-assessment tools: 合规的流程,内控制度和自评工具
- ★资产管理公司应该根据公司的规模及其投资管理业务性质来确定雇佣多少人力(the size of the firm and the nature of its investment management business)
- ★compliance officer who is competent, knowledgeable, and credible and is empowered to carry out his or her duties: 合规官员应该是有能力、有知识、可信赖并有权履行职责的
- ★Depending on the size and complexity of the Manager's operations, Managers may designate an existing employee to also serve as the compliance officer, may hire a separate individual for that role, or may establish an entire compliance department.: 根据交易的规模和复杂程度,基金经理可以指定一名现有的雇员充当合规官员,也可以雇佣独立个人扮演这个角色,或者建立一个合规的部门
- ★the compliance officer should be independent from the investment and operations personnel and should report directly to the CEO or board of directors: 合规官员应该独立于投资和运营人员,并应该直接向 CEO 或董事会报告
- ★要给合规官员合规制度的拷贝(a copy of the Code),要对其进行培训(employee training),要有合规人员要持续的自我评估(continuing self-evaluation),要检查资产管理公司雇员的交易(reviewing firm and employee transactions),并记录和快速的解决任何的违规行为(document and act expeditiously to address any compliance breaches)
- ★基金经理有责任确保提供给客户的信息是准确完整的,最好由独立第三方检查这些信息 (third-party confirmation or review of that information),例如:资产的价格,业绩等
- ★第三方评估可以充当一种风险管理工具使用(serve as a risk management tool),例如:第三方发现资产的价格出现巨大波动,此时应该尽快出台解决方案,对冲风险或降低风险,同时应该使用第三方审计和检查(audit or review)投资组合的信息
- 要有记录保存的机制,可以是纸制或电子版(hard copy or electronic form),记录时间由遵循当地法律,如果法律没有要求,根据 CFA 协会的要求,记录最少保存 7 年(at least seven years)
- ★adequate protection of client assets requires appropriate administrative, back-office, and compliance support: 充分保护客户资产需要适当的行政管理人员,后勤人员和合规支持人员
- ★Managers should ensure that adequate internal controls are in place to prevent fraudulent behavior: 管理人员应确保有适当的内部控制,以防止欺诈行为
- ★A critical consideration is employing only qualified and experienced staff: 关键的考量是聘用合格和有经验的工作人员
- ★可以将合规部门外包,但基金经理<u>仍然保留对任何外包工作的责任和职责</u>(retains the liability and responsibility for any outsourced work)
- ★Establish a business-continuity plan/disaster-recovery planning: 建立冗灾机制/灾难恢复机制,并确保整个公司的雇员和员工是有相关知识的(knowledgeable)且经过专门的培训(specifically trained)

关于 business-continuity plan 的最低要求:

- ✓ 所有的账户信息,要有足够的异地备份(adequate backup, preferably off-site, for all account information)
- ✓ 当主要系统不能工作时,要有其它的预案(alternative plans)解决监控(monitoring),分析(analyzing) 和投资交易(trading investments)
- ✓ 要有和重要的生产商和供应商(及时)沟通的计划(critical vendors and suppliers)
- ✓ 要有和雇员进行(及时)沟通的计划(employee communication)以及关键业务的覆盖率计划(coverage of critical business functions)
- ✓ 要有当业务持续中断时(during a period of extended disruption)与客户联系和沟通的计划
- ✓ 要有专门的备份部门(establishing backup office and operational space)
- ✓ 对关键员工的死亡或离职要有备案(key employee deaths or departures)
 - ★公司应该建立风险管理的制度,确保客户期望的风险组合匹配他们的投资状况,即风险是被有效管理的(ensure that the risk profile desired by clients matches the risk profile of their investments),风

险包括: market risk, credit risk, liquidity risk, counterparty risk, concentration risk, and various types of operational risk

- 公司必须建立客观的,独立的,不受基金经理影响的风控流程: The firm's risk management process must be objective,independent,and insulated from influence of portfolio managers
- 风控部门也可以考虑外包(consider outsourcing),但要公司自己承受责任,另外 stress tests, scenario tests, and back-tests 是风控的有效补充

◆ Performance and Valuation: 业绩展示与估值:

- ★每季度向客户报告业绩,在业绩展示时要有历史数据做支撑,要将所有风格相似的 portfolio 放入 composite 中进行展示,不能只选业绩好的 portfolio,另外也可以展示虚拟的和回测的业绩,但是要明确的说明(clearly identified)
- 最好遵守 GIPS 准则
- ★如果存在利益冲突,要及时披露,例如:基金经理是标的公司的独立董事
- ★使用被广泛接受的估值方法进行估值(widely accepted valuation methods)

◆ Disclosures: 披露:

- ★最少要跟客户披露 gross-fee return and net-fee return,如果存在不常见的费用(unusual expenses),一定要跟顾客说明
- ★关于费用和成本的<u>简单声明</u>(a general statement that certain fees and other costs)是不够的,例如要说明所有的固定费用和可能发生的费用(determining all fixed and contingent fees and costs)
- ★基金经理应该追溯披露(retrospectively disclose)给每一个客户过去的费用,且必须是明细化(itemization)的真实的费用和其它成本(actual fees and other costs),披露的内容包括但不限于: management fee, any incentive fee, amount of commissions
- 不能只披露一个总的费用,要有所有的费用明细
- ★在跟<u>合格潜在客户(prospective client)</u>沟通时,要告知客户<u>平均的或预期的费用</u>(average of expected expenses of fees),而不能只讲规则和方法轮,因为合格潜在客户没有在我的公司投资过,因此我需要举例说明,如果客户投资 100 万,通常的费用是 3 万元(具体的数额)
- ★针对当前客户至少每季度(at least quarterly)披露投资业绩,且要在每季度结束的 30 天之内披露(within 30 days after the end of the quarter)
- ★基金经理必须披露风险管理流程的重大变更(Material changes to the risk management)
- 基金经理必须披露资产配置策略(Allocation policy)的重大变更
- ★估值方法的优先顺序 (从优到差): closing market values, third-party valuations, internal valuation models, other methods

SS 3: BEHAVIORAL FINANCE

★R5 The Behavioral Finance Perspective: 行为金融学的观点

一. Traditional Finance vs Behavioral Finance : 行为金融学认为人会受人性的影响,不是所有的投资者都是理性的(normal/正常人);传统金融学认为所有的投资者都是理性的投资者(rational)传统金融学(traditional finance):假设投资者都是风险厌恶(risk-averse),自利(self-interested),追求效用最大化者(utility maximizers),这样的投资者称为理性的投资者,即 REM(rational economic man)behavioral finance micro (BFMI):微观的行为金融学,研究人的行为因素对个性产生的影响behavioral finance macro (BFMA):宏观的行为金融学,研究人的行为因素对群体产生的影响

- ◆ Normative analysis: 按照一定的规范或标准进行理性的分析方法
- ◆ **Descriptive analysis**: 对客观世界进行具体描述的分析方法(真实的人做出的真实的决定的描述), 并不是具体的规范或标准
- ◆ Prescriptive analysis: 对人性的预测,行为金融学在现实中的应用的分析方法
- ★Traditional finance assumptions about behavior as normative
- ★Behavioral finance explanations of behaviors as descriptive
- 二. Traditional Finance Perspectives on Individual Behavior(传统金融学对个人行为的观点)
- 1.贝叶斯公式(Bayes' Formula):用于计算期望效用(expected utility)中条件概率(conditional probability)

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(B|A)P(A)}{P(B)} \quad \text{推导过程:} \\ P(AB) = P(A|B) \times P(B) = P(B|A) \times P(A) \\ P(A|B) = [P(B|A) \times P(A)]/P(B)$$

条件概率(Conditional probability): 当 B 事件发生的时候, A 事件发生的概率,表示为: P(A|B)

联合概率(Joint probability):表示事件 A 和事件 B 同时发生的概率,表示为: P(AB)

注意:传统金融学认为通过贝叶斯公式计算出的条件概率是精准估计的(实际中并不是这样);行为金融 学认为普通投资者对一般的概率估计比较准确,但对于条件概率的估计是非常不准确的

2.效用理论(Utility Theory):

- ◆ Completeness: Choices and preferences are known: 完整性: 不同选择的偏好程度是已知的, 例如: A>B, A<B, A=B
- ◆ Transitivity: Rankings are applied consistently: 可传导性: 排序要有一致性, 例如: X>Y, Y>Z, 则 X>Z
- ◆ **Independence**: Utilities are additive and divisible: 独立性: 效用具有可加性和可分割性,例如:可加性: X>Y,则 X+Z>Y+Z;可分割性: X>Y,则 X+0.5×Z>Y+0.5×Z
- ◆ Continuity: Indifference curves are smooth and unbroken: 连续性: 无差异曲线是光滑和连续的,例如: X>Y>Z,可合成出 w1×X+w2×Z=Y,通过调整效用最高的 X 和效用最低的 Z 的权重,可以合成出效用介于两者之间的 Y 的效用
- 3.Risk Averse (风险厌恶): 传统金融学认为投资者都是风险厌恶的

注意: 行为金融学认为,投资者都是损失厌恶(**loss aversion**)的,面对 gain 时,偏好确定的收益(risk averse); 面对 loss 时,偏好不确定的损失(risk seeking)

心理学原型试验:公司发资金,选择 1:确定的 10 万,选择 2:随机抽取要么发奖金 20 万,要么发奖金 0 万,通常都会选择确定的 10 万(偏好确定的收益)。公司罚款,选择 1:确定的罚款 10 万,选择 2:随机抽取要么罚款 20 万,要么罚款 0 万,通常都会选择随机抽取(偏好不确定的损失)

解读:发奖金的情况下,选择 1 和选择 2 的期望收益都是 10 万,假如真的抽中 20 万,可以把这 20 万 看成是先付 10 万,再付 10 万,前一个 10 万与选择 1 的效用相同,但第二个 10 万的效用会比较小,因 为风险厌恶者的效用是边际递减的

★★Utility Function of Wealth(财富的效用函数,重点记忆无差异曲线的图形)

备注:一级的无差异曲线,横坐标是 σ ,纵坐标是E(R);三级的无差异曲线,横坐标是 wealth,纵坐标是 utility

注意: Risk-Averse 的无差异曲线是凹的(concave), 其财富的效用边际递减; Risk-Seeking 的无差异曲线

是凸的(convex), 其财富的效用边际递增

Utility Function of Risk-Neutral	Utility Function of Risk-Averse	Utility Function of Risk-Seeking
Individual	Individual (diminishing marginal	Individual (increasing marginal
	utility of wealth)	utility of wealth)
Utility (U)	Utility (U)	Utility (U)
Wealth (W)	Wealth (W)	Wealth (W)

三. Behavior Finance Perspectives on Individual Behavior: 行为金融学对个人行为的观点行为金融学对传统金融学的质疑:

- ◆ Bounded rationality: 人是有限理性的,即并不是完全理性,也不是完全不理性,而是部分理性,因为信息的缺失(lack of information),导致决策过程中存在缺陷
- ◆ 优先考虑短期目标(prioritize short-term (spending) goals),即长期投资与短期花费存在内生的冲突,例如:现在花1万元的效用低于把1万储蓄起来30年后花费的效用,但是受到人性的影响,可能更偏好现在就花掉,以立即获得效用
- ◆ 缺乏完美的知识(Lack of perfect knowledge),人不可能对所有的概率都进行精准的估计 注意: 财富的效用函数并不总是凹的(Wealth utility functions may not always be concave),即并不是所 有的人都是 risk averse 的

★★1.Cognitive Errors or Emotional Biases: 认知错误与情感偏差

- ◆ Cognitive Errors (认知错误): 源于统计方法(statistical),信息处理(information-processing),记忆的错误(memory errors),错误应该被改正
- ◆ Emotional Biases (情感偏差):源于冲动(impulse)和直觉(intuition),偏差只能去包容或适应,相比于 cognitive errors,emotional biases 更难克服

Cognitive errors stem from basic statistical, information-processing, or memory errors; cognitive errors may be considered to result from reasoning based on faulty thinking

Emotional biases stem from **impulse** or **intuition**; emotional biases may be considered to result from reasoning influenced by **feelings**

★★2.Attitudes Toward Risk: 对风险的态度

投资者可能同时展现出 risk averse 和 risk seeking 的特征,例如:投资人即会买彩票(risk seeking)又会买保险(risk averse),此时效用函数曲线呈现出双拐点的特征,这样的图形称为: **Double-Inflection Utility Function解读**: 当一个人财富很少时,更偏好于 risk averse,因为输不起,因此更保守,当其财富积累到一定程度时,更偏好于 risk seeking,因为有一些家底,输的起,可以尝试冒险获得更多的财富,当其财富非常多时,这时再获得财富已经没有什么效用了,因此其会更偏好于 risk averse。另外每个人的效用曲线是不同的,另外一些人也可能呈现出完全相同的图形。

Concave
Risk averse

Convex
Risk seeking

Concave
Risk averse

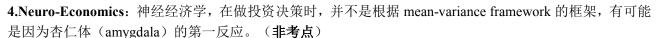
结论: 对风险的态度由财富水平决定

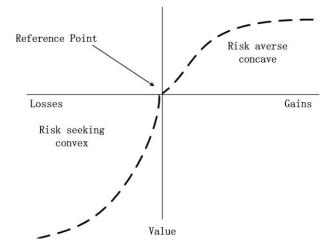
Z

★3.Prospect theory: 前景理论

重点掌握:

- 1) 财富的改变比最终的财富值更能影响决策 (gain 和 loss 反应为财富的改变,即 changes in wealth)
- 2) 图形的解读,其本质为 loss averse,即面对 gain 时,呈现 risk averse 的特征,图形是 concave 的;面对 loss 时,呈现 risk seeking 的特征,图形是 convex 的
- 3) 变化相同单位的 gain 和 loss 所带来的效用的变化是不对称的(asymmetries),一单位的 gain 所带来的效用少,一单位的 loss 所失去的效用多,即面对 loss 时的影响更大





四. Development of the Theory: 理论的发展

Subjective expected utility: 主观期望效用,其特征: 1.低估高概率事件(酒驾),高估低概率事件(买彩票); 2.近期事件的影响比较大

★1.Bounded Rationality: 有限理性: 传统金融学认为投资人是完全理性的(fully rationality),对应 best solution; 行为金融学认为投资人是有限理性的(bounded rationality),对应 acceptable solution

备注: 传统金融学假设效用最大化理论;行为金融学是有限理性(bounded rationality)则假设认为效用达到 **Satisficing** 的程度即可,即**放松了效用最大化的假设**

- ✓ **Satisficing** 兼有满意(satisfy)和牺牲(suffice)的意思,意为凑合,即找一个可以接受的,而非最好的(satisfice rather than optimize)
- ✓ 当愿望达到时,人们倾向于向上调整愿望,当愿望未达到时,人们倾向于向下调整(When aspirations are reached, people tend to adjust the aspirations upward; when aspirations are not reached, people tend to adjust downward)
- ✓ 决策是逐步完成的,直到达到目标状态为止(Decisions are made progressively until the goal state is achieved),即分步达成(divide-and-conquer procedure)
- **2.Prospect Theory:** 前景理论: 其本质为 loss averse,即面对 gain 时,呈现 risk averse 的特征,图形是 concave 的;面对 loss 时,呈现 risk seeking 的特征,图形是 convex 的。前景理论**放松了所有投资者都是 risk averse** 的假设。

Prospect theory 分为两个阶段: 编辑阶段(edited)和估值阶段(evaluation)

- ◆ 编辑阶段(edited)分为6个步骤:决策过程
 - Codification: 投资者可以选择参考点(reference point),以此来划分 gain 和 loss
 - Combination: 结合,例如:一个投资品有 10%的概率获得 5%的收益,另有 20%的概率获得 5%的收益,此时就可以将两者叠加起来,即 30%的概率获得 5%的收益
 - **Segregation**: 分离,例如: 一个投资品有 75%的概率获得\$100 的收益,另有 25%的概率获得 \$150 的收益,此时就可以分离出两种情况: 100%的概率获得\$100 的收益,另有 25%的概率获得额外的\$50 收益
 - Cancellation: 取消, 例如: 两个投资品 A 和 B, 其中 A (20%赚\$200, 30%赚\$500, 50%赚\$800),而 B (20%赚\$200, 35%赚\$400, 45%赚\$900),此时要比较 A 和 B 时就不会考虑相同的部分,即 20%赚\$200
 - **Simplification**: 简单化,例如: 一个投资品 51%的概率赚\$500,49%的概率赚\$800,我们通常会记成 50%的概率赚\$500,50%的概率赚\$800,即大脑不会去记录一个精确的数字,只会记一个大概的数字
 - Detection of dominance: 通过以上的五个步骤,就可以找到绝对领先的决策
- ◆ 估值阶段 (evaluation)

传统的金融学计算效用的公式为: utility= $P_XU_X+P_YU_Y+P_ZU_Z$, 即发生的概率乘以预期的效用,其中概率是使用贝叶期公式**精准估计**获得; 行为金融学计算效用的公式为: utility= $\mathbf{W}_XP_XU_X+\mathbf{W}_YP_YU_Y+\mathbf{W}_ZP_ZU_Z$, 即发生的概率是一个**主观概率**(低估高概率事件,高估低概率事件)

★Traditional Finance vs Bounded Rationality & Prospect Theory: 传统金融学 vs 有限理性&前景理论

Traditional Finance Assumes	Bounded Rationality and Prospect Theory Assumes
Unlimited perfect knowledge: 投资者有无限完	Capacity limitations on knowledge: 投资者有有限的知识
美的知识	
Utility maximization: 效用最大化	Satisfies: 凑合,即 bounded rationality
Fully rational decision making: 完全理性的决策	Bounded rationality. Cognitive limits on decision making:
	有限理性,认知错误和情感偏差会导致认知受限的决策
	(主观概率)
Risk aversion: 风险厌恶	Loss aversion:损失厌恶,即 prospect theory

五. Traditional Perspectives on Market Behavior: 传统的市场行为观点

1.Traditional Perspectives on Portfolio Construction: 组合构建的传统观点

传统金融学使用 mean-variance framework 来构建组合,即收益一定的情况下,风险最小,风险一定的情况下,收益最大

证明有效市场假说不成立的一些反常情况:

- ◆ Fundamental Anomalies: 基本面反常(说明基本面分析无效)
 - **Size effect:** small-sized firms tend to outperform stocks of large-sized firms: 小市值公司表现优于大市值公司,原因: 小市值公司受到的关注度不够,导致其错误定价的可能性更大,所以小市值公司有超额收益
 - Value effect: 投资低 P/E,低 P/B 的公司的股票收益会高于投资高 P/E,高 P/B 的公司的股票 (买的便宜才是真的好)
- ◆ Technical Anomalies: 技术面反常(说明技术面分析有效)
 - Moving Averages:移动平均,金叉买,死叉卖
 - Trading Range Break (Support and Resistance): 支撑位和阻力位
- ◆ Calendar Anomalies: 日历异常
 - January effect: 一月效应,在年底买入股票,在一月初卖出股票,会有超额收益,原因:
 - ✓ tax-loss selling: 避税: 基金经理会将亏损的股票卖掉,确认真实的损失,因此可以少交资本利得税,年底报完税后,下年1月份再买回来,因此12月份很多人都在卖股票,来年1月份很多人都在买股票
 - ✓ window dressing: 例如一个大盘蓝筹股基金,基金经理为了让业绩好看,可能会买入一些小盘成长股,但到了年底要披露财报时,他为了不让别人看到他持仓的小盘成长股,因此他会卖掉这些小盘股,等来年1月份再买回来。(原意为一个人站在窗口,别人只能看到你的上半身,看不到你的下半身,即我想让别人看到的是我最希望别人看到的部分)

总结(Conclusions): 大盘股(large-capitalization stocks)是有效的; 小盘股(small-capitalization stocks) 是无效的

★★2.The Behavioral Finance Perspective:行为金融学的观点(行为金融学的组合构建方法)

◆ ★Consumption and savings: 组合的构建会受消费和储蓄的倾向性的影响,行为金融学认为大部分的人受人性的影响,更注重现在效用的满足,即更倾向消费,因此将大部分的资产配置在生息资产上,获得稳定股利或 coupon,可以满足消费的需求

Consumption and savings 的三个 bias:

Framing: 框架依赖,不同的表达方法可能会导致投资决策的不同。例如: 小和尚问老和尚,念经的时候能吸烟吗? 或者吸烟的时候能念经吗?

Self-control: 自控偏差,由于自控能力比较差,因此选择现在消费而非储蓄

Mental accounting: 心理账户,例如: 10 万元,如果是中彩票获得,则更倾向立即消费,如果是辛苦存了三年获得,则更倾向于储蓄

备注: behavioral life-cycle model: 将心理账户分为三类: current income(类似本月奖金,最容易被消费掉),currently owned assets(类似年终奖金),present value of future income(类似遣散费)

- ◆ Behavioral asset pricing: 在传统金融学的资本资产定价模型 CAPM 的基础上加入了 sentiment premium (**情感溢价**), 其定价公式为: **re=rf+** β (**rm-rf**)+sentiment premium, 结论: 越厌恶一件事情,则这件事情的 sentiment premium 就越高
- ◆ ★Behavioral portfolio theory (BPT): 将需求进行层次化(金字塔),最底层是 required objective,即一定要达成的目标,例如: 投资目的是养老,生活,教育类,因此要配置风险低的资产; 最高层是 desired objective,即希望达到的目标,例如: 投资目的是环球旅行经费,这个目标不是必要的,因此可以配置风险高的资产。

BPT 的重要结论:

- The importance of each goal to the investor:每个层级对投资者的重要性不同,越底层越重要
- Asset selection: 目标越重要,则配置资产的风险就要越低
- The number of assets in a layer: 每层配置的资产数量越多,则分散效果越好,说明投资者是 risk averse 的
- information advantage: 投资者认为存在信息优势时,则资产配置应该越集中(concentrated)
- loss-averse: 每个层级的资产配置中,现金越多,说明投资者是 risk averse 的

考点:

1.投资者的组合中,有无风险国债和风险比较大的小盘股,问投资者最有可能是使用哪种组合的构建方法? 答: Behavioral portfolio theory,无风险国债对应 required objective,小盘股对应 desired objective 2.通过 BPT 理论构建出的组合,风险是 single level of risk,这句话是正确的还是错误的? 答:错误的,因为是分层的,每层的风险都不同,因此是 multiple level of risk

3.通过 BPT 理论构建出的组合是 efficient 还是 inefficient? 答: **inefficient**,因为资产配置都是分层考虑的,而不是按组合整体考虑

备注: mean-variance framework 配置出的资产是 single level of risk,是 efficient 的

◆ Adaptive markets hypothesis (AMH): 适应市场假设,例如: 有 100 万的可投资资金,先拿出 10 万投资适应一下市场的反应,如果能赚钱就加大投资,如果不能赚钱就调整投资的策略。在这种情况下,只有不断改变(change)和适应(adapt)市场的投资者可以存活。

★★★R6 The Behavioral Biases of Individuals: 个人的行为偏差

- 一. Cognitive Errors and Emotional Biases: 认知错误与情感偏差(5-4-6)
- ◆ Cognitive Errors: 认知错误是由于统计错误(statistical errors),信息处理错误(information-processing errors),记忆错误(memory errors),通常是由于错误的推理(faulty reasoning)所导致
- ◆ Emotional Biases: 情感偏差是由于冲动(impulse)和直觉(intuition)所导致
- 二. Cognitive errors 的分类: Cognitive errors 应该改正
- ◆ belief perseverance biases: 固执己见
 - 1) Conservatism bias: 保守性偏差: maintain their prior views, inadequately incorporating new information。 题眼: new information, old information。 例如: 人一旦下了一个结论, 当有新信息进入时, 也很难改变这个结论。修正: properly analyzing and weighting new information

心理学原型: 免子这类的啮齿类动物都是比较保守的,如果免子从 A 地跑到 B 地,它会认为这条路径是安全的,当免子已经跑向 B 地时,我们只要在 A 地吓它一下,他就会跑回 A 地,不会换路径

2) Confirmation bias: 确认性偏差: look for confirming evidence while ignoring evidence that contradicts。题眼: contradition。例如: 一个人做了一个结论,这时他只会看到那些支持他结论的信息,会自动忽略与他的结论相冲突(contradition)的信息,类似先入为主(导致分散化不足)。修正:

Develop screening criteria, actively seeking out information that challenges your beliefs

心理学原型:分析师认为一支股票是被低估的,这时只会去找支持这一结论的信息,例如: P/E 比较低, sale 上升,会自动忽略与他的结论相冲突的信息,例如: leverage 上升,高管离职等

3) ★★ Representativeness bias: 代表性偏差: tend to classify new information based on past experiences and classifications。题眼: 一个投资品,过去几年的表现好,则将来表现好,一个公司过

去是 growth 型公司,将来也是 growth 型公司。例如:<u>套母版,拿过去推未来</u>,即过去的经验,会影响将来的决策。修正:提问自己一系列的问题

心理学原型: 一个人过去被戴眼镜的人伤害过,以后就对戴眼镜的人没有好感(好公司→好股票)

4) Illusion of control: 控制错觉: people tend to believe that they can control or influence outcomes when, in fact, they cannot。例如: 自己所做的事情,会对最终的<u>结果产生影响</u>。题眼: outcome。修正: seek contrary viewpoints and keep record

心理学原型:在彩票站询问刚刚花\$2 买了彩票的人,问他愿不愿意以\$2 的价格把彩票卖给心理学家。结果是不愿意,因为这个人觉得自己选的数字能中奖(错误的以为自己的选择会对结果产生影响),不想放弃一个中奖的机会,通过沟通,这个人最终愿意以\$8 的价格卖给心理学家

5) Hindsight bias: 后见之明: may see past events as having been predictable。例如: 事后诸葛亮。 修正: carefully record and examine their investment decisions

心理学原型: 央行降准后, A 说股市应该利好, 结果股市真的大涨, 但是 A 并没有买入股票

记忆技巧: RICCH, rich 中多了一个 c, 有钱任性, 固执己见

- ◆ processing biases: 信息处理时的错误
 - 1) Anchoring and adjustment: 锚定效应: generally begin by envisioning some initial <u>default number</u> an "anchor" which they then adjust up or down。眼题: default number,例如: 公司公布预估的明年的增长率为 28%,分析师经过分析预估的增长率为 27.89%,两个数据很接近,有理由相信分析师可能被 28%这个数字锚住了。修正: 提问自己一系列的问题(I am anchored to purchase price or high water mark)

心理学原型:一个杯子公允价值是5元,先问社保号最后1位是什么数字,再问这个杯子价值多少钱?心理学家会发现,如果社保账户最后1位是比较大的数字(8或9),则估计出杯子的价格会比较高;如果社保账户最后1位是比较小的数字(0,1,2),则估计出杯子的价格会比较低

- 2) Mental accounting bias: 心理账户偏差: treat one sum of money differently。题眼: 不同账户的投资策略也不同。修正: focus on total return
- 3) Framing bias: 框架依赖: answers a question differently based on the way in which it is asked (framed)。不同的表述方法,带来的决策结果也不同。修正: 提问自己一系列的问题
- **4)** Availability bias: 可得性偏差: approach to estimating the probability of an outcome based on how easily the outcome comes to mind。题眼: 顾客购买了经常在电视上做广告(advertising)的基金。例如: 最先推荐给客户的东西,可能是最先想到的东西

Availability bias 的同种情况:

- Retrievability: 最先想到的
- Narrow range of experience: 经验比较少,对某领域的了解非常有限

记忆技巧: FAMA, Fama-French Model

- 三. Emotional biases 的分类: Emotional biases 应该去适应
- 1) Loss aversion bias: 损失厌恶偏差: losses are significantly more powerful than gains/Hold investments in a loss position longer, Sell investments in a gain position。面对 gain 时,呈现 risk averse 的特征,面对 loss 时,呈现 risk seeking 的特征。另一个纬度的表现: realized gain, unrealized loss

注意: loss aversion 等价于 prospect theory 等价于 disposition effect

- Myopic loss aversion: 短视的损失厌恶: overemphasize short term gains and losses and weigh losses more heavily than gains。过度强调短期收益,而忽略了长期收益
- **2)Overconfidence bias:** 过度自信偏差: people demonstrate unwarranted faith in their own intuitive reasoning。题眼,我是一个行业专家(expert),我了解这个行业(I know the industry),分为两个纬度。修正: should review their trading records,检查自己的交易记录,如果发现历史业绩不佳,就不会这么自信了
 - **Prediction overconfidence: 预测的过度自信**: 题眼: 分析师预测了公司 sale 的增长率为 27.98%,只给出一个<u>精确的数据</u>过于自信(或者区间非常小的范围,例如 27.67%-27.77%),合理的预测应该是预测一个增长率的合理范围
 - Certainty overconfidence: 结果/概率的过度自信:

- Self-attribution bias: 自我归因: 题眼: 好的都跟我有关, 坏的都跟我无关
 - self-enhancing bias: 自我提升偏差:例如:公司今年的业绩好,管理层就认为都是自己的功劳
- self-protecting bias: 自我保护偏差:例如:公司今年的业绩不好,管理层认为不是自己的问题心理学原型:询问驾驶员车技如何,共三个选择,高于平均,平均水平,低于平均,统计发现 70%的人都会选择高于平均。再询问出了车祸,住在医院的驾驶员,问他们的车技如何,结果也是 70%的人选择高于平均
- 3) Self-control bias: 自我控制偏差: fail to act in pursuit of their long-term, overarching goals because of a lack of self-discipline。控制 consumption 或 saving,由于受人性的影响,自控能力比较差,因此选择现在消费而非储蓄(忍不住把钱花掉了)。修正: Save insufficiently for the future
- **4) Status quo bias: 惰性偏差: people do nothing instead of making a change**。题眼: 分析师问投资者, 你多久 check 一下你的 portfolio, 分析师就是想看看投资者有没有 status quo bias。特征: **Unknowingly maintain portfolios/Fail to explore other opportunities**
- **5)** Endowment bias: 养老偏差: people value an asset more when they hold rights to it than when they do not。题眼:遗产(heritage),过去的成功投资,例如:对一个投资品赋予了情感,并不是看成一个单纯的投资品。修正:问自己这个标的资产现在让我买,我还愿意买吗?

心理学原型:父亲在世时买了价值 100 万的股票,过世时作为遗产,留给了儿子,虽然儿子不看好这些股票,但从情感上认为这是父亲留给他的父爱,不舍得卖出

6) ★Regret-aversion bias: 后悔厌恶偏差: tend to avoid making decisions that will result in action out of fear that the decision will turn out poorly。题眼: 过去投资了一个产品,产生了巨大的损失,将来投资时就不会再去投资这个产品了;担心市场的波动,会对我们组合产生影响,最好什么都不做。分为两个纬度: Regret of commission: 做了某个事情,后悔了;Regret of omission: 没做某个事情,后悔了(更倾向于不采取行动)。Herding behavior: 羊群效应: 即从众心理,例如: 大家都买某个投资品,我也会去买,因为害怕将来后悔,属于 Regret-aversion bias 的一种表现形式

备注: Representativeness bias 过去是好的产品,Regret-aversion bias 过去是不好的产品

记忆技巧: LOSSER, 即 LOSS+ER

考试题型:给一段描述,问是哪种偏差,再问这种偏差应该改正,还是应该适应(考核分类)

- ★Cognitive Errors Info. Processing Four Causes: 认知错误—信息处理错误的四个原因:
- Retrievability: 可追溯性,对某个问题的答案,快速反应在脑海里,或第一个想到的答案
- Categorization: 归类,不同问题要使用不同的搜索逻辑,例如:某个地方的人都是骗子
- Narrow range of experience: 经验比较少,对某领域的了解非常有限
- Resonance: 共振, 例如: 我先喜欢爵士乐, 就会高估喜欢爵士乐的人数

四. Investment Policy and Asset Allocation: 投资策略与资产配置

**	Cognitive Errors	Emotional Bias
High wealth/	Modest changes	Larger changes
low SLR	+/— 5 to 10% maximum per asset class	+/— 10 to 15% maximum per asset class
Low wealth/	close to the rational asset allocation	Modest changes
high SLR	+/— 0 to 3% maximum per asset class	+/— 5 to 10% maximum per asset class

SLR: standard of living risk: 不能以当前状态继续生活下去的风险(不看财富的绝对规模,需要结合 SLR 来评估财富的高低)

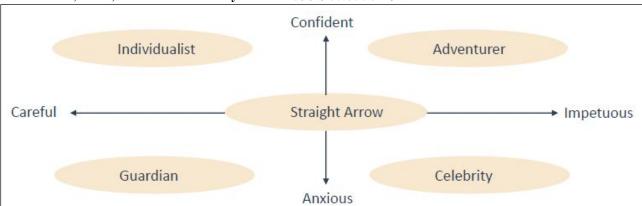
+/- 5 to 10%: 指与合理的资产配置的偏差

结论: Cognitive Errors 要克服; Emotional Bias 要接纳; 财富水平高的人,能够允许的资产配置偏差更大

- The lower the client's standard of living risk, the greater the client's effective wealth
- cognitive errors should be mitigated (moderated) and emotional biases should be accommodated (adapted to)
- the wealthier the client, the more her behavioral biases can be accommodated (adapted to)

R7 Behavioral Finance and Investment Processes: 行为金融与投资过程(行为金融学的应用)

- 一. Classifying Investors into Behavioral Types: 根据行为对投资者进行分类
- ◆ ★Barnewall two-way model: 将投资者分为两类: Passive investors(被动投资者,别人的资金承担风险,risk tolerance 更低,例如: 工资、中彩票、遗产)和 Active investors(主动投资者,自己的资金承担风险,risk tolerance 更高,例如: 企业家、股民)
- ◆ Bailard, Biehl, and Kaiser five-way model: 将投资者分为五类:



备注: 横坐标代表投资的意愿,从谨慎(careful)到冲动(impetuous); 纵坐标代表投资的能力,从自信(confident)到焦虑(anxious)

Adventurer: 代表人物,涨停敢死队 (unwilling to take advice); individualist: 代表人物,纪老师 (good to work with); guardian: 代表人物,退休的人; celebrity: 代表人物,跟风派

◆ ★★the Pompain model: 将投资者分为四类: 为了使顾问与客户进行良好的沟通

General type	Passive			Active
Risk tolerance	Low			High
Investment style	Conservative	Moderate	Growth	Aggressive
Bias types	Emotional	Cognitive	Cognitive	Emotional
BITs	Passive	Friendly	Independent	Active
	Preserver (PP)	Follower (FF)	Individualist (II)	Accumulator (AA)
Emotional bias	Endowment	Regret aversion	Overconfidence	Overconfidence
	Loss aversion		and	Self-control
	Status quo		self-attribution	
	Regret aversion			
Cognitive errors	Mental accounting	Availability	Conservatism	Illusion of control
	Anchoring and	Hindsight	Availability	
	adjustment	Framing	Confirmation	
			Representativeness	

考点:

- PP 与 FF 属于 passive investors, II 与 AA 属于 active investors; PP 与 AA 展现 emotional bias, FF 与 II 展现 cognitive errors
- 与 PP 沟通的重点:侧重保全资产的安全性(safety),多描绘 big picture(养老金稳定,收入稳定), PP 的专业性比较差,少说专业词汇(期望收益,标准差)
- FF 跟随的可能是他的 colleagues, friends, adviser, 投资的产品都是当前流行的投资品(popular investment)
- 与 II 沟通的重点: II 具有一定的专业性,要展现出对他的尊敬(show respect)
- AA 投资者,通常是 first generation of wealth

✓Limitations of Classifying Investors into BITs: 投资者分类的限制

- 投资者可能同时展现出 emotional biases 和 cognitive errors: Individuals may exhibit both cognitive errors and emotional biases
- 投资者可能同时展现出多个投资风格: Individuals may exhibit characteristics of multiple investor types

- 随着投资者年龄和经验的增长,投资的风格和投资人的分类也会变化: Individuals will likely go through behavioral changes as they age
- 投资者在不可预知的时间会展现出不理性(irrationally),因此无法分类: Individuals act irrationally at different times and without predictability

The Client/Adviser Relationship: 客户和顾问的关系(共赢)

- 顾问应该了解客户的目标和特征: The adviser understands the client's financial goals and characteristics
- 顾问应该使用稳定一致的方法给客户做建议: These are considered when developing the investment policy statement
- 根据客户的预期进行推荐: The adviser invests as the client expects
- 客户和顾问双方受益: The relationship benefits both client and adviser

Risk tolerance questionnaires: 风险承受能力的问卷调查(questionnaires)

- 在问卷调查中,可能存在 framing bias 的问题,不同的问法,结果可能不同
- 在问卷调查中,只能发现客户的 cognitive errors,不能发现客户的 emotional bias
- 二. 在现实世界中应用行为金融学
- 1) Portfolio Construction DC plan: DC plan 相当于个人投资者,存在以下几个特点:
- Status quo bias,通过 target date funds(生命周期基金:到期强制修改投资品)化解 Status quo bias 的问题
- Naive diversification(天真的分散化): 以相同权重来配置资产,各占组合的 1/n,也称为 conditional 1/n strategy
- Familiarity bias and overconfidence effects: Familiarity: 投资熟悉的股票,属于 availability bias; overconfidence: 过度自信
- Naive extrapolation of past returns: 本质为 Representativeness bias, 即代表性偏差
- 员工会大量持有自己公司的股票,原因:员工特别了解自己的公司,而且比较省事,存在 Status quo bias 问题,同时存在 Loyalty effect (员工认为卖掉雇主赠送的股票是不忠诚的行为,属于 endowment bias)
- Financial incentives: 员工购买自己公司股票,公司会打折出售,鼓励员工买自己公司的股票,这种情况如果买了不视为 Familiarity bias
- Excessive trading: 过度交易,由于 overconfidence 导致了 Excessive trading
- **disposition effect:** 人性的偏差 investors tend to sell winners and hold on to losers, 等价于 loss aversion
- ★Home bias: 投资的资产中,绝大多数是本国的投资品,本质为 Availability bias
- 2) Behavioral Portfolio vs Mean Variance Portfolio: 行为金融学 VS 均值方差组合

从非专业向专业过渡,即投资者并不是使用 mean variance framework 进行投资,而是使用 layering 进行资产配置

3.1) Analyst Forecasts & Behavioral Finance (分析师特有的偏差)

- Overconfidence in forecasting skills: 自视有专业性,容易出现对自己估计能力的过度自信
 - ✓ Illusion of knowledge bias: 自以为自己的知识很强
 - ✓ Illusion of control bias: 自以为有控制力
 - ✓ **Self-attribution bias**: 好的归因为自己; 坏的把责任推给别人
 - ✓ Representativeness: 根据过去的经验进行简单的推理
 - ✓ Availability bias: 只投资自己最先想到的产品
 - ✓ Hindsight bias: 事后诸葛亮
- **Influence by Company Management**: 受管理层的影响(framing bias, anchoring and adjustment, availability bias)
 - ✓ Framing: 例如: 上市公司的 MD&A 由于不同的描述,可能会对分析师的预期和理解产生影响
 - ✓ Anchoring: 例如: 上市公司利用锚定效应, 使得分析师得到错误的预期
 - ✓ Availability: 例如:分析师被管理层最近公告的信息所影响,得出错误的预期

Analysts should also recognize the possibility of a self-attribution bias in company executives that arises from the impact of incentive compensation on company reporting: 分析师也应该认识到薪酬激励对公司

报告的影响,管理层可能会存在自我归因的偏见

- **Analyst Biases in Research**: 分析师的研究本身就可能存在偏差(confirmation bias, gambler's fallacy, representative bias)
 - ✓ Confirmation bias: 分析师只关注证明自己观点的信息,而忽略了与自己观点相矛盾的信息
 - ✓ The gamblers' fallacy: expecting reversals to occur more frequently than actually happens 错误的估计事件发生的概率,例如分析师过快估计了均值回归的概率
 - ✓ representativeness bias: 根据过去的经验简单推理
- 3.2) BF vs Committee Decision Making: 投资决策委员会
- ★Social proof bias: individuals are biased to follow the beliefs of a group。类似少数服从多数,例如:人往往都是跟随集体建议,而实际上大家可能都没仔细研究

如何克服 Social proof bias:

- A committee is made up of members from diverse backgrounds: 投委会成员来自于不同背景
- Members are independent enough to express and support their own views rather than falling into line with the views of others: 成员是足够独立的,能够表达和支持他们自己的观点,而不是与他人观点一致
- The chair should actively encourage alternative opinions so that all perspectives are covered: 主席应积极鼓励其他意见,以便涵盖所有的观点
- 4) BF vs Market Behavior: 行为金融 VS 市场行为
- Closed-end fund discounts: 封闭式基金有折价
- Momentum or trending effects: 冲量效应,例如:股票的变化趋势存在惯性(暴涨暴跌)
- Herding: 羊群效应,大家都跟风进行操作,由于 availability bias/recency effect 所引起
- **Regret**: 为了避免后悔而行动(trend-chasing effect)

注意: 个人投资者避免后悔是倾向于不行动; 市场避免后悔参与者倾向于行动(羊群效应所导致)

Financial Bubbles and Crashes: 金融泡沫和危机

★CFA 协会认为出现泡沫或危机的现象: 1.价格偏离长期均值 2 个标准差; 2 资产价格几个月内变动超过30%

Periods of significant overvaluation or undervaluation can persist for more than one year, rather than rapidly correcting to fair value: 根据历史高估和低估都常会持续超过 1 年,而不会快速修正成公允价值

导致 Bubbles and Crashes 的原因: overconfidence, confirmation bias, self-attribution bias, Hindsight bias, illusion of knowledge, disposition effect/loss aversion

Value and Growth: 价值股与成长股

- Value effect: value 型公司的 return 要大于 growth 型公司
- ★Halo effect: 光环效应: 其本质就是 representativeness bias

SS 4: PRIVATE WEALTH MANAGEMENT (1)

★★R8 Managing Individual Investor Portfolios: 管理个人投资组合

Objectives

- ◆ Return (考描述、计算)
 - Required vs. Desired
 - Real vs. Nominal
 - Pre- vs. Post-tax total
- ◆ Risk tolerance (考描述)
 - Ability and willingness

Constraints

- ◆ Time horizon (考描述)
- ◆ Liquidity needs(考描述、计算)
- ◆ Taxes (重点后续)
- ◆ Legal and regulatory needs
- ◆ Unique circumstances

- ◆ Source of Wealth: 财富的来源
 - Entrepreneurial activity: 企业家的活动所带来的财富,属于 active,相对承担风险的能力更强
 - Inheritance(继承)、one-time windfalls(意外之财)、built up over long periods of safe employment (工资),属于 passive,相对承担风险的能力更弱

备注: 区分 active 和 passive, 主要看自有资金是否承担风险, 有风险就是 active, 没有风险就是 passive

- ◆ Measure of wealth: 财富的衡量
 - Positive correlation between level of risk tolerance & client's perception of wealth: 风险承受能力与客户财富的感知(收益率)是正相关

备注: return 的目标越大,则 asset base 越小,降低了家庭承受风险的能力(Return 的目标在 10%以上,则 asset base 越小)

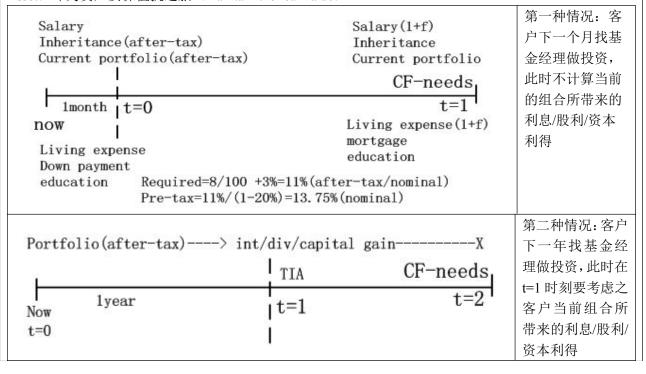
- ◆ Stage of life: 生命阶段
 - Foundation phase: 基础阶段
 - Accumulation phase: 积累阶段
 - Maintenance phase (retirement): 维护阶段(退休)
 - Distribution phase: 分发阶段(遗产分配)
- ◆ Return Objective: 收益率目标

Open-ended: 开放式(1型计算)

Required rate=CF-needs(现金流目标) + asset(资产抗通胀)

CF-needs: 即为 CF inflow — CF outflow

Asset: 即为资产要保值抗通胀 (maintain the real value)



重要假设:

- salary 和 expense 可能发生在期中,但在计算时全部假设为发生在期末,例如:客户当前 29 岁 11 个月,salary 则特指客户 29 岁这年的工资在年底发放
- Old portfolio,即原来的组合中的资产,全部假设无成本变现,作为 TIA
- 0 时刻的 TIA 是税后的; 另外费用都是税后的
- 在1时刻,工资随通胀调整而调整,因此1时刻的 salary 即为 salary(1+f)
- 在 1 时刻,living expense 随通胀调整而调整,因此 1 时刻的 living expense 即为 living expense (1+f) **原理**: 假设 0 时刻的 TIA 为 100 万,1 时刻的 cf-needs 为花费 10 万,自己收入 2 万,此时的缺口即为 8 万,这 8 万元应该从组合的收益中获得,另外通胀率为 3%,此时(下一年)组合的收益率应该为 8/100=8% + 3%=11% (税后),税前收益率为 11%/(1-t),另外税前税后收益率都是 **nominal** 的

注意: TIA(total investable assets): 在 0 时刻可以拿给基金经理做资产配置的钱,**隐含的假设**: 当基金经理在 0 时刻拿到 TIA 之后,会无成本的将 TIA 变现

注意: 自住房不属于 TIA,将来能拿到的遗产不属于 TIA

Closed-ended: 封闭式(2型计算)

原理:假设 30 岁的 TIA 为 1000 万,到 60 岁时要达到 3000 万做养老使用,其间每年有一笔 10 万的房贷,求这 30 年的收益率。N=30, PV=-1000, PMT=10, FV=3000, CPT I/Y?

注意:期初投入的 TIA 为负号,期间的花费需要从组合的收益中获得,因此是正号

◆ Risk objective (Tolerance): 风险目标(承受能力)

Risk objective(Tolerance): 能力和意愿两者取其低

Ability(能力)

- Time horizon & ability to take risk positively related
- Portfolio size & ability to take risk positively related
- Goal importance & ability to take risk negatively related
- Spending needs & ability to take risk negatively related
- Flexibility can increase the ability to take risk

Willingness (意愿)

历史投资(持仓):

银行/货币市场基金, 意愿低

小盘股, 意愿高

对市场波动的表现:

Anxiety (焦虑), 意愿低

客户自己阐述的情况:无上述描述才考虑, 且客户的理解不一定准确

◆ Time horizon (投资期限)

Long time horizon/multistage:

- 中青年夫妇有遗产
- 高管退休
- 青年退休(足球运动员, IT 创业)

注意: stage 的划分,看是否存在重大支出或改变

◆ Liquidity Needs(流动性需要)

- 流动性需要通常是短期的,例如:下一年
- 在 open-ended 的计算中,下一年的缺口就是流动性需要
- 在 t=1 时刻,收入 10 万,花费 5 万,则不需要流动性要求,因为收入本身可以覆盖花费
- 在 1 时刻,收入 10 万,花费 15 万,则需要 流动性,其中有 5 万的费用需要从 TIA 中变现

◆ Tax Considerations (税务方面的考虑)

- 不同的收入进项,存在不同的税率
- 如果资本利得税 5%,股利税 20%,则更侧重于投资税率低的投资品

◆ Legal & Regulatory (法律和法规)

- 考试通常不涉及
 - ◆ Unique circumstances(独特的情况)
- SRI (social responsible investing): 社会责任的投资,例如: 喜爱和平,则不投军工企业; 提倡健康,则不投资烟酒行业

注意:通常原文会有描述,但不要原封不动的抄下来,以提炼重点为主

◆ ★Choosing the Optimal Asset Allocation:选择最优化的资产配置

- meet the after-tax return objective: 满足税后的收益率要求(可能需要计算)
- violate shortfall statement: 违反了客户风险方面的要求
- disallowed asset classes: 组合中存在 IPS 不允许的资产类型(包括投资了大量与客户自身工作相关性很高的资产)
- fails to meet liquidity requirements:不满足流动性要求

- Always minimize cash (3-6 months' living expense): 现金最小化(3-6 个月的生活开销,非绝对)
- 选择 sharpe ratio 最大的组合

◆ Monte Carlo Simulation - Advantages:蒙特卡罗模拟的优点

- path-dependent: 路径依赖,蒙特卡罗模拟可以模拟若干种不同的路径
- understanding of short-term and long-term risk: 了解短期和长期风险
- multi-period effects: 蒙特卡罗模拟支持多期效果
- can be considered to answer questions: 可以解答一些问题, 例如通过结果的分布分析多大的概率能实现财务自由, 提前退休

◆ Monte Carlo Simulation - Disadvantages: 蒙特卡罗模拟的缺点

- relies only on historical data: 依赖历史数据
- tax consequences: 未考虑税收的问题
- simulates the performance of specific investments, not just asset classes: 应该去模拟个体投资的业绩,而非资产类别

◆ 6 steps to formulate personal IPS: 制定个人 IPS 的 6 个步骤

- Investors classify: 个人投资者的分类
- cash flow analysis & TIA estimation: 现金流分析和可投资资产的估计
- Calculate Returns: 计算收益率(根据 t=1 时刻的 CF needs 和 asset 抗通胀)
- Risk Tolerance(2i2d): 计算风险承受能力(两个增加能力的因素,两个降低能力的因素)
- Constraints (T&L): 投资限制(投资期限和法律法规)
- Renew the objectives: 检查投资目标

◆ Investors classify: 个人投资者的分类

- Source of wealth: 财富的来源
 - ✓ Employee with annual salaries: 雇员的年薪
 - ✓ Own invest-able asset (deposit): 个人的可投资资产
 - ✓ Trust distribution/Inherit money/one-time windfall: 信托/继承/意外之财
- Size of wealth: 财富的规模(看相对收益,而非绝对规模)
 - ✓ There is one-time windfall, size is large: 模拟很大
 - ✓ or size will be small: 规模很小
- Stage of life: 生命的阶段
 - ✓ The pre-retirement period is long: 退休前
 - ✓ There is also the period after retirement: 退休后
- Personal considerations: 个人的考虑
 - ✓ With children education expenses: 有孩子,教育的花费
 - ✓ With mortgage liquidity needs: 有按揭,流动性要求
 - ✓ With tax: 税率

◆ Return objectives: 收益率目标 (return=CF needs+ asset)

- Asset
 - ✓ Maintain the inflation-adjusted value: 资产抗通胀
 - ✓ Asset appreciation: 资产增值
 - ✓ Specific targets: 特别的目标

Cash flow needs

- ✓ ✓ Support living expense (now and retirement): 生活开销
- ✓ **J** Support mortgage liquidity needs: 按揭,流动性需要
- ✓ ✓ Support children's education: 孩子教育
- ✓ Support parents' living expense: 父母生活开销
- ✓ Support families' health care expense: 家庭健康开销
- ✓ Support insurance premium payment: 保险费

注意:

- salary>living expense 时,有两种做法: 1.剩余部分可作为 TIA; 2.或递减流动性需求
- SalarySalaryiving expense 时,缺口加入 CF needs/liquidity needs

♦ Cash flow analysis

	Time	T0	T1
Inflor	Salary	S	S×(1+f)
Inflow	Trust/inheritance	G	0
Total inflow		S+G	S×(1+f)
	Tax	S×t	$S\times(1+f)\times t$
	Living expense	L	L×(1+f)
Outflow	Down payment	D	0
Outilow	Mortgage payment	0	MG
	Charity donation	C	0
Other one-time need		T	0
Total outflow		$S \times t + L + D + C + T$	$S\times(1+f)\times t + L\times(1+f) + MG$
Net cash flow		Total in—Total out	Total in—Total out
备注: T0 时刻,收入>支出,剩余部分作为 TIA; T1 时刻,收入<流出,缺口作为 CF needs			

♦ Return calculation

TL	A	CF needs	ATN (after tax nominal)	PTN (pre tax nominal)
•	Current portfolio			
•	Net CF in at T0	Net CFs at T ₁	Net CFs at T_1	DOTAL ATENIAL A
•	Excluding house and	$R_r = -\frac{1}{TIA}$	$K_f = -\frac{TIA}{TIA} + J$	PTN=ATN/(1-tax)
	unavailable Inheritance			

♦ Risk tolerance

Ability 2i	Ability 2d	
• They have a long time horizon	• After-tax salary can not cover living expense	
• They are young , with more human capital	• Sustained Cash flows (Mortgage) must be paid	
• They may get inheritance in future	Asset base is small	
• Their job and income are secure	(total return≥10%; living expense/TIA≥6%)	
• Their health <u>insurance</u> is provided	Other uncertainties	

♦ Closed-ended calculation

Main issue: Renew return objective close to retirement

- Re-calculate the net CF need annually → PMT
- Re-calculate the asset base now → PV
- Calculate the target asset value when retire → FV
- Calculate the required rate of return \rightarrow I/Y

注意: 现金流符号不要弄错; CPT I/Y 计算出的是 ATN, 另外要注意题目要求计算的是不是 PTN

R9 Taxes and Private Wealth Management in a Global Context: 全球化背景下的税收与私人财富管理

一. Global taxation regimes: 全球税收制度

Major sources of government tax revenue: 政府税收的主要来源

- Taxes on income: 所得税,分为工资所得税(ordinary)和投资所得税
- Wealth-based taxes: 对拥有的财富进行征税,分为房产税和遗产税
- Taxes on consumption: 消费税, 分为 Sales taxes are taxes 和 Value-added taxes (不考)
 - ◆ Accrual Taxation: 赚钱的部分每年征税(taxed annually), 1 代表本金, R 代表收益, T 代表税率
 公式意义: 收益率和税率不变, N 年后 FV 是多少
- ◆ Tax drag: 由于征税导致赚取的资本利得变少,共分两种形式的计算:

 $tax drag = (1+R)^{N} - [1+R(1-t)]^{N}$

tax drag%=tax drag\$/[(1+R)^N-1] (分母是不交税的增值部分,因此要减去本金) **结论**:

- Tax drag% > tax rate: 通常 tax drag 比 tax rate 高(复利的原因)
- Investment horizon ↑ => tax drag \$ & % ↑
- Investment return ↑ => tax drag \$ & % ↑
- ◆ Deferred Capital Gain Tax: 递延的资本利得税(unrealized capital gain)

计算公式: FV_{CG}=(1+R)^N - [(1+R)^N -1]×T_{CG}

Tax drag $=[(1+R)^N-1]\times T_{CG}$

Tax drag%= $[(1+R)^N - 1] \times T_{CG}/[(1+R)^N - 1] = T_{CG}$

结论:

- Tax drag % = tax rate: Tax drag % 等于 tax rate (只交一次税, 无复利效果)
- investment horizon † => tax drag% is unchanged
- Investment return ↑ => tax drag% is unchanged

Tax drag\$方面: (绝对金额增加)

- investment horizon increases=>the value of the tax deferral increases: 投资期限增加, Tax drag\$增加
- investment return increases=>value of the tax deferral increases: 投资收益率增加, Tax drag\$增加
- ◆ Cost basis: 税基,是 deferred capital gain tax 的一种特殊情况(适用于 cost basis≠1 的情况)

原理:分成两个阶段,第二阶段与 deferred capital gain tax 的原理相同,第一阶段在开始的时候其 cost basis 为 B (%),到 t=0 时刻时,变卖掉正好使得 cost basis=1,因此第一阶段需要缴纳 deferred capital gain tax,即(1-B)×T_{CG}

◆ Wealth-based Taxes: 对所持有的全部财富征税(类似房产税)

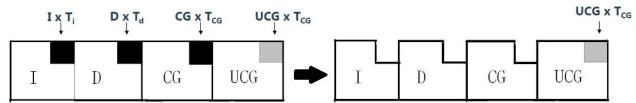
 $FV=[(1+R)\times(1-t)]^N$

原理: 投资的收益和本金都需要交税,因此每年的实际收益为[(1+R)×(1-t)],再按投资期限复利计算**结论:**

- Tax drag % > tax rate
- investment horizon \(\dag{ > tax drag \(\hat{\chi} \); tax drag \(\hat{\chi} \)
- ★investment return ↑ => tax drag \$ ↑; tax drag % ↓

备注: Return 上升,tax drag%下降的证明: 假设投资一年,则 tax drag%=[(1+R)-(1+R)(1-t)]/[(1+R)-1],通过化简得到 t/R+t,因此 R 上升,tax drag%下降(收益越高,摊在本金上的税就越少)

◆ Blend Taxing Environments: 混合的税收环境



原理: 组合的税前收益 R_{PT} =10%,即所有的税都没有缴纳,组合的收益是由 I,DIV,CG,UCG 组成,其中 I 要交 T_I ,DIV 要交 T_D ,CG 要交 T_{CG} ,只有 UCG 是 deferred tax 现在不用交。因为要缴纳 T_I , T_D , T_{CG} ,因此并不是以 R_{PT} =10%进行复利计算,所以要将 $P_I \times T_I + P_D \times T_D + P_{CG} \times T_{CG}$ 剔除掉(P_I 为比例),从而得到税后收益率 R_{ART} = R_{PT} [1- $(P_I \times T_I + P_D \times T_D + P_{CG} \times T_{CG})$],剩下的就是 deferred tax,因此根据 deferred tax 的 FV 计算公式 FV_{CG} =(1+ R_I)^N - I[(1+ R_I)^N -1] \times I[(1+ R_I) \times -1] \times

此可以得到一个公式 $P_{UCG} \times T_{CG} = T_{ECG} \times [1-(P_1 \times T_1 + P_D \times T_D + P_{CG} \times T_{CG})]$,另外 $P_{UCG} = 1-(P_1 + P_D + P_{CG})$,最终得到 $T_{ECG} = T_{CG} \times [1-(P_1 + P_D + P_{CG})]/[1-(P_1 \times T_1 + P_D \times T_D + P_{CG} \times T_{CG})]$ 。得到 T_{ECG} 的值后,整个组合的 FV 就可以计算了(假设 $CB \neq 1$ 时), $FV = (1+R_{ART})^N - [(1+R_{ART})^N - 1] \times T_{ECG} - (1-B)T_{CG}$ (因为是将以前的资产变卖掉,因此要使用原来的资本得利税 T_{CG}),通过化简得到下面的公式:

$$FVIF_T = \left[(1+R_{ART})^N (1-T_{ECG}) + T_{ECG} - (1-B)T_{CG} \right]$$
重要公式:

$$R_{ART} = R \left[1 - (P_I T_I + P_D T_D + P_{CG} T_{CG}) \right] \qquad T_{ECG} = T_{CG} \frac{\left[1 - (P_I + P_D + P_{CG}) \right]}{\left[1 - (P_I T_I + P_D T_D + P_{CG} T_{CG}) \right]}$$

◆ Accrual Equivalent Returns: 考虑了所有税后的等价收益,也称为 RAE

原理: 组合初始本金为\$NP, 以每年 average return 增长, N 年后考虑了所有税后的收益为\$FV(**Blend Taxing** Environments 的 FV),则 NP(1+R_{AE})^N=FV,计算出的 R_{AE} 即为等价收益,且 R_{AE} <R_{ART}(考纲已删除)

◆ Accrual Equivalent Tax Rates: 考虑了所有税后的等价税率,也称为 TAE

原理:继续 R_{AE} 的例子,此时以每年 average return 增长后的 FV 扣除 T_{AE} 的部分,应该等于 R_{AE} ,因此通过公式 average return(1- T_{AE})= R_{AE} ,可计算出 R_{AE} 的值(考纲已删除)

★★Types of Investment Accounts: 投资账户的类型

- Taxable accounts: 普通纳税账户, 完税资金(支付 ordinary tax 后的资金)进入此账户, 钱在账户内的操作都要交税, 取出时不需要交税, 例如: 股票账户
- Tax-deferred accounts (TDA): 递延账户,未完税 资金进入此账户(支付 ordinary tax 前的资金),当前 不交税,钱在账户内的操作不交税,当把钱从账户取 出来时才交税(支付 withdraw tax),且只交一次税,例如:养老金账户
- Tax-exempt accounts (TEA): 免税账户,完税资金 (支付 ordinary tax 后的资金)可进入 TEA 账户,一旦钱进入此账户,钱在账户内的操作不交税,取出时也不需要交税,TEA 账户通常有限额

If $T_0 > T_N \rightarrow FV_{TDA} > FV_{TEA}$ (T_N 代表 withdraw tax)

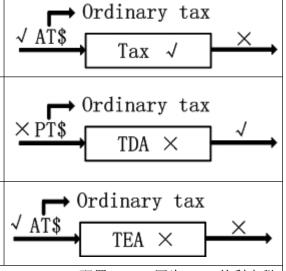
If $T_0 = T_N \rightarrow FV_{TDA} = FV_{TEA}$ (T_0 代表 ordinary tax)

If $T_O < T_N \rightarrow FV_{TDA} < FV_{TEA}$

注意: <u>DTA</u>与 <u>Deferred Capital Gain Tax</u>是不同概念,

Deferred Capital Gain Tax:指投资股票赚钱了,资本利得税只交一次

TDA: 未完税资金可进 TDA 账户,期间任何操作都不交税,只在取出时缴纳一笔 withdraw tax



TDA/TEA: 配置 bond,因为 bond 的利率税每年都要交,每年都要复利计算利率税

taxable account: 配置 stock(假设不分红),因为资本利得税只需在卖掉股票时缴纳,属于天然的 deferred tax

Taxed annually	Taxed deferred account
$FVIF_{AT} = [1 + R(1 - T_I)]^N$	$FVIF_{TDA} = (1+R)^{N} (1-T_{N})$
Deferred capital gain	Tax exempt account
$FVIF_{CGBT} = [(1+R)^{N} (1-T_{CG})] + T_{CG}B$	$FVIF_{TEA} = (1+R)^N$
600	假设进λ TFA 账户的钱已经是完税资全 (1-To)

注意: 把钱放在 taxable account 中,政府会帮我承担了部分的风险,当我有 realized loss 时,会有一定的税 盾效果,把钱放在 TEA 账户中,政府不承担风险

- ◆ Tax Effects of Trading Behavior: 交易行为的税收效果(通过对税的管理产生 tax alpha)
 - Holding period: 通过持有期限的长短,产生 tax alpha,投资期限越长,资本利得税越少
 - ✓ **Traders:** trades frequently and recognizes all portfolio returns in the form of annually taxed short term gains (交易频繁,以每年交税的短期收益确认组合的收益)
 - ✓ **Passive investors**: passively buys and holds the stock (交易不频繁,可能产生 tax alpha)
 - ✓ **Exempt investors:** not only buys and holds stocks, but he never pays capital gains tax(交易不频繁,可能产生 tax alpha)
 - HIFO (highest in first out):以不同的价格建仓,部分卖出时以最高的建仓价作为成本核算资本得利税

备注: tax avoidance: 合理避税; tax evasion: 偷税漏税

● **Tax-loss saving**:利用 realized loss 的税盾效果,进行抵税,但如果存在 realized gain 时(假设实出又买回,后期又升值),这部分税盾又要交回来,从绝对数值上来说,没有区别,其主要意义是可以晚交税

R10 Estate Planning in a Global context: 全球化背景下的遗产规划

一. Estate planning: 遗产规划

Testator: 立遗嘱的人; **Will/testament**: 遗嘱; **Probate**: 遗嘱认证; **Estate**: 总遗产; **recipient**: 继承人 **备注**: CFA 应该帮助客户去避免 Probate,因为 Probate 会有法庭介入,导致 court fees ↑,time ↑,public

- ◆ 帮助客户规避 Probate 的方法:
 - Joint ownership: (夫妻双方)共同持有
 - Living trusts: 设立信托
 - Retirement plans: 退休计划,指养老金 (pension) 家庭共享
 - Life insurance: 人寿保险
- ◆ Wealth transfer taxes: 遗产转移税
 - Gifts: 赠予(人活着的时候给),需要缴纳 gift tax
 - **Bequest**:遗赠(人过世以后给),需要缴纳 bequest tax/estate tax
- ◆ Ownership rights: (继承) 所有权:
- Forced heirship rules:强制继承权,第一顺位,配偶/孩子/父母,继承过世者(无论婚否)的所有遗产(包括遗嘱中未提及的资产),例如:30%配偶;30%孩子平分(无论是否婚生);40%遗嘱 Claw-back:回收,婚生小孩继承了遗产之后,如果出现了私生子,此时婚生小孩子要拿出一部分遗产与私生子平分
 - Community property rights: 夫妻共同财产继承权,婚姻存续期限内的共同财产,配偶(spouse)可分配 50%,可与 claw-back 共存
 - Separate property rights:独立财产权,夫妻在婚姻存续期限内,财产是独立属于个人的(不考)
- 二. Core capital: 核心资本,简称 CC,预测的现在到生命终止还需要花费的金钱的现值(CC 不能赠予/遗赠出去,要留给自己用)

个人资产分为: financial capital (金融资产)和 human capital (PV of 将来赚的钱)

赠予的分配原则: financial capital+human capital—core capital=surplus,其中 surplus 这部分可以赠予 **注意:** core capital 的折现率应该使用 **risk-free rate**,因为这笔钱重要,因此折现率低比较可靠

Incorporate a safety reserve into core capital calculations: 将安全收入纳入核心资金的计算,人能活多少年是预估的,如果生命超过了预估值,就需要额外的开销,因此需要留出 safety reserve (安全垫),另外 safety reserve 留多少合适,有两种做法,1.常规作法:多预留 2-5 年; 2.使用 Monte Carlo Simulation (MCS)进行测算

probability of ruin:组合的价值等于0的概率(组合被耗尽),概率越小越好

- 三. Relative after-tax values: 相对税后价值(研究什么时机进行赠予/遗赠)
 Relative value(RV): FV gift/FV bequest 的比值,其值>1 则 gift 的价值大,其值<1 则 bequest 的价值大,其值=1,则两者无区别
- ◆ Relative value(RV)计算的几种情况:假设资产从 A 转移给 B

注意: gift: 资产从 A 转移给了 B, 此时资产应该使用 B 的收益率和税率; bequest 资产现在还属于 A, 此时资产应该使用 A 的收益率和税率(在遗赠时 B 要交一笔遗产税 Te)

FV gift= $[1+r_B(1-T_B)]^N$ gift: 资产免税转移给 B, 按 B 的收益率 FV bequest= $[1+r_A(1-T_A)]^N(1-T_e)$ 和税率进行复利计算 bequest: 资产按 A 的收益率和税率进行 复利计算, 转移给 B 时征收遗产税 Te FV gift= $(1-Tg)[1+r_B(1-T_B)]^N$ **2.gift: taxable** (征收 B 的赠予税 Tg) gift: 资产征收赠予税 Tg 后转移给 B, FV beguest= $[1+r_A(1-T_A)]^N(1-T_e)$ 按B的收益率和税率进行复利计算 注意:标的为金融资产(股票)时,可能rA=rB, $T_A=T_B$,此 bequest: 资产按 A 的收益率和税率进行 复利计算, 转移给 B 时征收遗产税 Te 时公式可化简为 RV=(1-Tg)/(1-Te) FV gift=(1-Tg+TgTe) $[1+r_B(1-T_B)]^N$ **3.gift: taxable** (征收 A 的赠予税 Tg) gift: 资产<u>征收赠予税 Tg</u> 后转移给 B, FV bequest= $[1+r_A(1-T_A)]^N(1-T_e)$ 按B的收益率和税率进行复利计算 bequest: 资产按 A 的收益率和税率进行 注意: A 缴纳的赠予税可作为费用税前列支,有税盾效果, 复利计算,转移给 B 时征收遗产税 Te 即 tax benefit (资产已属于 B, 但 Tg×Te 是 A 的好处) 4.gift: charitable gift (慈善赠予,不交

 $\frac{FV_{charitable \ gift}}{FV_{bequest}} = \frac{(1 + r_{g})^{n} + T_{oi} \left[1 + r_{e} (1 - t_{ie})\right]^{n} (1 - T_{e})}{\left[1 + r_{e} (1 - t_{ie})\right]^{n} (1 - T_{e})}$

注意: 理论上分子也是(1-Tg)[1+rB(1-T_B)]^N, 因为 Tg=0, T_B=0, 因此公式化简为(1+rB)^N, 而捐出去的钱也有税盾效果, 其价值为 Toi[1+rB(1-T_B)]^N(1-Te)

◆ Estate planning strategy: 遗产规划策略

赠予税 Tg; 慈善机构的收益也无需交税)

(考试一般不会考)

1.gift: tax free (A→B, B 交税)

● Generation skipping: 跨代转移, 爷爷辈直接将遗产给孙子辈, 少征一次遗产税 (解决 double taxation)

$$FV_{\text{noskipping}} = pv \Big[(1+r)^{n1} (1-t) \Big] \Big[(1+r)^{n2} (1-t) \Big] \qquad FV_{\text{skipping}} = pv \Big[(1+r)^{N} (1-T_e) \Big] \qquad N = n_1 + n_2$$

注意: 美国税法规定 Generation skipping 虽然只交一次税,但是税率更高,几乎是征两次税的 2 倍

- **spouse exemption**: 配偶豁免权,如果老公过世,作为配偶的妻子,有一定的遗产免征额,如果妻子自己名下的财产足够支付自己的生活费,则可以将这个免征额给自己的子女使用
- Valuation discounts: 富豪不直接将现金遗产转移给后代,用这部分钱去买 PE,因为 PE 没有公允定价,因此可以适当低估其估值,从而达到少交税的作用,主要因为 Liquidity discount and minority discount (非控股) 而低估
- **Trusts**: 信托,分为 revocable trust arrangement(可撤销)和 Irrevocable trust(不可撤销),其中不可撤销的信托有 asset protection(破产隔离/资产保护)的作用,信托分为三种支付形式:
 - ✓ Fixed trust: 委托人与受托人约定,每年给受益人一个固定的金额
 - ✓ Discretionary trust: 由信托公司/受托人决定每年给受益人多少金额
- ✓ **Spendthrift trusts**: 受益人年龄还太小,受托人无法将金额给到受益人(受益人当前无处置信托资金的能力)
- **Life insurance**: 寿险, 只有 whole life insurance(终身寿险)可以帮助做遗产规划, term life insurance则不可以,寿险作为遗产通常是不征税的或有税收优惠(tax advantage)

注意: 可以通过 trust+life insurance 的方式做遗产规划,即寿险的受益人是信托公司,依托公司的受益人是投保人规定的受益人,这样即可以达到免税的效果,又可以起到对受益人资金的控制

- Tax jurisdiction: 跨国征税,分为几种方法:
 - ✓ source jurisdiction: 属地原则(territorial tax system),例如:外国人无中国国籍,但在中

国产生的收入,都会征税

- ✓ residence jurisdiction: 属人原则,例如美国人在其它国家有收入,则全部都要按美国的税法全球征税
- **Double taxation**:双重征税,因为不同国家使用不同的征税原则,因此会带来 **Double taxation** 的问题,分为几种情况:
- ✓ Residence residence conflict: 属人和属人的冲突,例如: 中国认为你是中国国籍,需要按中国税法交税,美国认为你是美国国籍,需要按美国税法交税,通过 OECD 国家进行 DTT (双边税收协定),通常基于居住时间长期或收入来源进行划分
- ✓ **Source source conflict**: 属地和属地的冲突,例如: 跨国贸易,在 A 国生产,在 B 国销售,通过依靠签订的税收协定进行划分
- ✓ ★★residence-source conflict: 属人和属地的冲突,例如: 属人原则国家的公民,在属地原则的国家所赚取的收入,所带来的双重征税问题,有三种解决方法: **大原则以属地为主征税,属人国** 提供税收优惠

complete Resolution (完美解决双重 征税问题)

the credit method: 属地国税率和属人国税率取其高,即 $T_{CreditMethod} = Max$ (T_{Source} , $T_{Residence}$),如果属地国税率 40%,属人国税率 30%,由属地国先征税,属人国提供税收优惠(不征税);如果属地国税率 30%,属人国税率 40%,则先在属地国征收 30%的税,再在属人国征收 10%的税,**结论**: 无论哪种情况,个人缴纳的税率总是两国中税率较高者

the exemption method: 只要在属地国征过税,就不需要在属人国再征税,即 $T_{Exemption}$ $M_{Ethod} = T_{Source}$,如果属地国税率 40%,属人国税率 30%,由属地国先征税,属人国提供税收优惠(不征税);如果属地国税率 30%,属人国税率 40%,则先在属地国征收 30%的税,属人国提供税收优惠(不征税)

Partial Resolution (部分解决双重 征税问题)

the deduction method: 先在属地国征税,剩下的部分再在属人国征税,即 $T_{Deduction}$ $Method=T_{Source}+$ (1- T_{Source}) $\times T_{Residence}=T_{Source}+T_{Residence}-T_{Source}\times T_{Residence}$

注意: 只有 Tsource 没有双重征税

Tax avoidance: 合理避税Tax evasion: 偷税漏税

SS 5: PRIVATE WEALTH MANAGEMENT (2)

R11 Concentrated Single-Asset Positions: 过度集中的单资产头寸

Concentrated position: 过于集中的资产(整体角度),包括: Public stock(类似俞敏洪持有的新东方的股票)、Private stock、Real estate

- ◆ Risk in concentrated position: 过度集中的头寸的风险:
 - Systematic risk: 系统性风险
 - Company-specific risk (non-systematic or idiosyncratic risk): 公司的特定风险(非系统性风险)
 - Property-specific risk(non-systematic or idiosyncratic risk): 地产的特定风险(非系统性风险)
- ◆ ★★过度集中的资产处理中,最核心的目标(Common objectives): risk ↓ 、liquidity ↑ 、tax ↓
 - Appropriateness of **risk reduction**:适合的降低风险
 - Cash flow needs should be identified: 现金流应该被确定
 - Optimize tax efficiency: maximize after-tax return: 最大化税后收益率
- ◆ Specific objectives and constraints: 特别的目标或限制:
 - mandated to hold shares: 因为指令的原因,必须持有的股票
 - maintain effective voting control: 维持投票的控制权效果
 - enhance the current income: 增加当前收入
 - necessary for the successful operation of a business enterprise: 企业成功经营所需要的
 - significant taxable capital gain: 卖掉资产时会有显著的资本利得税
 - Concentrated positions are generally illiquid: 过度集中的头寸流动性比较差
 - legal relationship: 法律法规的关系
 - Margin lending rules:将资产抵押/质押出去,LTV(loan/value)尽可能大
 - Company insiders and executives: 公司内部人士和执行
 - Contractual restrictions and employer mandates,例如: **Lockup**: 锁定期; **blackout periods**: 静默期,例如: 公司发布重要财务数据,在发布前后这段时间,公司高管是不能交易本公司股票的
 - Capital market limitations:资本市场的限制,例如:限制做空
 - Psychological consideration: 心理学的考量
- ◆ ★Goal-based decision process: (整体上)基于目标的决策过程: (考描述/计算),等价于行为金融 学中的 mental account/BPT

	personal risk bucket: 个人风险(金字塔低层,最重要,承受的风险最小)						
	目标: protection from poverty or a dramatic decrease in lifestyle: 为贫困和生活水平下						
	降提供保障						
Primary capital	产品: home、certificates of deposit(大额可转让存单)、Treasury bills(T-bill)、CDS						
	market risk bucket:市场风险(金字塔中层)						
	目标: maintain the current standard of living: 维持当前的生活标准						
	产品: stock and bond portfolio						
Surplus capital	aspirational risk bucket: 实现抱负的风险(金字塔高层)						
	目标: opportunity to increase wealth substantially: 大量提升财富水平的机会						
	产品: concentrated positions、PE、real estate						

- ◆ Asset location and transfer: 资产放置与财富转移
 - **Asset location**: 意为将资产放在哪个账户中最为合适,例如:将资产放在 taxable、TDA、TEA 账户中
 - Wealth transfer: 财富转移(中心思想: 越早规划越好)
 - ✓ estate tax freeze: 一种税收递延的做法,例如: 父亲有价值 100 万的公司想转移给儿子,但父亲不想失去控制权,又想要降低税,具体做法是通过公司重组,将公司分成 voting preferred shares 价值 100 万,non-voting common shares 价值 0 万,父亲持有 voting preferred shares 保有对公司的控制,儿子持有 non-voting common shares,只需要缴纳极少的税,将来公司发展变大,non-voting common

shares 增值幅度大,而 voting preferred shares 增值幅度小,当父亲将这部分资产转移给儿子时,交的税也会少一些,但儿子将来将资产转移给他的儿子时,还是需要交税的,所以 estate tax freeze 是一种递延缴税的方法

- ◆ ★Techniques to manage concentrated position: 过度集中(具体资产)头寸的管理技术(public stock)
 - Outright sale: 直接卖掉
 - Monetization strategies: 货币化,降风险增加流动性,通过质押或抵押

Equity monetization: 股权的货币化,分为两个步骤(四种方法)

Step1: Remove a large portion of the risk inherent in the concentrated position: 移除过度集中资产的固有风险(降风险),利用衍生品

Step2: borrow against the hedged position: 借钱,风险低,因此LTV (loan-to-value)比较高

备注: 美国税务局有些情况会认为,资产持有人通过衍生品将资产的风险转移出去的行为视同销售,即视同将资产卖出,因此也是要缴纳资本利得税的,需要避免这种情况的出现

- 1) short sale against the box: 做空持有的股票,原理: long stock+short stock,此时风险已经降低了,通过这个组合做质押,则 LTV 会比较高
- 2) total return equity swap: 股权互换,原理: 通过作市商将 stock return 互换成 bond return,而 bond return 的风险会比较小,通过这个组合再质押,则 LTV 会比较高
- **3) Options (forward conversion)**: 通过期权的合成,long put+short call 合成一个 forward,再通过 long stock+ short forward 的方式,构建一个无风险组合,通过这个组合做质押,则 LTV 会比较高
- **4)A forward sale contract/single-stock futures contract:** 做空股票的远期合约,原理:通过 lont stock+ short forward 的方式,构建一个无风险组合,通过这个组合做质押,则 LTV 会比较高
 - Hedging the value of the concentrated asset:对冲的风险,降风险
- 1) Purchase of puts:购买看跌期权,降低资产价值下跌的风险,因为 put 的期权费比较高,此方法会影响组合收益,为了降低对冲的成本,可采用以下几种方法:
- 购买 OTM 的 put: 购买价外期权,成本低,但对资产价格的保护会变少
- **购买 exotic put (奇异期权)**: 奇异期权行权有一定限制,因此价格便宜一些。**Knock-in put**: X=50, @48, 只有当股价跌到 48 以下, put 才能行权; **Knock-out put**: X=50, @42, 只有当股价不低于 42 时, put 才能行权
- **A pair of put**: Long a put at a higher strike price of XH and short a put at a lower strike price of XL,买一个执行价高的 put(期权费高),卖出一个执行价低的 put,获得期权费 cover 一定的成本
- Cashless (zero-premium) collars: 构建一个 0 成本的 collars, P+S-C, 优点零成本, 缺点放弃了股票 上涨带来的收益
- Prepaid variable forwards (PVF): 在签订远期合约的期初就能拿到一部分钱,其余部分到期后给付, 存在技术性违约的风险,PVF等价于 short forward+ loan,而 short forward 等价于 long put+short call, 相当于 long collars,因此 PVF 也等价于 collar+loan
 - Mismatch in character(tax): 例如: 构建一个 0 premium collar,其中 short call 会收到一笔期权费(收入),而 long put 需要支出一笔相同的期权费(支出),但两笔费用不可相应抵减,对于 call premium 而言视为一笔收入,需要纳税,对于 put premium 而言,如果通过 put 赚钱,则 put premium 可以抵减赚取的收益,剩余收益部分缴纳 T_{CG},但 put 与 call 的税率可能不同,这种情况就称为 Mismatch in character
 - Yield enhancement: 本质为 write covered calls,是一种收入策略,持有 stock 并认为股价温和上涨,因此在高于当前股价的执行价 short call,如果对手方行权,相当于我赚取了期权费,同时也完成止盈出货,如果对手方不行权,可以赚取一个期权费,并不断的 roll 去赚取期权费(备兑开仓策略)
 - Tax-optimization equity strategies
 - ✓ Index tracking with active tax management: 将持有的股票先 hedging 再货币化,拿到较高比例的现金,再去投资其它的指数成份股,此时相当于投资了一个指数,分散化(diversified)效果会比较好,同时进行 active 的税收管理,假如股利税低于资本利得税,此时应该多配置高分红的股票
 - ✓ A completeness portfolio:将持有的股票先 hedging 再货币化,拿到较高比例的现金,再去投

资一个与原持仓相关性低的组合,从而降低投资风险

- ✓ An exchange fund: 企业创始人通常都持有公司绝大部分的股权,属于过度集中的资产,找到若干这样的创始人,将他们的股权按出资份额合成一个大的基金池,每个创始人将他们原来的价值转换为基金的份额,从而实现分散化,降低风险
 - ✓ Cross hedge: 交叉对冲,如果持有的股票交易不活跃或无法做空时,所使用的方法

Short a security or basket of securities: 做空与这支股票相关性高的另外一支股票,但流动性比较好,从而实现对冲

Short a broad or targeted index: 做空一个与这支股票相关性高的指数,从而实现对冲

Purchasing puts on the proxy asset: 买入与这支股票相关性高的其它股票的看跌期权,从而实现对冲

- ◆ Privately held business: 关于 PE 的过度集中的资产管理(private stock)
 - Characteristic of privately held businesses: PE 的特点
 - ✓ Considerable concentration risk: 相当集中的风险
 - ✓ High company specific risks: 公司的个体的风险高
 - ✓ Illiquidity: 流动性差
 - Exit strategies: 退出的机制
 - ✓ Strategic buyers: 将公司卖给战略投资者
 - ✓ financial buyers/ financial sponsors: 卖给同行业的公司或其它的 PE 公司
 - ✓ ★Recapitalization: PE 公司分多次从公司创始人手中收购股权,第一步收购 60%-80%,拿到控制权,实现并表做多利润,之后创始人还持有公司的股权,还有利益驱动,未来几年创始人继续将公司做大做强,之后 PE 公司再收购其它的股权(20%-40%),创始人和 PE 的收益都增长。对于公司创始人的优点: 1.获得了现金流,流动性提高(liquidity); 2.保住了收益(retained stake); 3.未来可能获得更多的收益(owner should remain highly motivated to grow the business)
 - ✓ Sale to (other) management or key employees (MBO): 卖给管理层或员工 (Cannot raise sufficient funds)
 - ✓ Divestiture: 剥离分拆,将盈利的项目剥离出来单独上市
- ◆ Real estate positions: 关于房地产的过度集中的资产管理
 - Factors determine the attractiveness of the market from the seller's perspective: 卖方角度看房地产市场吸引力的绝定因素:
 - ✓ Current valuation of real estate relative to historical levels and future expectations: 房地产当前的估值与历史水平和未来水平的关系
 - ✓ Tax rate applicable to a particular property and transaction: 适应于特定的地产及转移的税率
 - ✓ Condition of the credit markets and lending conditions: 考虑当前的信贷市场
 - ✓ Level of interest rates: 当前的利率水平
 - Monetization strategies for real estate owners: 房地产持有人的货币化策略
 - ✓ Mortgage financing:房屋抵押,类似于 long put (房地产为标的物)
 - ✓ Charitably inclined: 例如: 富豪想成立一个 endowment,规模在 3000 万,但当前他手里只有一套价格 2000 万的房产,此时将房产转移给 donor-advised fund (DAF) ,DAF 将房产卖出并进行投资,卖出房产及投资收益都不需要交税,当资产规模达到 3000 万时,就会正式成立 endowment,而 DAF 相当于一个准备阶段
 - ✓ Sale and leaseback: 售后回租,将房地产卖出获得现金流,再租回来继续使用

R12 Risk Management for Individuals: 个人投资者的风险管理

Human capital: 人力资本,分为 PV of future earnings 和 pension benefit **(unvested)** ,人力资本根据个人收入的波动性(earnings volatility)选择折现率,波动性越大,折现率越高

Financial capital: 分为 current assets、personal assets、investment assets

- ✓ current assets: 一年之内会消耗掉的资产(不考虑)
- ✓ **personal assets**: 自己用的资产,例如: 房子,汽车等,其中 Real estate and collectibles 可作为 mixed asset,因为即可自己使用,也可作为投资品卖出

- ✓ investment assets: 分为 Marketable(可交易的),例如: public traded/private traded marketable assets、real estate; Non-marketable(不可交易的),例如: ★employer pension plans(vested)、government pensions
- ◆ financial stages of life for an individual: 个人投资者生命的财务阶段
 - Education phase
 - Early career
 - Career development
 - Peak accumulation: 赚钱最多的阶段(51-60岁)
 - Pre-retirement
 - Early retirement
 - Late retirement

★Net worth: 指传统的资产负债表(traditional B/S)中的所有者权益 ★Net wealth: 指经济的资产负债表(economic B/S)中的所有者权益

备注: economic B/S,除了传统资产负债表项,资产加入了 human capital,负债加入了 PV of spending Net wealth=Net worth + PV earnings + PV pension (unvested)—PV lifetime consumption—PV Bequest

◆ Risk management strategy for individuals: 风险管理

Risk avoidance: 风险规避Risk reduction: 风险降低

★Risk transfer (insurance): 风险转移
 Risk retention (self-insurance): 风险自留

Risk Management Techniques				
Loss characteristics High frequency Low frequency				
High severity Risk avoidance (高频高损)		Risk transfer(低频高损)		
Low severity Risk reduction (高频低损)		Risk retention(低频低损)		

- ◆ ★Individual risk exposures:个人的风险敞口(6 大风险)
 - Earnings risk (insure with disability insurance): 赚钱的风险,使用失能险/收入保障险对冲,失能险保障的是**本职工作**(regular job)
 - Premature death risk (insure with life insurance): 过早死亡的风险,使用寿险(死亡险)对冲
 - Longevity risk (insure with annuities): 长寿的风险,使用寿险(年金险)对冲
 - Property risk (insure with property insurance): 财产风险,使用产险对冲
 - Liability risk (insure with liability insurance): 责任风险,使用责任险对冲,由我引起的第三方发生的风险,需要由我理赔,例如:车险中的第三方责任险
 - Health risk (insure with health insurance): 健康风险,使用健康险对冲

	可重复投保	死亡险(过	世了理赔),又分为:定寿(term),终身(whole)
寿险		年金险,又	分为:定额(fixed),变额(variable)+即期,递延
		万能险,包	括保障账户和投资账户
北老队 不可垂有机但		财产险	注意: 保额不能超过标的物的原有价值, 且自己要承担一部分
非寿险	不可重复投保	健康险	损失(deductible: 免赔额)

- ◆ Use of life insurance: 寿险的作用
 - A hedge against the risk of the **premature death** of an earner: 对冲提前死亡的风险
 - An important **estate-planning** tool: 重要的遗产规划工具
 - A tax-sheltered savings instrument: 避税
- ◆ Types of life insurance: 保险的类型:
 - Temporary life insurance: 定期寿险
 - Permanent life insurance: 终身寿险 (more expensive)
 - ✓ Whole life insurance: 终身寿险
 - ❖ Participating life insurance policies: 分红的终身寿险
 - ❖ Non-participating policy: 不分红的终身寿险

- ✓ Universal life insurance: 万能险(保障功能+投资功能),其优点: 1.more flexibility; 2.investment Cash value: 现金价值,终身寿险的定价原理保费=保额×概率,前期发生理赔的概率很低,后期发生理赔的概率比较高,因此前期的保费应该很低,但后期的保费应该很高,为了平滑一生的保费支出(smooth premium),前期会多收保费(gross premium),后期就会少付保费,前期所交保费超过实际应该支付的那部分就称为现金价值,现金价值实际上是投保人的钱,现金价值的风险是很低的
- ◆ The basic elements of a life insurance policy: 寿险保单的基本元素(policy: 保单)
 - Term: 保障的时间
 - amount of benefits: 保额
 - Limitations under which the death benefit could be withheld (e.g., If death is by suicide within two years of issuance): 死亡理赔的限制,例如两年内自杀不赔
 - contestability period:调查期,出险后保险公司对于调查风险事件真实性的时间
 - **√Insured**:被保险人
 - **〈Owner**: 投保人,投被保险人之间要有可保利益(insurable interest)
 - **√** Beneficiary: 受益人
 - Premium: 保费, 投保人真正交的钱是 gross premium
 - Coverage: 保额
 - Elimination/waiting period: 等待期,通常为90天-180天
 - **Von-forfeiture clause**:不丧失现金价值,续保与否现金价值不变,退保可以退回现金价值
 - Guaranteed insurability: 可续保条款

◆ 保费的计算:

- **Net premium:** A probability of 0.15% of dying within the year, death benefit \$100,000, discount rate 5.5%. Net premium = (0.15% * \$100,000 + 99.85% * \$0)/1.055 = \$142.18
- Gross premium=net premium + expenses and projected profit for the insurance company
- ◆ Cash value and policy reserves: 现金价值和保单:
 - Can be withdrawn by the policy owner when the policy endows (or matures) or when he or she terminates the policy: 当保单到期或中止时,投保人可以取出现金价值
 - Can be borrowed as a loan while keeping the policy in force: 保单可用于贷款
 - cash values build up very slowly in the early years, during which the company is making up for its expenses: 前期的现金价值缓慢增长,虽然前期的 net premium 比较低,但是保险公司的其它费用比较高(佣金、调查等)
- ◆ ★★Annuities: 年金
 - Deferred variable annuities: 递延的变额年金
 - Deferred fixed annuities: 递延的定额年金, 缺点: 不抗通账
 - Immediate variable annuities: 即期的变额年金
 - Immediate fixed annuities: 即期的定额年金
- Advanced life deferred annuities: 高龄递延年金,特点: 保费低,例如: 80 或 85 岁才开始拿年金 **备注**: 递延: 现在存钱将来年金; 变额: 保额与某投资品收益挂钩; inflation-adjustment annuities 属于 fixed annuities

◆ 重要考点:

- 在 interest rate 高的时候买 fixed annuities,因为约定的收益率与当前的市场利率有关
- Immediate annuities 如果保额相同,则年龄越大的人 annuity yield 越高 (annuity yield: 每年拿的年金)
- 保险越早买越便宜
- Variable 的年金比 fixed 的年金的 fee 高一些
- ◆ Relative advantages and disadvantages of fixed and variable annuities: 定额与可变年金的优缺点
 - Volatility of benefit amount: 定额年金的现金流不变,变额年金的现金流变化较大,其变化取决于年金的条款

- Flexibility: The flexibility of an annuity varies materially: 年金的灵活性差别很大
- Mortality credits:对于年金险来说,活的久带来的好处(自保没有 Mortality credits)
- Inflation concerns: 不调整通胀的定额年金要考虑抗通胀的风险
- ★Payout methods: 支付方式,分为: joint life: 被保险人过世后,其配偶如果在世,还可以继续拿年金; period-certain annuity: 拿确定年数的年金; life annuity with period certain: 确保最少可以领多少年的年金(无论被保险人是否在世)
- Disability income insurance: 失能险中的条款 Waiver of premium: 投保人豁免保费, 仍享有保险责任
- ◆ The effect of human capital on asset allocation policy: 有效的人力资本的配置策略
 - **√** For **equity-like** human capitals: **less aggressive** portfolio: 人力资本像股票一样波动比较大的人,适合不太激进的投资组合(ρ ↓)
 - **√** For **bond-like** human capitals: **more aggressive** portfolio: 人力资本比较稳定的职业,适合更激进的投资组合(ρ ↓)
 - For younger: more equities: 年青人更多股权投资
 - For **older**: more bonds: 老年人更多债券投资

SS 6: PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT FOR INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS

R13 Managing Institutional Investor Portfolios: 机构投资者投资组合管理

- ◆ Six types of institutional investors: 六类机构投资者
 - ★★★Pension plans: DB 养老金
 - ★★Foundations: 基金会
 - ★★Endowments: 基金会
 - ★Life insurance companies: 寿险公司
 - Non-life insurance companies: 非寿险公司
 - Banks: 银行

术语: pension plan: 养老金计划; plan sponsor: 养老金资助者 (employer); Plan participants: 养老金参与者 (employee)

- ◆ Types of Pension Plans: 养老金计划
 - Defined Contribution (DC) = Individual IPS
 - ✓ **Employer's** only **obligation** is to **make contributions to employees' pension plans** and provide an adequate number of alternative investment choices(B/S 表中记为当期费用)
 - ✓ Employee owns assets (portable), makes investment decisions, and bears all investment risk, receives tax deferral benefits and in retirement selects lump sum or payments

Portable: 可携带,养老金跟着雇员走,在哪里工作,哪家公司就往这个账号打钱

- Defined Benefit (DB)
 - ✓ Employer must manage the plan assets and bear investment risk
 - ✓ Pension benefits are the **employer's financial liability** (B/S 表中记为负债)
- ✓ Employee receives payments(**non-portable**) but is subject to **early termination risk** if they leave the firm early (员工离职提前偿付的风险)

♦ DC Pension Plan

- **sponsor-directed DC**: ESOP(类似 profit sharing plan: 利益分享计划),由雇主做投资决策,本质是 DC plan,养老金资产绝大部分投资的是雇主公司的股票
- participant-directed DC plan: 由雇员做投资决策,由雇主提供投资列表(典型的 DC plan)
- Cash balance plan: 一种混合型养老金(hybrid),由 DC plan 和 DC plan 混合而成,其本质是 DB plan,雇主承担投资风险,像 DC plan 的部分是雇员有一个 individual account
- Profit sharing plan: 利润共享计划,即 ESOP
- **Employee Stock Ownership Plans (ESOP)**:本质是 DC plan,雇员承担投资风险,ESOP value at risk = Employment at risk(ESOP 的 financial capital 和 human capital 的相关性很高,因此风险很大)

公司选择使用 ESOP 的原因:

- Liquidate large blocks of company stock: 清理大量的公司股票,例如:公司有大量的库存股
- Avoid public offerings: 避免 IPO
- Fend off hostile takeovers since most stock held by company employees: 防止恶意收购,大部分股票由员工持有

♦ DB Pension Plan

- Funded status: Funded status=PV of pension asset—PV of PBO
- Fully funded: PV of pension asset ≥ PV of PBO, 也称为 overfunded
- **Underfunded:** PV of pension asset≤PV of PBO
- Accumulated benefit obligation (ABO): 只考虑 current wage level
- Projected benefit obligation (PBO): 考虑 current wage level, 还考虑 future wage growth, 在 B/S 中记录的是 PBO
- Total future liability: 考虑 current wage level, 还考虑 future wage growth, 新进/退出员工, benefit change, 是最全面的考虑(most comprehensive), 在写机构 IPS 时, 考虑的是 Total future liability

(Total future liability is often used when setting objectives within the investment policy statement (IPS)) 注意: Overfunded 的 risk tolerance 比较大; surplus 比较大时,risk tolerance 比较大

◆ 两种资产配置思路:

ALM: 资产负债管理

不关注资产的保值增值,关注用 asset 去 cover liability, 追求 asset 和 liability 的相关性要比较高, liability 越重要(Contractual liability),应该使用 ALM 的方法

AO: asset-only

在进行资产配置时,只需要考虑资产,不考虑负债, 其主要思想 mean-variance framework,相同风险的 情况下收益最高,相同收益的情况下风险最小,追 求分散化

Inactive lives: 分为 Retired (退休) 和 deferred (离职), 其特点是 benefit 已经确定

Active lives: 在职生活, 其特点是 benefit 当前不确定(靠精算假设估计)

Active/inactive ratio 其值越高,说明当前在职人员越多,参与 DB plan 的雇员越年轻,time horizon 越长,liquidity needs 越小,则 risk tolerance 越高(使用 long-term bond yield 作为 PBO 的折现率)

Plan types	Employer	Employee
	• Liability of employer	Receive periodic payments starting at
	Determined by stated criteria usually	retirement or other date
D.D.	related to years of service and salary	• Subject to "early termination" risk if
DB	• Sponsor (employer) is responsible for	employee is terminated early
	managing the plan assets	Not bear risk/return consequences of
	• Non-portable	investment
	Firm keeps all contributions current.	Own the plan and can transport account to
	 Only financial liability is making 	other employment situations.
DC	contributions to employee's account.	Bear all risk/return consequences of
	• The plan must offer sufficient investment	investment
	vehicles	Must make all investment decisions given
	• ESOP	available investment vehicles.

- 一. DB Pension Plans: Return Objective: DB 养老金计划的收益目标
 - ★cover pension liabilities: 覆盖养老金负债(必有目标)
 - maintain funded status: 即保持 funded rate (funded rate=PV pension asset/PV pension liability, 其 值≥1 为好): 保持 funded rate 的目标
 - Minimization of contributions: 最小化养老金贡献

Plan asset bgn+contribution+return-benefit=plan asset end, 在 return 确定时, 求最小 contribution

- recognize pension income:确定养老金收入
- Return objective may be **more aggressive when the workforce is younger**: 劳动力越年轻,则收益目标可以更为激进
- Less aggressive for retired lives portion: 退休人员比较多,则收益目标应更为保守

定量角度:

- Overfunded status: return of plan asset=discount rate of liability, 站在当前时点,负债的折现率就是负债的增长速度,因此资产的增长速度只要与负债保持一致即可保持 overfunded 情况
- Underfunded status: return of plan asset=discount rate of liability+excess return, 已知 discount rate 和 excess return 求 return of plan asset
- Overfunded status: return of plan asset=discount rate of liability+excess return, 管理层为了 Minimization of contributions 追求 excess return,已知 discount rate 和 excess return 求 return of plan asset
- ◆ DB Pension Plans: Risk Tolerance: DB 养老金计划:风险容忍度(只关注能力,不关注意愿)

Category Variable		Explanation			
Dlam status	Plan funded status (surplus or	Higher pension surplus or higher funded status			
Plan status	deficit)	implies greater risk tolerance			
C					

| Conflict: 在 underfunded 时,站在收益目标角度 return=discount rate of liability+excess return,此时收益

越高,则风险越大;站在风险容忍度角度,因为养老金是赤字(deficit)的,因此其风险容忍度越小				
Sponsor financial status Debt to total assets Current		Low debt ratios and higher current and expected		
and profitability	and expected profitability	profitability imply greater risk tolerance		
备注 : 通过 ratio 判断 sp	oonsor 的盈利能力,例如: del	ot to asset ratio 和 ROE		
Sponsor and pension	Correlation of sponsor	The lower the correlation, the greater risk		
fund common risk	operating results with	tolerance, all else equal		
exposures	pension asset returns			
common risk exposures	: 公司业务和 pension asset 的标	相关系数(房地产公司的养老金买了 REITS,则相		
关性过高,risk tolerance	e低),ρ越低,则 risk tolerar	nce 越好		
	Provision for <u>early retirement</u>	Such options tend to reduce the duration of plan		
Plan features	provision for lump sum	liabilities, implying lower risk tolerance, all else		
	distribution	equal (liquidity needs 上升,time horizon 下降)		
early retirement: 允许拉	是前退休; lump sum distribu	tion: 允许一次性大额支取养老金		
Workforce	Age of workforce,	The younger the workforce and the greater the		
characteristics	Active lives relative to	proportion of active lives, the greater the duration		
retired lives		of plan liabilities and the greater the risk tolerance.		
		(liquidity needs 小,time horizon 大)		

- ◆ Increased risk tolerance (ability): 提升风险容忍度(能力)
 - Larger plan surplus...PVA >PVL
 - Greater funded status...higher "cushion"
 - Lower firm debt...lower debt/equity ratio
 - Higher profitability...higher expected profitability
 - Younger average age/greater active lives...
 - Going concern plan...(养老金计划持续开放,持续有新员工加入,time horizon 上升,liquidity needs 下降,则 risk tolerance 大)
 - Provisions for early retirement and lump-sum distributions reduce ability to take risk
- ◆ DB Pension Plans: risk objectives:DB 养老金计划:风险目标(★minimization of shortfall risk)
 - Standard deviation in terms of the surplus
 - 100% funded status vs. future liability
 - Funded status to avoid reporting pension liability
 - ✓ Obtain a certain level of funding status (maintain funded rate)

shortfall risk: 盈余不足的风险, 指 plan asset 无法 cover plan liability 的风险

- ◆ DB Pension Plans: Constraints: DB 养老金计划: 限制
- ◆ Liquidity: 流动性
 - **Workforce Mix** (retired vs. active lives): Greater retired lives, increased liquidity needs: 退休人员越多,流动性需要越高
 - **Sponsor contributions vs. benefit payments**: Higher profitability reduces liquidity needs: 盈利能力越好,流动性需要越低
 - Plan features: 存在 early retirement 和 lump-sum payments,则流动性需要越高

定量角度: Liquidity needs=benefit—contribution

- ◆ Time Horizon: 投资期限(只有 going concern plan 才算是 long term horizon)
 - **going concern** (multistage)的 time horizon 比较高
 - terminated plan (single stage)的 time horizon 比较低

备注: 在 going concern 情况下,如果期间 benefit 有明显变化,则可称为 long term multistage,如果无明显变化,则称为 long term horizon

- ◆ Legal and Regulatory: 法律和监管(基于 Prudent expert Rule, 更严格)
 - Most countries federally regulate pension plans: 多数国家养老金计划受联邦政府监管

- Manager should conform to the local regulations: 管理者应该确认本地的法规
- In the U.S., **ERISA** requires sponsors to exercise **due diligence** when making investment decisions: ERISA 法案要求资助人在做投资决策时要进行尽调
- ERISA's overriding standard is that the assets should be **managed for the plan <u>participants</u>**, not the sponsor: ERISA 重要标准是养老金资产的受益人是参与者,而非资助人
- Consultation with appropriate legal experts is encouraged: 向法律专家咨询是被鼓励地
- ◆ Taxes and Unique Circumstances: 税与独特情景
 - Pension plans are tax-exempt, no tax constraints: 养老金计划是免费的
 - ERISA requires **due diligence**, but small sponsors may not have the plan resources or expertise to thoroughly investigate **alternative assets** (e.g., derivatives, hedge funds, etc.): ERISA 要求做尽调,但小型资助人可能没有资源或专业技能去认真调查另类资产
 - Pension plans may impose requirements that prohibit investment in some: 养老金计划可能加入一些禁止投资的要求
 - traditional or alternative asset choices: 传统或另类资产的选择

二. Foundations and endowments: 基金会(考试时不区分两者)

Foundations	Endowments	
由个人设立,例如:比尔盖茨基金会	由集体设立,例如:哈佛校友基金会	
现金流来源单一	现金流来源分散	
可能以个人意志为转移	政府更偏好, 通过校董会管理, 不以个人意志转移	
监管(regulation)更严格	监管相对宽松	
★强制的 spending rule	不强制 spending rule(免税主体)	

spending rule:每年至少要从 Foundations 的总资产中剥离一定的比例(通常 5%),用于成立这个基金的慈善目的,监管要求,强制的(达到捐献比例则可免税;不捐献也可以但要正常交税)

- ◆ Foundation Type: 个人基金会的分类
 - Independent Foundation (private or family): 由个人出资设立,达成 spending rule 比例才能免税
 - Company-sponsored foundation: 由公司出资设立, 达成 spending rule 的比例才能免税
 - **Operating foundation**:用于某种特殊目的,例如:维持博物馆的运营,公益性更强,spending rule 的比例更低,通常为 3.33%
 - Community foundation: 类似 Endowments, 没有 spending rule 的要求

Return: 收益率 (定性/定量)

定性角度: return objective

- indefinitely long horizon (perpetual support): 基金会永续经营下去
- preserve the real (inflation-adjusted) value of the investment assets (maintain the real value): 抗通胀 定量角度:

return=spending rate+inflation+expense (基金会的运营成本,非必有项),另外 inflation 用基金会所支持的行业的通胀率

Risk: 风险(整体角度) above average

- Long term horizon: 投资期限长
- Non contractual liability: 没有合约规定的负债(AO 的资产管理方法)
- Low spending rate (case by case)

Liquidity: 流动性

- Liquidity needs 相对比较小,支出是非必要的(non contractual liability)
- 现金流发生的时间更有确定性

定量角度:

Liquidity needs=spending rate+expense(真正花出去的钱是现金流支出,抗通胀不一定是现金流支出)

Time horizon: 投资期限

● Perpetuity: 永续或长期

Taxes: 纳税 (Non taxable)

- 必须达成 spending rate 的捐献比例才能免税
- UBIT (Unrelated business income): 非资助相关业务的收益,应该按企业税纳税,例如:资助博物馆日常运营的基金会,其中 gifts shop 通过销售饮料、零食所获得的盈利,需要纳税

Legal and Regulatory: 法律和监管

- UMIFA (Uniform Management of Institutional Funds Act): UMIFA 法案
- 基于 Prudent Investor Rule

Unique Circumstances: 独特情景

- Concentrated holdings: 过于集中的资产,与设立者有很大关系
- Unrelated business income donated business: 非资助相关业务的收益
- Socially responsible investing (SRI): 社会责任投资,例如: 爱好和平,不投资军工行业
- Adequate personnel to perform due diligence: 适当的人员做尽调
- **三. Endowments: 基金会(无强制 spending rule)**,其 RRTTLLU 与 Foundations 相同

绝大多数 Endowments 会自己制定 spending rule 其原因:

● Exhausted/Run out of asset: 避免资产被耗尽,给基金会的捐献设立一个额度,避免过多的资助申请耗尽基金会资产

注意: 有 spending rule 的 endowments 的 risk tolerance 更高,因为避免了资产被耗尽

- ◆ Spending Rules 的分类: (方案越来越优)
- Simple spending rule: Spending $t = Spending rate \times Ending market value_{t-1}$

优点: simple; 缺点: 每年的 spending volatility 是比较高的

● Rolling 3-year average spending rule: 以前三年的市值的平均值乘以 spending rate

$$Spending_{t} = (spending \ rate) \left(\frac{market \ value_{t-1} + market \ value_{t-2} + market \ value_{t-3}}{3} \right)$$

优点: more stable (支出更加稳定); **缺点**: Extraordinary change/outlier (前三年出现较大的市值变化,则支出的波动性也会非常大)

● Geometric spending rule: Spending $_{t-1}$) (Spending $_{t-1}$) (1+I $_{t-1}$)+(1-R) (S) (market value $_{t-1}$) R=smoothing rate /平滑率(0.6~0.8), I=rate of inflation (historical inflation), S=spending rate

注意: R=1 时,spending volatility 近似 0,通过蒙特卡罗模拟得出结论: Geometric spending rule 是最优方法,risk tolerance 最高

注意: spending rate > 5% can lead to - erosion of principal (侵蚀本金)

- ◆ Endowments: Risk Tolerance: 风险容忍度(对比不同的基金会)
 - **Higher spending rate**:要求的 return 比较高,asset base 比较小,risk tolerance 比较低
 - Heavy reliance upon **donations**, 10% or more its ability to tolerate risk is **diminished**: 基金会对于捐赠的依赖性越高,risk tolerance 越低(基金会存续大量依靠捐赠,如果没有捐赠,则难以达成原有目标;有 donation 比没有 donation 的基金会 risk tolerance 更高)
 - Greater budget dependency: 捐献对象预算对基金会捐献的依赖程度越高,则 risk tolerance 越低
 - No spending rule in place: 没有 spending rule,则 risk tolerance 降低(资产被耗尽的风险)
 - Smaller size of endowment: 资产规模越小,则 risk tolerance 越低
 - Evaluates performance period: 业绩评估的时间间隔越长, risk tolerance 越高
- ◆ Liquidity and Time Horizon: 流动性和投资期限
 - 考虑捐赠(donation)时,liquidity needs=spending rate + expense —donation
 - **long term** (typically infinite): 长期(永续)
- ◆ Taxes and Legal and Regulatory: 税和法律、监管
 - Tax-exempt: 免税
 - Little government oversight: 少量的政府监管
- ◆ Unique Circumstances: 独特的情况

● Investment in alternative investments require significant resources and expertise: 投资另类投资品要有显著的资源和专业知识

四. Life insurance companies: 寿险保险公司(ALM资产管理)

- ◆ Return Objective: 收益率目标 (Return=Minimum return+enhanced margin+surplus)
 - Minimum return(Tax-exempt): 出险的理赔金额,risk tolerance 低,属于 B/S 表的负债
 - **Segmentation/enhanced margin**(Tax-exempt): 保单的分红, risk tolerance 低,属于 B/S 表的负债
 - **To grow surplus**(taxable account):保险公司股东要求的收益,risk tolerance 高,属于 B/S 表的所有者权益,另外 surplus 高,则 risk tolerance 高

注意:保险公司的负债是不同类型的(例如:fixed annuity 或 variable annuity),因此不应该使用整体的资产去 cover 这些负债,要根据负债的类型,找相似的资产去 cover 不同的负债

◆ Life Insurance Companies: Risk Tolerance: 人寿保险公司: 风险容忍度

备注: 站在整体角度人寿保险公司的风险容忍度低

Risk factors: 风险因素(风险的来源):

- Valuation concerns: 市场的估值风险,即 market risk,例如:利率上升,债券价格下降
- Cash flow volatility:现金流流入的时间晚于现金流流出的时间,导致期限不匹配(延期或损失)
- Reinvestment risk: 再投资风险,利率上升,再投资风险下降;利率下降,再投资风险上升
- Credit risk: 信用风险,使用衍生产品对冲信用风险,或进行分散化投资(diversification)
- ◆ Life Insurance Companies: Liquidity: 人寿保险公司: 流动性需求
 - ★Disintermediation: 脱媒,保险业中特指退保(surrender policies),市场利率上升时,退保的概率上升,导致了保险公司现金流的流出,资本可以在投保人的手上更好的增值(投保人可自保);使用保单的现金价值贷款(borrow against their policies),现金价值风险小,贷款利率低,当市场利率上升时,通过保单现金价值贷款的概率增高,从而导致了保险公司现金流的流出。因为现金流的流出,带来 liquidity needs 增高,导致 liability durations shorten,因为资产和负债要匹配,因此 asset investment horizon 也要下降
 - ★Asset-liability mismatch: 资产和负债的错配,假设利率上升时,由于保险公司非预期的现金流流出(退保/现金价值贷款),导致 liability duration 下降,此时有两种解决方法: 1.什么也不做,由于当前 asset duration 比较高,因此其对利率更敏感,从而产生 loss; 2.rebalancing,降低 asset duration由于提前卖出资产,从而导致资本利得的损失
 - Asset marketability risk: 传统的保险公司的险资会投资一些流动性比较差的资产(Private placement debt, commercial mortgage loans, equity real estate, and venture capital)
- ◆ Life Insurance Companies: Time Horizon: 人寿保险公司: 投资期限
 - Long term horizon (holding periods of 20 40 years)
 - 实证保险公司的投资期限在变短,因为利率波动较大,所以 duration 特别大的资产价值波动过大
- ◆ Life Insurance Companies: Constraints: 人寿保险公司: 限制
 - ◆ Taxes: 税
 - Policyholder's share (not taxed): 与投保人相关的部分不征税,即 Minimum return/Segmentation
 - Corporate share, namely funds transferred to surplus (taxed): 与股东有关的 surplus 要征税
 - ◆ Legal and Regulatory:法律和监管
 - Eligible investments: 投资的适合性,例如: equities limited to 20%
 - 基于 Prudent Investor Rule
 - Valuation Methods: Uniform valuation: 使用统一的估值方法
- 五. Non-life insurance companies: 非寿险保险公司(关注与寿险公司的区别)
 - Non-life liability durations tend to be shorter: 非寿险的负债久期更短,例如: 车险
 - "long-tail" nature of casualty liabilities: 巨灾险特点"long-tail"(理赔时间长),低频高损
 - Some non-life liabilities are exposed to inflation risk: 有些非寿险的负债有通胀风险,例如: 车险中,现在修车花 10 万,同样的情况 5 年后修车可能要花 11 万(重置成本的覆盖/replacement cost coverage)

- liability structure is mainly a function of the product mix: 负债是混合的,不同负债由不同资产 cover
- underwriting cycle tends to follow general business cycles: 承保周期高度跟随经济周期,例如: 经济周期不好,买车的人少,进而买车险的人少
- **high uncertainty**:不确定性,风险的不确定性,使得现金流不可预测(CF unpredictable),因此流动性要求更高(liquidity requirements),所以其 risk tolerance 更低,例如:财产险,车险
- Liquidity: relatively high: 流动性要求高
- Time horizon: shorter time horizons than life insurance companies: 相对于寿险,非寿险的投资期限更短,因为非寿险的负债的久期比较短

补充: 非寿险相对于寿险来说,其对利率不敏感; 非寿险在 ALM 中应该配置更多的 equity,因为寿险的负债是相对确定的,因此其资产中配置的 bond 会比较多,而非寿险因为其负债不确定性高,因此其资产配置的 equity 比较多,bond 比较少,所以非寿险对利率不太敏感

◆ Nonlife Insurance Companies: Return Objectivity: 非寿险公司: 收益率目标

- Competitive pricing policy: 有竞争力的保单定价能力, 保险公司收益率高,则保单可以卖的便宜, 进而更有竞争力
- Profitability: 盈利能力,资产收益率上升,可以提高公司的盈利能力
- Growth of surplus:资产收益率上升,扣减负债后,surplus 上升
- After-tax returns: 追求税后收益
- Total return: 关注总收益,总收益由 capital gain 和 income 类收益组成,因为非寿险配置 equity 的比例高

◆ Nonlife Insurance Companies: Constraints: 非寿险公司: 限制

- Taxes: Nonlife insurance companies are taxable entities: 非寿险公司需要纳税
- **Legal and regulatory**: risk-based capital (RBC): 考虑风险加权资产,例如: 100 万购买了 T-bill 因为风险很低,因此权重为 0,RBC=0,如果购买的是 OECD 国家的 T-bill,权重为 20%,RBC=20 万(要计提 CAR)

六. Bank: 银行

Significant mismatch in asset-liability duration, credit Risk, income, and liquidity

注意: 当利率上涨时,银行可以主动调整的只有资产的久期,不能调整负债的久期

Bank Return Objectives: positive interest spread

Risk: 因为银行是 ALM 管理, 因此 Risk tolerance 低, liquidity needs 高

LADG =leverage-adjusted duration gap: 经权重调整后的 equity 的 duration gap,本质: **(E/A)D**E,**原理**: 总资产的久期=负债久期和权益的久期的加权平均

$$LADG=D_{A}-k\times D_{L}=D_{A}-(\frac{L}{A})\times D_{L}$$

注意:银行股权的权益也有久期,理解角度 1:银行的资产是贷款(fixed rate),负债是存款(floating rate),如果当前利率上升,则存款的成本上升,因此银行会有 loss,从而影响了所有者权益。理解角度 2.贷款是固定利率,久期比较大,存款是浮动利率,久期比较小,因此当利率上升时,资产跌的更多,对银行股东产生 loss

For an increase in interest rates:

If LADG<0, market value of equity increase ↑
If LADG>0, market value of equity decrease ↓
If LADG=0, market value of equity unchanged (immunized)

For an decrease in interest rates:

If LADG<0, market value of equity decrease ↓ If LADG>0, market value of equity increase ↑ If LADG=0, market value of equity unchanged (immunized)

备注: duration>0 时,interest 与 price 是反向关系;duration<0 时,interest 与 price 是正向关系

◆ Bank Constraints: 银行的限制

- Liquidity needs 比较高
- Time horizon 比较短
- Taxes 要征税
- Legal and regulatory: Risk-adjusted capital (RBC) regulations

• Unique: Vary from bank to bank

◆ Asset liability management: 资产负债管理

- 资产与负债相互作用引发的财务风险管理
- 专注于权益和权益波动,而不是投资组合的收益/风险
- 资产负债久期的匹配非常重要(相关性高 p ↑),不同的风险承受能力导致不同程度的主动管理
- 在机构投资者中,资产负债管理的考虑对于 DB 养老基金、保险公司和银行尤为重要

SS 7: APPLICATIONS OF ECONOMIC ANALYSIS TO PORTFOLIO

MANAGEMENT

R14 Capital Market Expectations: 资本市场预期(整体市场)

Capital market expectations are expectations about classes of assets, or macro expectations: 资本市场预期主要是预测大类资产配置或宏观预期

Micro expectations are expectations concerning individual assets: 微观预期主要预测单类资产(E(R)和σ)

- ◆ 好的预期的特点:
 - Unbiased: 无偏性,样本的期望的均值可以代表整体
 - Efficient: 有效性,使用方差最小的样本
 - internally consistent: 内部的一致性, 样本数量越大越准确
- ◆ Challenges in Forecasting: 预期时的挑战(9大问题)
- ★一. Limitations of economic data: 经济数据的限制
 - Time lag: 时滞性, 宏观经济数据存在滞后性问题
 - Revision to the initial values:初始数据的修正值
 - Changes in definitions and calculation method: 模型的定义和计算会发生改变,例如: CPI 计算的成份和权重发生变化
 - **Periodically re-based indices** (not substantive change, more of a mathematical change): 周期性基期指数发生变化,例如: 1990 年的指数作为基期已经过时,改为使用 2000 年的指数作为基期,导致经济数据发生变化(re-based: 基期)

★二. Data measurement errors and biases: 数据测量的错误和偏差

- Transcription errors: 誊写错误,即书写错误
- Survivorship bias: 存活偏误,例如: HF 的收益率不包含已经清盘的基金,因此其收益率高估
- Appraisal [smoothed] data:平滑的数据,流动性差的资产大类才需要平滑,平滑导致风险被低估

★三. Limitation of historical estimates: 历史数据的限制

- Nonstationarity:数据的非平稳性,即数据的性质发生了重大改变(关键字: multiple regimes),例如:中国 2006 年进行股权分制改革,因此指数发生了根本的变化,导致之前的数据已经不可使用,只能使用比较新的数据,从而导致了样本容量减少,此时应该使用高频数据(周数据/天数据)去解决样本不足的问题,即 high-frequency data (weekly or even daily),但数据间的相关性会被低估
- 四. Ex Post risk as a biased risk measure of Ex Ante risk: 事后风险是事前风险的有偏估计 (导致 E(R)高估, σ低估),例如: 中国的房地产市场从 1998 年到 2017 年总趋势是一直上涨的,但在 2008 年美国出现次贷危机,中国房地产市场也跟着受影响,有些城市房价下跌 30%,如果站在 2008 年的时间点,事前角度考虑将来的市场趋势,可能会是下跌的,但如果站在 2017 年事后角度往回看,由于地产一直上涨,则高估了收益,低估了风险

五. Biases in analyst's methods: 分析模型的偏差

- **Data-mining bias**: 拿偶然当必然,避免的方法: 1.检查数据间是否存在经济的相关性(economic rationales); 2.使用样本外的数据可能无法得到之前的结论(out-of-sample data)
- **√time-period bias**:不同时点进行估计,得到不同的结论,例如:通常情况下美元和黄金是负相 关关系,但在 2010 年期限(欧债危机),美国和黄金呈现出正相关的关系
- **六. Failure to account for conditioning information: 忽略了新信息的影响**,例如:如果美元和黄金在 2010 年没有考虑欧债危机的因素,可能还是会预计呈现负相关关系
- 七. Misinterpretation of correlations: 相关性被错误解读,例如: 如果两个资产之间的相关系数为 0,则只能说两者无线性关系,不能说明两者完全不相关; 再者如果 A 资产升值,B 资产也升值,则两者有正相关性,但也有可能两者都跟 C 资产是正相关性
- 八. Psychological traps: 心理学陷阱(行为金融学偏差)
- 九. Model uncertainty: 模型的不确定性(输入变量的错误)

- Tools For Formulating Capital Market Expectations: 预测资本市场预期的工具(预测 E(R)和σ)
 - ★Formal Tools: 正式工具
 - Statistical tools: 统计学工具,用于预测标准差(波动率),又分为四个模型:
 - historical data: 使用历史数据预测标准差
 - ★Shrinkage model: 缩减模型, 优点: 1.缩减历史数据的影响; 2.加入分析师的观点, 具体的计算方法是用数据数据测算的数据与分析师给出的数据做加权平均,权重取决于分析师的自信 程度, Shrinkage model 适用小样本容量的情况(data set is small),样本中存在异常值(outlier),则 会对预测的结果产生很大的影响
 - Time-Series Estimators: 时间序列分析

等务中 θ 值在 0.92-0.97 之间,说明昨天对今天的预测和今天对明天的预测不会发生重大改变 $0<\theta<1$ Volatility clustering: 波动率集群效应,例如:一段

★Multifactor models: 原理: 若干资产如果两两计算协方差,计算量会很巨大,因此计 算个体资产与几个因素的关系,再计算另一个资产与这几个因素的关系,然后再通过公式将两者联系 起来,就会减少很大的计算量

Market model (single factor)	Multi-factor model
$Ri = \alpha i + \beta i \times R_M + \epsilon i$ $Rj = \alpha j + \beta j \times R_M + \epsilon i$	$P = \alpha + \beta \cdot F + \beta \cdot F + c$
$COV(i,j) = \beta i \beta j \times \sigma^2 R_M$	$R_i = \alpha_i + \beta_{i,1} F_1 + \beta_{i,2} F_2 + \varepsilon_i$

$$\sigma_{i}^{2} = \beta_{i,1}^{2} \sigma_{F_{1}}^{2} + \beta_{i,2}^{2} \sigma_{F_{2}}^{2} + 2\beta_{i,1} \beta_{i,2} Cov(F_{1}F_{2}) + \sigma_{\varepsilon,i}^{2}$$

$$Cov(i,j) = \beta_{i,1} \beta_{j,1} \sigma_{F_{1}}^{2} + \beta_{i,2} \beta_{j,2} \sigma_{F_{2}}^{2} + (\beta_{i,1} \beta_{j,2} + \beta_{i,2} \beta_{j,1}) Cov(F_{1}F_{2})$$

 σ^2 i 记忆方法: 相当于 β i1×F1+ β i2×F2 的平方和展开项,再加残差项的方差,或者画矩阵的方法 COV(i,j)记忆方法:相当于 β i1×F1+ β i2×F2 和 β j1×F1+ β j2×F2 相乘,或者画矩阵的方法

Discounted cash flow models: 用于预测期望收益

★★GK model: GGM 模型 (E(R)=D1/P+g) 进行三步调整:

- GGM的g是 nominal 的,将其分拆成 real growth rate+expected inflation
- 加入 $-\Delta S$, 其中 $-\Delta S$ 称为 share repurchase yield,表示在外发行的股份 数的改变, Δ S>0 在外发行的股份数增 加 (例如:增发); △ S<0 在外发行的 股份数减少(例如:回购)
- 加入 A P/E: 代表市盈率的变化

$$E(R_e) \approx \frac{D}{P} - \Delta S + i + g + \Delta P / E$$

E(Re) = the expected rate of return on equity

D/P = the expected dividend yield

 ΔS = the expected percentage change in shares outstanding

i =the **expected** inflation rate

g = the expected real total earnings growth rate (not identical to the EPS growth rate in general, with changes in shares outstanding)

注意: GK model 的三个优点就是这三步调整 $\mid \Delta P/E =$ the per period percent change in the P/E multiple

Expected income return: $D/P - \Delta S$, 其中 D/P 代表股息率, $-\Delta S$ 代表股票回购的收益, 等价于现金股利(回 购=现金股利)

Expected nominal earnings growth return: i+g, g 代表真实的增长率, i 代表预期通胀 Expected repricing return: ΔP/E, 再定价收益,由于市盈率重新定价所带来的收益 **expected capital gains** = the expected nominal earnings growth return + the expected repricing

The risk premium approach: 用于预测期望收益

原理: 市场上的整体收益率=无风险收益率+各类的 风险溢价

$$E(R_i) = R_f + RP_1 + RP_2 + + RP_k$$

- **♦** Fixed income premiums
 - E(Rb) = real risk free interest rate + inflation premium + default risk premium + illiquidity premium

- + maturity premium + tax premium.
- ◆ Equity risk premiums (整体股票市场)
 - E(Re) = YTM on a long-term government bond + equity risk premium
 - ✓ Financial market equilibrium models: 用于预测期望收益

International capital asset pricing model (ICAPM): 其公式与 CAPM 相同,其定义式: $re=rf+\beta$ (R_M-rf),只是其中 R_M 意义不同,在 ICAPM 中 R_M 表示全球可投资市场组合(GIP:global investable portfolio) **备注**: 如果能在市场中找到 GIP 或者说能写出 ICAPM 模型,则认为这是一个完美的市场(perfect market),即各市场之间的投资过程中,资本不受限制,市场无摩擦

变形过程: re=rf+β(R_M-rf), 其中 rf 移到左边, re-rf 表示某个大类资产的 risk premium, 右边的 R_M-rf 表示 global portfolio risk premium, 得到变形式: **RPi=**β**i**×**RP**_M, 公式进一步变形, 将β**i** 拆分, 最终将得到如下公式: ★★**RPi=**ρ**i**×σ**i**(**RP**_M/σ **M**)=ρ**i**×σ**i**×**SR**_M

 $RP_M/\sigma M$: 即为市场组合的 sharpe ratio ; $\beta = Cov(i,m)/\sigma^2 M = \rho i \sigma i/\sigma M$

ST model: 现实中并不存在 ICAPM 模型所需要的完美市场,因此要做两步调整: 1.流动性调整; 2.融合度调整,而 ST model 就是对这两点的修正:

- Illiquidity premium: 在原有基础之上,加入流动性风险溢价,RPi=ρi×σi×SR_M+LRP LRP 的计算思路: 例如: 一个 8 年锁定期的私募股权投资,通过 ICAPM 计算出的收益率为 12%,但现实中 SR_{PE}<SR_M,这是不合理的,因此可以反推合理的 SR_{PE}为 20%,之间的差额 8%即为流动性溢价 Multiperiod Sharpe ratio (MPSR): 就是普通的 sharpe ratio,因为 sharpe ratio 都是作为整体计算,并不是每年 compounding
- Degree of integration of an asset market: 市场的融合程度, 假设两种极端情况
 - ✓ Market integration: 100%融合(完美市场)
 - ✓ Market segmentation: 100%分割 (ρ=1)

备注: 发达国家的融合度可到达 80%; 新兴市场的融合度可达 65%;

融合程度的风险溢价计算思路:例如:65%融合的情况,先计算出100%融合的情况,再计算出100%分割的情况,再将两者加权平均,即100%融合×0.65+100%分割×0.35。100%融合本质就是调整了流动性后,且无融合溢价的情况,即 $\mathbf{RPi}=\mathbf{\rho}\,\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{\sigma}\,\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{SR_M}+\mathbf{LRP}$;100%分割本质是市场间没有任何的分散化效果,因此假设 $\mathbf{\rho}=1$,即 $\mathbf{RPi}=\mathbf{\sigma}\,\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{SR_M}+\mathbf{LRP}$,另一个角度理解100%分割的市场风险应该最大,因此只有 $\mathbf{\rho}=1$ 时, \mathbf{RPi} 才是最大的

- Survey and Panel Methods: 问卷调查和专家组调查
- Judgment: 自己判断
- ◆ Economic Analysis:(宏观)经济分析
- ◆ Business Cycle Analysis: 经济周期分析 (关注 short term: 8-10year/七个对经济周期影响的因素)

Phase	Economy	Fiscal and Monetary Policy	Confidence	Capital Markets
1.Initial	Inflation still	Stimulatory	Confidence	stock prices strongly rising
recovery	declining	fiscal policies	starts to	
			rebound	
2.Early	Healthy economic		Increasing	Short rates moving up;
upswing	growth;		confidence	bond yields stable to up lightly;
	Inflation remains low			stock prices trending upward
3.Late	Inflation gradually	Policy	Boom	Short rates rising;
upswing	picks up	becomes	mentality	bond yields rising;
		restrictive		stocks topping out, often volatile
				Commodity 保值增值
4.Slow-down	Inflation continues to		Confidence	Short-term interest rates peaking;
	accelerate;		drops	bond yields topping out and

	Inventory correction		starting to decline stocks declining
	Begins		
5.Recession	Production declines;	Confidence	Short rates declining;
	inflation peaks	weak	bond yields dropping;
			stocks bottoming and then starting
			to rise

结论: 经济好买股票; 经济差买债券

- 一. Inventory cycle: 存货周期(先行指标,周期短,反应快,通常2-4年)
 - inventory to sales ratio: 库存与销售量的比率,其值上升说明经济不好
 - "just in time" inventory management: 零存货管理,客户下单才去生产,可一定程度抵消存货周期对经济周期的影响

二. Inflation: 通胀

● 温和通胀对(有竞争力的公司的)股票有利,有竞争力的公司可将原材料上涨的问题转嫁给终端 用户;恶性通胀对股票不利

◆ Deflation: 通缩(比通胀难治理)

● 通缩的情况会使得传统的货币政策失效(买涨不买跌)

Inflation/Deflation Effects on Asset Classes					
	Cash	Bonds	Equity	Real Estate/ Other Real Assets	
Inflation	短期收益不变或下降				
at or Below	[Neutral]	[Neutral]	[Positive]	[Neutral]	
expectations					
Inflation above expectations	利率上升,短期的现金及 等价物的收益率上升 [Positive]	[Negative]	[Negative]	[Positive]	
Deflation	[Negative]	利率下降,对债 券有好处 [Positive]	[Negative]	[Negative]	

三. Consumer Spending: 消费支出

- 美国市场: GDP 占比最大的部分是消费
- 消费支出相对更为稳定(more stable),更不容易受经济周期变动的影响
- 消费支出更稳定的原因:消费者在消费时是基于其长期收入(permanent income hypothesis)

◆ Business spending: 投资支出 (more volatile)

● 消费支出相对更加波动,易受经济周期变动的影响

★四. Monetary Policy: 货币政策 (影响短期利率,影响大)

- 货币政策影响的是短期利率,且影响程度较大(直接影响)
- 宽松的货币政策(expansionary): 降息;紧缩的货币政策(contractionary): 加息
- The Taylor rule: 用于确定最优的短期利率(optimal short term interest rate/target rate)

$$R_{optimal} = R_{neutral} + [0.5 \times (GDPg_{forecast} - GDPg_{trend}) + 0.5 \times (I_{forecast} - I_{target})]$$

R optimal = the **target** for the short-term interest rate

R neutral = the short-term interest rate that would be targeted if GDP growth rate were on trend and inflation on target: GDP 增长率与通胀预期一致时的中性利率,R neutral=GDP trend+Inflation target

GDPg forecast = the GDP forecast growth rate: 预测的当前 GDP 增长率

GDPg trend = the observed GDP trend growth rate: 长期 GDP 增长目标

I forecast = the forecast inflation rate: 预测的当前通胀率

I target = the target inflation rate: 长期通胀目标

Roptimal = Rneutral +
$$[0.5 \times (GDPgforecast - GDPgtrend)) + 0.5 \times (Iforecast - Itarget)]$$

= $3.5\% + [0.5*(1.0\% - 3.0\%) + 0.5(4.0\% - 2.5\%)]$
= 3.25%

解读: 使用 tyler rule 计算出的最优利率为 3.25%, 低于中性利率, 因此应该采取扩张的货币政策, 但央 行最大的担心(biggest concern)是采取扩张的货币政策,会导致通胀进一步恶化

★五. Fiscal Policy: 财政政策(影响长期利率,影响小)

- 扩张的财政政策(expansionary):减税,增加政府支出;紧缩的财政政策(contractionary): 加税,减少政府支出
- 可以通过政府预算赤字(government budgetary deficit)的变化(Δ%)来确定当前的财政政策, 而非绝对金额 (absolute value)

Manatany Policy	宽松: Int ↓; short term Int ↓ ↓			
Monetary Policy	紧缩: Int↑;	short te	rm Int ↑ ↑	
	宽松: long to	erm Int †	(政府加大支出和投资,	公共部门把钱都借走了, 私人部门
Fiscal Policy	借款利率上チ	十,称为	挤出效应)	
	紧缩: long term Int ↓			
		Fiscal P	Policy (Loose)	Fiscal Policy (Tight)
Monetary Policy (Loose)		Yield cu	ırve steep(陡峭)	Yield curve moderately steep
Monetary Policy (Tight)		Yield curve flat Yield curve inverted (反转)		
解释(根据图形): Monetary Policy(Loose)导致短期利率下跌,Fiscal Policy(Loose)导致长期利率				

上涨,从而收益率曲线更陡峭

★六. Output gap=Potential GDP-Actual GDP, 假设: Potential GDP 使用基期物价, Actual GDP 使用当 前物价

- 当 Output gap<0 时,当前经济好;当前的物价水平高,应该使用紧缩的货币政策
- 当 Output gap>0 时,当前经济差;当前的物价水平低,应该使用宽松的货币政策
- Output gap>0, 称为 experience a output gap, 一个经济体处于这种情况时,支撑的原因包括: 1.GDP 增速下降; 2.通胀率在下降, 这两点必须同时符合

★七. Spread: 利差

- Term-spread ↑, 当前经济好, Term-spread=T-bond yield—3month/overnight T-bill yield, 理解 角度: 1.Term-spread ↑ 说明长期收益率高,长期的投融活动繁荣,这是经济好的现象; 2.如果一个经 济体使用了双宽政策,收益率曲线会变的更加陡峭,说明 Term-spread 变大,因此经济好
- Credit-spread ↑, 当前经济差, Credit-spread=YTM corp—YTM T-bill, 理解角度: 当前企业债 的收益率高,说明风险补偿高,说明企业债的违约概率高,这种情况发生在经济差的时期
- Economic Growth Trends: 经济增长趋势(关注 potential GDP)
- growth from labor inputs: 劳动力增长
 - growth in **potential labor** force size:潜在的劳动力增长(鼓励多生孩子)
 - growth in actual labor force participation: 劳动力参与率的增长 (labor force/working-age population)
- growth from labor productivity: 劳动力生产率增长
 - growth from capital inputs:资本投入的增长
 - total factor productivity (TFP) growth : 全要素生产率增长

备注:资本的投入对总产出的影响最快,TFP的进步是长期过程

- ◆ 经济趋势改变的四个因素:
- Consumer spending: 消费支出,是 GDP 最大的组成部分(the largest component of GDP);在经济 周期中比较稳定(stable over the business cycle);消费者消费时基于期望的长期收入(expected long-run income)

- ★Governmental structural policies: 政府的结构性政策
 - ✓ infrastructure: 基础设施建设增多,对经济有好处,人力资本的基础设施增加(human capital infrastructure/学校/教育),对经济有好处
 - ✓ responsible fiscal policy: 负责任的财政政策,使用宽松或紧缩的财政政策要根据实际情况
 - ✓ **tax policies**: 税收政策,好的税收政策是透明一致的(transparent, consistently),税率低对经济有好处
 - ✓ **promote competition**:鼓励竞争,国有企业(state-owned company)数量越少,对经济越好
- Exogenous shocks:外部冲击,对经济不好,例如:石油危机(Oil shocks),经济危机(Financial crises)
- International Interactions: 国际间交易,国际贸易(international trade)会影响经济,利率汇率的联系(Interest rate/exchange rate linkages)会影响经济
- ◆ Emerging Market Economies: 新兴市场经济(投资新兴市场的 6 个问题)
 - 财政政策和货币政策是否负责任
 - 潜在经济增长率是多少
 - 货币是否有竞争力(汇率风险)
 - 债务水平是否可控(debt/GDP)
 - 外汇储备是充裕
 - 政治体制是否稳定
- ◆ Economic Forecasting: 经济预测(三种方法)
 - Econometric analysis: 计量经济学分析

缺点: 预测经济衰退的效果比较差,发现经济改变的速度慢,计量经济学通常依靠回归模型,发现经济改变/反转的速度比较慢,例如:当前经济好,用最近 36 个月的数据做回归,之后的一个月经济变差,用最新的这 36 个月的数据再做回归,但新的一个月的数据对回归结果的影响较小,所以发现经济变坏会比较慢,至少需要比较多的经济差的月份的数据,才会对系数产生比较大的影响

- Economic indicators: 经济指标
- A checklist approach: 问卷调查
- ◆ ★Using Economic Information in Forecasting Asset Class Returns: 使用经济信息预测大类资产的收益率
 - Cash and Equivalents: 现金及现金等价物,通胀上升,有正面影响; 加息周期,投资期限短一些,降息周期,投资期限长一些
 - ★Nominal default-free bonds: 不违约的国债(T-bond),通胀下降,应该买入国债; 经济好,T-bond yield 上升(对资本市场的影响可能不好,因为无风险收益率提高,折现率提高,股票的估值有下降的压力)
 - **Defaultable debt**: 会违约的债券,经济衰退时,spread 会上升(credit spread)
 - Emerging market debt: 新兴市场债
 - Inflation-indexed bonds: 随通胀调整的债券(TIPS),通胀上升,TIPS的价格会上涨,yield会下降,经济好,应该买股票,债券买的人少,TIPS的价格下降,yield上升;市场上TIPS的需求高,则TIPS的价格升高,yield下降
 - Common shares: 普通股
 - Real Estate:房地产,通胀上升,对房地产有好处(抗通胀)
 - Currencies: 货币
- ◆ Forecasting Exchange Rates 4 Approaches:预测汇率(4 种方法):
 - **Purchasing power parity (PPP):** 购买力平价,F/S=(1+Inflation DC)/(1+Inflation FC),报价形式 DC/FC,本币通胀高,本币贬值,PPP 长期有效(useful in the long run),短期不平
 - Relative economic strength: 相对经济实力,一个经济体的经济越好,这个经济体的本币应该升值(经济好,投资环境好,机会多,国外资金流入买入本币,本币升值,经济好的情况: GDP 上升,就业率上升,失业率下降,工业增速上升,短期利率上涨,经济不好不可能加息)
 - Capital flows: 资本流,国外资本流入本国,主要有两个投资方向: 1.实体经济,通过指标 FDI

(foreign direct investment) /外商直接投资为依据, FDI 上升, 本币升值; 2 投资资本市场

● Savings-investment imbalances: 储蓄投资不平衡: 如果 saving<investment,本币升值(两个角度理解: 储蓄不够投资,需要吸引外资投入,本币升值;储蓄不够投资,因此外资净流入,本币升值)

★★R15 Equity Market Valuation: 股票市场估值(整体市场估值)

◆ 估值方法分类:

● DCF method: 绝对估值模型 (absolute), H-model

● Price multiple: 相对估值模型(relative), Fed model、Yardeni model、CAPE

● Asset-based: 基于资产的估值模型, Tobin's q ratio、Equity q

使用 H-model 对股票整体市场进行估值,其是 gl 是股票市场的长期增长率,应该与 GDP 增长率保持一致,可通过 Cobb-Douglas Production Function 计算出 GDP 的增长率

Cobb-Douglas Production Function:
 Y: total economic output A: total factor productivity K: capital stock L: labor input/labor force α : output elasticity of K β : output elasticity of L $V_0 = \frac{D_0}{r-g_L} \left[(1+g_L) + \frac{N}{2} (g_S - g_L) \right]$ Where α is α is α in α is α in α in

注意: 其中 \triangle A/A 很难估计,实务中通过历史数据反推得到。例如:要预测 2017 年的 \triangle A/A,可以通过 2016 年的 \triangle GDP(\triangle Y/Y)减去 \triangle K/K 和 \triangle L/L,从而反推出 \triangle A/A 是多少,除非 2017 年的科技出现了 重大改进,否则 2016 年和 2017 年的 \triangle A/A 应该很接近

◆ Effects of Changing Factors on Economic Growth: 因素的变化对经济增长的影响

Factor Increased	Probable Effect on Economic Growth	Explanation	
Savings rate	Increase(K †)	More capital available at reduced interest rates. Increased investment in capital stock.	
Labor force	Increase(L ↑) Increase in labor force growth rate.		
Production efficiency	Increase(A↑) Increase in TFP.		
Environmental and pollution controls	Decrease	Retooling and other costs; possibly reduced and/or more expensive output. (成本上升)	
Children per household	Increase(L †)	Increase in labor force growth rate.	
Number of two-wage- earner households	Increase(L †)	Increase in labor force growth rate.	
Retirement age	Increase(L †)	Increase in labor force growth rate.	
Import axes/restrictions	Decrease()	Increased costs; possibly reduced and/or more expensive output. (无法发挥最大产能)	

◆ Top-down & Bottom-up Forecast: 自上而下和自下而上的预测

- Top-down forecast (宏观经济→行业→股票)
- Bottom-up forecast

考点:

- 最好的解决方案是两种方法都用(use both methods)
- 建仓时使用 Top-down approach 更好;调仓换股使用 Bottom-up approach 更好
- Macro-strategy 的 HF, 使用 **Top-down approach** 更好
- 估值的结果: **Bottom-up approach** 估值的结果更乐观(易受 confirmation bias 影响,认为股票市场被低估,进而认为行业是好的,宏观经济也是利好的)

- 经济处于复苏期(recovery), **Top-down approach** 估值的结果更乐观; 经济处于衰退期(recession), **Bottom-up approach** 估值的结果更乐观
- Bottom-up approach 可以更快的发现 business cycle 的改变
- ◆ Relative Value Models:相对估值模型(整体市场估值)
- ◆ **Fed Model:** 用未来 S&P 500 盈利收益率(forward earnings yield on the S&P 500: EPS/price)与美国国债收益率(yield on US Treasury bonds: YTM)的比值
- 比值: (EPS1/price)/YTM T-bond
- **结论**: EPS/price >YTM T-bond,则说明股票市场被低估(undervalued),因为 EPS/price 越高,说明股票价格越低
- 缺点:
 - ✓ ignores equity risk premium: 忽略了股票的风险溢价
 - ✓ ignores inflation: 忽略了通胀(YTM T-bond 是名义收益率)
 - ✓ ignores any earnings growth: 忽略了盈利的增长率

Yardeni Model: 改进了 Fed model 的三个缺点,原理: 通过 GGM 公式变形得到: D_1/P_0 =r-g,并进行三步调整,第一步使用 E_1/P_0 代替 D_1/P_0 ,不但考虑了股票市场的股息率(D_1/P_0),还考虑 R/E 的再投资;第二步将 r 修正为穆迪 A 级企业债收益率(Moody' s A-rated corporate bond yield),不但考虑了利率风险,还考虑了其它风险,另外使用公认的未来 5 年 S&P 500 增长预期(LTEG:consensus five year earning growth forecast for S&P 500)代替 g,因为 LTEG 考虑了未来股票市场收益率会增长;第三步使用权重因子(通常 d=0.1)与 LTEG 相乘,因为 LTEG 是预测 S&P 500 的指标,并不能代表整个股票市场,因此要经过权重的调整,最终得到模型: E_1/P_0 =YB—d×LTEG

- 比值: (E₁/P₀)/(Y_B—d×LTEG)
- **结论**: E₁/P₀>Y_B—**d**×LTEG,则说明股票市场被低估(undervalued),因为 E₁/P₀越高,说明股票价格越低
- 缺点:
 - ✓ default risk premium is not truly equity risk premium: 没有完全考虑 equity risk premium, 因为 A 级企业债收益率相比国债收益率,只多了一个违约风险溢价(default risk premium)
 - ✓ five-year forecast for growth may not be sustainable: LTEG 可能估计不准确
 - ✓ d can vary considerably from its historical average: 权重因子 d 可能估计不准确
- Yardeni Model 对比 Fed Model 的优点:
 - ✓ Consider earning growth on the equity market: 考虑了股票市场的增长
 - ✓ Fed model ignore equity risk premium; Yardeni model use credit risk premium instead of equity risk premium: Fed 模型忽略了 ERP, Yardeni 模型使用 credit risk premium 近似代替 ERP

CAPE(Cyclically Adjusted P/E ratio) model: 经过经济周期调整后的 P/E ration,也称为 10 年的移动 平均 P/E(**10-year Moving Average Price**),原理: EPS 使用的是 10 年移动平均的 EPS(通常 10 年是一个完整的经济周期);调整 inflation,通过(EPS2007/CPI2007)×CPI2016 的方式调整每年 EPS 的通胀率

- 比值: current CAPE/historical CAPE
- **结论**: current CAPE<historical CAPE,则说明股票市场被低估(undervalued),因为当前 P/E 倍数低于历史平均,说明股票价格低
- 优点:
 - ✓ Consider business cycle effects: 使用 10 年的移动平均 EPS, 考虑了经济周期的影响
 - ✓ Consider for inflation effects: 考虑了通胀的影响
- 缺点:
 - ✓ Ignores the changes in the accounting methods: 忽略了会计准则的改变用 EPS 的影响
 - ✓ Backward looking method: (回顾)使用历史数据测算的方法
 - ✓ P/10-year MA(E) can persist for extended periods of time: P/E 可能长期维持当前水平
- ◆ Asset-based Models: 基于资产的估值模型(整体市场估值)

Tobin's q: $(MV_E + MV_D)$ 代表在二级市场买入公司的价格,重置成本代表在实体市场买入公司的价格

比值: Tobin's q=(MV_E+MV_D)/replacement cost of Asset (重置成本用 MV,不能用 BV)

结论: Tobin's q>1 或(MV_E+MV_D)>replacement cost of Asset,则说明股票市场被高估(overvalued),因为在二级市场买比在实体市场买要贵,理论上在定价公允时两者价格相等

- 缺点:
 - ✓ Hard to estimate replacement cost of Asset: 很难预测总资产的重置成本

Equity q: MV_E 代表在二级市场买入公司股票的价格,净资产重置成本代表在实体市场买入公司净资产的价格

- 比值: Equity q=MVE/replacement cost of Net Asset
- **结论**: **Equity q>1** 或 MV_E>replacement cost of Net Asset,则说明股票市场被高估(overvalued),因为在二级市场买比在实体市场买要贵,理论上在定价公允时两者价格相等
- 缺点:
 - ✓ Hard to estimate replacement cost of Net Asset: 很难预测净资产的重置成本

SS 8: ASSET ALLOCATION AND RELATED DECISIONS AND IN

PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT (1)

R16 Introduction to Asset Allocation: 资产配置导论

- 一. ✓Investment Governance: 投资治理
 - The organization of **decision-making responsibilities**: 组织的决策职责
 - Oversight of processes: 监管的流程
 - Ensure decisions are made with the **necessary skills and capacity**:确保决策具备必要的技能和能力
- ◆ 【Levels within governance hierarchy:治理的三个层级
 - Governing investment committee: 投委会,控制投资风险的治理机构
 - Investment staff: 投资的员工
 - Third-party resources:外部独立第三方,起到公司治理审计的作用(governance audit)
- ◆ Elements of effective investment governance models: 有效投资治理模式的要素
 - Articulate the long- and short-term objectives of the investment program: 明确长期和短期的投资目标
 - Allocate decision rights and responsibilities: 明确投资决策的权力和责任的分配
 - Specify processes for developing and approving the investment policy statement: 制定和批准 IPS 的特定流程
 - Specify processes for developing and approving the program's strategic asset allocation: 开发和批准战略性资产分配的特定流程
 - Establish a reporting framework: 建立报告的框架
 - Periodically undertake a governance audit: 定期进行治理审计(由外部第立第三方进行审计)
- ◆ The Governance Audit: 公司治理审计
 - **Purpose**: ensure that the <u>established policies</u>, <u>procedures</u>, <u>and governance structures are effective</u>: 目的: 确保既定的政策、程序和治理结构是有效的
 - **Performed by**: <u>independent third party</u>: 由外部独立第三方进行审计工作
 - Good governance: 好的公司治理的好处:
 - ✓ Avoid decision-reversal risk: 避免決策反转的风险(避免资产卖在最低点,买在最高点)
 - ✓ Consider the effect of **investment committee member and staff turnover** on the durability of the investment program: 考虑投委会成员和员工的流转对投资流程的影响
 - ✓ Prevent key person risk: 禁止关键人风险

二. Economic Balance Sheet: 经济资产负债表(等价于个人 IPS 中的 Net wealth)

Conventional/Financial assets and liabilities: 常规: 金融资产负债表

Additional/Extended assets and liabilities: 附加: 额外的资产和负债

Relevant in making asset allocation decisions but not appear on conventional balance sheets: 与资产负债配置 决策相关,但不在常规资产负债表上

Extended portfolio assets

- For individual investors
- ✓ Human capital (The PV of future earnings)
- ✓ The PV of pension income
- ✓ The PV of expected inheritances
- For institutional investors
- ✓ Underground mineral resources
- ✓ The PV of future intellectual property royalties

Extended portfolio liabilities

- For individual investors
- ✓ The PV of future consumption
- For institutional investors
- ✓ The PV of prospective payouts for foundations

三. Approaches to Asset Allocation: 资产配置的方法

- **Asset-only:** Mean-variance optimization (MVO)
- Liability-relative: ALM 的资产配置方法, Liability-driven investing (LDI)

- Goals-based: 基于目标的资产配置方法, Goals-based investing (GBI)
- ◆ Liability-relative: Distinctions between liabilities for an institutional investor and goals for an individual investor: 机构投资者的负债与个人投资者的目标之间的区别
 - Liabilities of institutional investors are **legal obligations or debts**: 机构投资者的负债是法律规定的负债(必须承担的负债),也称为 contractual liability
 - institutional liabilities are **uniform in nature** (all of a single type), an individual's goals may be **many** and varied: 机构投资者的负债是均匀统一的,个人投资者的目标可能较多且是多变的
 - Liabilities of institutional investors of a given type are often **numerous** and so, **through averaging**, may often be **forecast with confidence**.In contrast, individual goals are **not subject to the law of large numbers and averaging**: 机构投资者的特定负债通常是众多的,通过平均数可以有效预测,相比之下,个人目标不受大数定律和平均数的约束(备注:机构投资者的负债更容易 cover)

◆ 1.Investment Objectives: 投资目标

Asset Allocation	Relation to	Typical Objective	Typical Uses and Asset Owner Types
Approach	Economic		
	Balance Sheet		
			Liabilities or goals not defined and/or
	Does not explicitly	Maximize Sharpe ratio	simplicity is important
Asset-only	model liabilities or	for acceptable level of	■ Some foundations, endowments
	goals	volatility	■ Sovereign wealth funds
			■ Individual investors
		Minimize shortfall risk	Penalty for not meeting liabilities high
Liability-relative	Models legal and quasi-liabilities	Fund liabilities and invest excess assets for growth	■ Banks
			■ Defined benefit pensions
			■ Insurers
		Achieve goals with	
	Models goals	specified required	■ Individual investors
Goals-based	J	probabilities of success	
		*	

◆ 2.Risk Concepts: 风险的概念

- **♦** Asset-only
- Primary measure of risk: **volatility (standard deviation)** of portfolio return: 风险测量:波动率(σ)
- Other risk sensitivities: 其它风险的敏感因素
 - ✓ Risk relative to benchmarks: tracking risk (tracking error): 使用 tracking error 衡量与基准的偏离风险
 - ✓ Downside risk: 下限风险
 - semi-variance: 半方差 (关注负偏的分布)
 - peak-to-trough maximum drawdown: 最大回撤比例(越小越好)
 - measures focusing on the extreme (tail) segment of the downside: Value at risk (VaR)
- Liability-relative
- Shortfall risk: 资不抵债的风险
- Volatility of contributions needed to fund liabilities: 基金负债的波动性
- **♦** Goal-based
- Maximum acceptable probability of not achieving a goal:未完成目标的概率的最大的接受程度

★★3.Asset Class: 大类资产的划分

- ◆ Criteria for specifying asset classes for the purpose of asset allocation:资产配置中大类资产分类标准
 - Assets within an asset class should be relatively **homogeneous**: 同类资产的同质性(风险和收益特征一致)
 - Asset classes should be **mutually exclusive**:资产类别要互斥(一个资产不能同属两个大类)

- Asset classes should be **diversifying**:资产类别要分散化(各大类资产相关性要低)
- The asset classes as a group should make up a **preponderance of world investable wealth**: 大类资产 应该占世界可投资资产的大多数
- Asset classes selected for investment should have the capacity to absorb a **meaningful proportion of an investor's portfolio**: 大类资产应该是投资者投资组合的主要构成成份

4.Risk Factors: 风险因子

Factor-based asset allocation: 基于因子的资产配置(多因子模型),其优点是降低了因子和因子间的重叠风险(**overlapping risk factors**)

- ◆ The process of Factor-based asset allocation: 基于因子的资产配置的流程
 - Specify risk factors and the desired exposure to each factor: 特定的因子和每个因子期望的敞口
 - Describe asset classes with respect to their **sensitivities to each of the factors**: 描述资产类别对每个因素的敏感程度
 - isolate exposure to the risk factor: 隔离出风险因子的敞口
 - **Map back** a choice of risk exposures in factor space to asset class space for implementation: 风险因子空间映射回大类资产空间
- ◆ 风险因子的合成/提取:
 - Inflation: long nominal Treasuries, short inflation-linked bonds: 做多国债, 做空 TIPS
 - Real interest rates: TIPS (Inflation-linked bonds)
 - US volatility: VIX (Chicago Board Options Exchange Volatility Index)期货的恐慌指数
 - Credit spread: long high-quality credit, short Treasuries/government bonds: 做多公司债, 做空国债
 - **Duration**: long 10+ year Treasuries, short 1 3 year Treasuries. 做多 10 年期国债,做空 1 年期国债

5.Global Market Portfolio: 全球市场组合(sums all investable assets (global stocks, bonds, real estate, and so forth)), 其优点:

- Minimize non-diversifiable risk: 最小化非分散化风险
- The available portfolio that makes the **most efficient use of the risk budget**: 更好的风险预算的效果
- As a reference point for a **highly diversified portfolio**: 更高分散化的组合
- Mitigate investment biases, such as home-country bias: 减轻投资偏误,例如 home-country bias

结论: Global market-value weighted portfolio should be considered as a baseline asset allocation: 全球市 值加权的组合作为资产配置的基准

★★四. Strategic asset allocation: 战略性资产配置

$$U = E(r_p) - \frac{1}{2} \lambda \sigma_p^2$$
 原理: 好处減去坏处,用 $E(R)$ 代表好处,用 σ^2 代表坏处,因为只有负偏的部分是坏处,因此只需要减去一半, λ : 厌恶系数 ($\lambda > 0$),其值越高,说明越厌恶风险(参数都是带%的)
$$\omega^* = \frac{1}{\lambda} (\frac{\mu - r_f}{\sigma^2})$$
 ω^* : 表示在效用最大化的前提下,所配置的风险资产的最优权重是多少推导过程: $U = E(R) - \lambda / 2 \sigma^2 P$,其中 $E(R) = Wi \times Ri + (1 - Wi)rf$ の $P = Wi \times \sigma i$,公式变形为 $U = Wi \times Ri + (1 - Wi)rf$ 一 $Wi^2 \times \sigma i^2$,求其一阶导即可

- 五. Strategic implementation choices: 战略实施的选择
- ◆ Two dimensions of passive/active choices:被动与主动选择的两个维度
 - Passive/active management of the strategic asset class weights: 战略性资产配置的被动/主动管理
 - ✓ **Tactical asset allocation (TAA):** involves deliberate short-term deviations from the strategic asset allocation: 短期可偏离战略性资产配置
 - ✓ **Dynamic asset allocation (DAA)**: a strategy incorporating deviations from the strategic asset allocation that are motivated by longer-term valuation signals or economic views: 根据长期的估值信号和经济展望调整战略性的资产配置
 - Passive and active management allocations to asset classes:资产大类的被动/主动的管理
 - ✓ Passive does not react to changes in the investor's CME or insights into individual investments:

被动投资:投资者的 CME 发生了改变,不做调整

✓ Active <u>will respond to changing CME or insights</u> resulting in changes to portfolio composition: 主动投资: CME 或观点发生改变,导致组合构成的改变

◆ ★Factors influencing where to invest on the passive/active spectrum: 影响主动/被动投资的因素

- Available investments: 可投资资产(有没有被动的可投资资产)
- Scalability of active strategies being considered:考虑主动投资的规模(盘子过大有些策略会失效)
- The **feasibility of investing passively** while incorporating client-specific constraints(e.g. ESG investing criteria):被动投资的可行性(例如:指数存在烟酒行业,等对社会不利的成份,而客户有 SRI 时就无法被动投资)
- Beliefs concerning market informational efficiency: 市场有效性的看法(有效被动; 无效主动)
- The **trade-off** of expected incremental benefits relative to incremental costs and risks of active choices: 期望增量收益的平均(获得 active return 时,也会带来 active risk)
- Tax status: 考虑税收环境

六. Strategic considerations in rebalancing: 再平衡的战略考虑

Rebalancing is the discipline of adjusting portfolio weights <u>more closely align with the strategic asset allocation</u>: 再平衡是调整组合权重,与战略性的资产配置更紧密结合

◆ Approaches to rebalancing: 再平衡的方法

- Calendar rebalancing: on a periodic basis: 日历再平衡,基于周期性(每个月平衡一次,优点:简单;缺点:如果期中发生重大改变,会使得战略性资产配置发生重大偏离)
- Percent-range rebalancing: 百分比范围再平衡
- **✓ 绝对的百分比**:例如: SAA 中 50% equity, 50% bond, 允许偏离±5%, 此时 equity/bond 的权重超过 45%-55%时才进行再平衡,其中 **45%-55%之间的 10%称为 corridor**
- ✓ **相对的百分比**: 例如: SAA 中 10% commodity, corridor=10%, 则表示其权重偏离 10%的 10%, 即[9%-11%], (使用绝对百分比,则 commodity 的 corridor 过大)
- ◆ Fully or partially correcting: 全部或部分修正 (关注降低再平衡成本)
 - Rebalance back to target weights: 权重调整到目标权重,属于 fully,不能降低成本
 - Rebalance to range edge: 权重调整到范围边际,属于 partially, 可以降低成本
 - Rebalance halfway between the range-edge trigger point and the target weight: 权重调整到目标权重和范围边际之间的某个点位,属于 partially,可以降低成本

默认假设:一个组合中有 3 个资产,如果其中一个资产的权重超过 corridor 需要调整,则所有的资产都需要调整

◆ ★★Strategic considerations: 战略思考(cost-benefit 原则)

Considerations	Rebalancing ranges		
Transaction costs	Higher costs, wider ranges (正相关)		
Risk-aversion	More risk-averse, narrower ranges(负相关)		
A sast along convolution	Less correlated, narrower ranges, further divergence from target is less likely (正相		
Asset class correlation	关)两资产相关性高,同时变化 range 变化不大,不太可能偏离		
Beliefs in momentum	Beliefs in momentum, wider ranges (正相关); Mean reversion,narrower ranges (负		
favor/ mean reversion	相关)		
I i a u i di ta	Illiquid investments complicate rebalancing, commonly wider ranges (负相关, 流动		
Liquidity	性越差,交易成本越高)		
Higher volatility makes divergences from the strategic asset allocati			
Volatility	thus narrower ranges(负相关)偏离 SAA 概率大,因此 range 应该小		
	Encourage asymmetric and wider rebalancing ranges(正相关),影响非对称 25%		
Taxes	→(24%,28%),税率下跌可以更频繁的平衡,因为 realized loss 可以抵税,如果		
	税率上升缴纳的资本利得税越多,多偏离一些再平衡		

◆ Rebalancing 的好处:

- ✓ more closely align with the strategic asset allocation: 与战略性的资产配置更紧密结合
- Rebalancing earns a <u>diversification return</u>: 赚取分散化的收益(某资产权重一直上升,带来过度集中的资产的风险)
- Rebalancing earns a return from being short volatility: 赚取做空波动率的收益(rebalancing 等价于 short call+short put,资产升值,卖涨,即 short call;资产贬值,买跌,即 short put,而 short option 就是 short volatility)

R17 Principles of Asset Allocation: 资产配置的原则

一. Developing asset-only asset allocations: 研发 AO 的资产配置

1.1Asset-Only: MVO:

$$U_{\rm m} = E(\mathbf{R}_m) - 0.005 \lambda \sigma_{\rm m}^2$$

效用方程的另一种形式: 其中的参数全部不带%, 例如: E(R)=10%, 则直接带入 10 即可

◆ MVO 构建原理

- 预测:每资产的 E(R)和 σ ,两两之间的 Cov
- 构建有效前沿(Efficient Frontier)条件: w1+w2+...=1; σ (minimization); other constraint
- 引入无风险资产,形成无数条 CAL 线,斜率最大(投资者观点一致)的一条称为 CML 线(与 EF 的切线,切点称为 market portfolio)
- 引入投资者的效用曲线(无差异曲线), utility(maximization)
- 无差异曲线与 CML 线的切点即为 Optimal portfolio weight

◆ Connor portfolio 计算(加入 constraint)

Corner portfolio: 在加入限制的情况下(例如: 不允许做空),有效前沿上某些点是不能取到的,因为有些点的权重可能<0,此时有效前沿变成了离散的点,而非一条平滑的曲线,每个离散的点称为 corner portfolio,换言之 corner portfolio 中所有资产的权重都是>0 的。此时如果想要获得的收益率无法对应在 corner portfolio 上,此时可以通过相邻的组合(adjacent corner portfolio),合成出这个收益率

实例: An endowment's return objective is 7%, which includes a spending rate of 3% Given the corner portfolio returns on the next slide and assuming no short sales, **determine** the standard deviation and asset weights for the portfolio that will meet their objective

Corner	E(D)	g.	Sharpe	Asset A	Asset B	Asset C
Portfolio	E(R)	σ	Ratio	Weight	Weight	Weight
1	9%	16%	0.436	100%	0%	0%
2	7.5%	11.5%	0.478 (max)	80%	20%	0%
3	5.5%	7.7%	0455	0%	40%	60%
4	5.3%	7.6%	0.434	0%	0%	100%

一. 选择 corner portfolio 2 和 corner portfolio 3 合成 7%的收益,原因:

1.corner portfolio 2 和 corner portfolio 3 是 adjustment portfolio

2.corner portfolio 2 的 sharpe ratio 最高

- 二. 计算两个 corner portfolio 的权重, 求解方程: 7%=w1×7.5%+(1-w1)×5.5%, 解出 w1 即可
- 三. 如果引入无风险资产(rf=2%),此时要合成出 7%的收益率,应该选择无风险资产和 sharpe ratio 最高的那个 corner portfolio,即 rf 与 corner portfolio2 合成
- 四. 计算无风险资产和 corner portfolio2 的权重,求解方程: 7%=w1×7.5%+(1-w1)×2%,求解 w1
- 五. 如果要合成出 9%的收益率,方法还是求解方程: 9%= $w1 \times 7.5$ %+ $(1-w1) \times 2$ %,求解 w1,只不过此时的 w2 是负数(非做空无风险收益,而是用无风险收益借钱,这种 portfolio 称为 borrowing portfolio)

Estimating the Standard Deviation

The approximate standard deviation of the portfolio is a weighted average of the standard deviations of Corner Portfolios 2 and 3:

如果投资者要求组合的波动率最大不能超过 11%, 问 corner portfolio 2 和 corner portfolio 3 合成出的 adjustment portfolio 是否符合要求?

 σ P= 0.75(0.115) + 0.25(0.077)=0.1055 =10.55%

解释: 因为两个组合之间的协方差未知,所以不能直接计算,假设两个组合的 $\rho=1$,即风险最大的一种情况,在这种情况下组合的 σ **P=10.55%**,因此一定符合要求

◆ Strengths: 优点

- Most common and widely used: 常见和应用广泛
- Basis for more sophisticated approaches: 其它复杂模型的基础

◆ Weaknesses: 缺点

- The outputs (asset allocations) are <u>highly sensitive to small changes in the inputs</u>:输出(资产配置)对输入的微小变化非常敏感
- The asset allocations tend to be <u>highly concentrated in a subset</u> of the available asset classes: 资产分配倾向于高度集中在可投资资产类别的一个子类(当存在投资限制时,特别容易出现这种情况)
- Investors are often concerned with characteristics of asset class returns such as **skewness and kurtosis that are not accounted** for in MVO: 投资者往往关注资产收益率的偏度和峰度特征,MVO 没有记入
- While the asset allocations may appear diversified across assets, the sources of <u>risk may not be</u> diversified: 资产配置可能呈现分散化,但风险因素并没分散化
- MVO allocations may have no direct connection to the factors affecting any <u>liability or consumption</u> <u>streams</u>: MVO 的资产配置没有直接考虑任何的负债或消费的因素
- MVO is a <u>single-period framework</u> that does not take account of trading/ rebalancing costs and taxes: MVO 是一个单阶段的框架,没能考虑交易成本,再平衡成本和税

★1.2Addressing Criticisms—Adding Constraints: 应对批评: 增加约束

解决: MVO 输出对输入的微小变化非常敏感以及资产配置过于集中的问题; 方法: 加入更多的约束

◆ Advantage: 优点

- To incorporate <u>real-world constraints</u> into the optimization problem: 加入现实世界的约束进入优化问题
- And to help <u>overcome some of the potential shortcomings</u> of mean variance optimization elaborated above: 帮助克服上面提到的 MVO 的一些潜在缺点

◆ Disadvantage: 缺点

● If a very large number of constraints are imposed, one is no longer optimizing but rather specifying an asset allocation through a series of binding constraints: 如果强加了大量的约束,则不再是优化,而是通过一系列绑定约束指定资产配置

◆ 常见的约束(constraints):

- Specify a set allocation to a specific asset: 特定资产类别给定一个明确的权重(具体 5%)
- Specify an asset allocation range for an asset:特定资产给定一个权重的范围(范围[5%-20%])
- Specify an upper limit, due to liquidity considerations: 由于流动性的考虑, 给定一个特定的上限(限制≤30%)
- Specify the relative allocation of two or more assets: 两个资产类别之间的相对权重加以限制(wi<wj)

1.3Addressing Criticisms—Resampled MVO: 应对批评: 多重采样的 MVO (MVO 与 MCS 结合)

解决: MVO 输出对输入的微小变化非常敏感以及资产配置过于集中的问题;**方法**: 使用 MCS 进行多次模拟,并将模拟的结果取平均

- Resampling <u>uses MCS to estimate a large number of potential capital market assumptions for MVO</u>, which lead to an equal number of MVO frontiers, also referred to as **simulated frontiers**: 使用蒙特卡罗模拟,大量预测不同的潜在资本市场预期,并产生与相同数量的 MVO 有效前沿,也被称为模拟前沿
- The resulting asset allocations, or portfolio weights, from these simulated frontiers are <u>saved and averaged</u> (<u>using a variety of methods</u>), and, eventually, for the <u>resampled frontier</u>: 将模拟的有效前沿保存并取平均(多种模型),产生的资产配置和投资组合权重,称为多重采样的有效前沿

◆ Resampled MVO 的缺点:

● Some frontiers have <u>concave</u> "bumps" where expected return decreases as expected risk increases: 有些有效前沿会产生凹的曲线,例如:期望风险上升时,期望收益反而下降

- The asset allocations inherit the estimation errors in the original inputs: 原始输入在资产配置中内生的预测错误(MCS 取决于历史数据或其它预测进行模拟,有时也会出现预测的错误)
- The approach lacks a foundation in theory: 这种方法没有理论基础(只是统计学应用)

1.4 Addressing Criticisms—Reverse optimization:应对批评:反优化(新增内容)

解决: MVO 输出对输入的微小变化非常敏感以及资产配置过于集中的问题; **方法**: 已知权重, 反推出 E(R), 称为 **implied return**

◆ 步骤:

- 找出市场上已知的 global portfolio/index
- 计算出资产/资产大类,占 global index 中资产的权重(<u>投资者广泛认可的指数所隐含的权重的收</u> 益率,而非预测值)
- 已知权重,反推出 E(R),即 implied return
- 通过 implied return,加入历史的 Cov 和σ,再做一次 MVO,并最终计算出 optimal weight

1.5 Addressing Criticisms—Black - Litterman model:应对批评:BL model(新增内容)

解决: MVO 输出对输入的微小变化非常敏感以及资产配置过于集中的问题;**方法**:基于反优化的思想,并组合了分析师的观点

◆ 步骤:

- 找出市场上已知的 global portfolio/index
- 计算出资产/资产大类,占 global index 中资产的权重(投资者广泛认可的指数所隐含的权重的收益率,而非预测值)
- 己知权重,反推出 E(R),即 implied return
- ★通过 implied return 和 analyst opinion 计算出 adjusted return=w1 × implied return+(1-w1) × analyst opinion,其优点反应了投资者的独特观点(reflect an analyst opinion)
- 通过 adjusted return,加入历史的 Cov 和 σ ,再做一次 MVO,并最终计算出 optimal weight **备注**: 现实中 w1 是很难计算的,分析师不自信 w1 值就越高

1.6 Addressing Criticisms—Non-normal optimization:应对批评:非正态分布优化

解决: MVO 未考虑收益率分布是非正态分布的情况;方法: 使用以下四个模型进行优化:

- Mean semivariance optimization
- Mean conditional value-at-risk optimization
- Mean variance-skewness optimization
- Mean variance-skewness-kurtosis optimization

1.7 Liquidity considerations: 流动性的考虑

- Liquid asset classes: publicly listed equities and bonds.
- Less liquid asset classes: direct real estate, infrastructure, and private equity
- 在做资本市场预期或资产配置时会更有挑战性 (more challenging)
- 流动性比较差,找不到好的被动投资的方法去跟踪(there are no low-cost passive investment vehicles to track them)

◆ 解决流动性问题的方法:

- model the inputs to represent the specific risk characteristics: (考虑流动性差的资产)模型的输入要呈现一个特别的风险特征
- model the inputs to represent the highly diversified characteristics associated with the true asset classes: 找一些与流动性差的资产相类的,但流动性比较好的资产去代替

1.8 Asset-Only: Factor-based Model: AO 资产管理方式:基于风险因子的模型(新增内容)

解决: MVO 只考虑了资产配置的分散化,没有考虑风险因子的分散化,方法: 基于风险因子的模型

- ◆ 步骤: (目标: avoid risk factor overlapping)
 - 确定想获得哪些风险因子的敞口 (risk factor exposure)

- 确定 risk factor 应该如何合成
- 计算 risk factor 之间的 E(R), σ, Cov
- 构建 **Efficient Frontier**,条件: w1+w2+...=1; σ (minimization),确定 risk factor 的权重
- 将 risk factor 的权重映射回(map back)资产的权重(asset class weight)

1.9 Asset-Only: MCS (Monte Carlo simulation): AO 资产管理方式: 蒙特卡罗模拟

解决: MVO 只考虑单一阶段框架(single-period framework)的问题,方法: 使用蒙特卡罗模拟

- ◆ 优点:
 - 蒙特卡罗模拟是一个多阶段的(multi-period),也可以是动态的(dynamic)
 - paint a realistic picture of potential future outcomes: 预测未来潜在的结果的真实场景
 - ▶ 还可以考虑路径依赖(path dependent),以及再平衡和税(Rebalancing and taxes)

注意:蒙特卡罗模拟并不是传统资产配置,而是传统资产配置的补充(complements)

二. Developing liability-relative asset allocation: 研发负债相关的资产配置(资产负债管理)

2.1 Surplus optimization (对 surplus 进行 MVO 优化)

原理: surplus=asset-liability,将 surplus 看成是一个 portfolio(long asset,short liability),再对这个组合进行 MVO 优化,由此画出的有效前沿称为: ALM Efficient Frontier/surplus Efficient Frontier

$$U_{LRm} = E(R_{s,m}) - 0.005 \lambda \sigma_{(R_{s,m})}^2$$
 数用方程: 其中 E(Rs,m)代表 surplus 的期望收益, $\sigma^2(Rs,m)$ 是 surplus 的标准差(输入不带%,例如:10%,则输入10)

注意: minimum surplus variance portfolio 是 ALM Efficient Frontier 最左边的点, 其值可能是小于 0 的数 (对应 MVO 有效前沿的 global minimum variance portfolio: 全球最小方差组合)

MVO Efficient Frontier	Surplus Efficient Frontier
Minimization of variance	Minimization of surplus variance
global minimum variance portfolio >0	minimum surplus variance portfolio maybe<0

- The most conservative mix for the surplus efficient frontier consists mostly of the US corporate bond index: 在 surplus efficient frontier 上保守的配置的资产大多为 bond
- The most **conservative mix for the asset-only efficient frontier consists chiefly of cash:** 在 AO 的 efficient frontier 上保守的配置的资产大多为 cash

2.2 Hedging/Return-seeking Portfolio Approach/two-portfolio approach

- ◆ 分为 basic form 和 variant form(variant form 又细分为: partial hedge 和 Increase contribution):
- ◆ **Basic form (fully hedge)**: 前提: asset > liability,即 positive surplus,其原理是基于 ALM 资产配置,使用部分资产对冲全部负债,剩余的 surplus 则基于 AO 进行资产配置
- ◆ Variant form: 比 basic form 风险更大,更为激进(less conservative)
 - **Partial hedge:** 前提: asset < liability, 即 not a positive surplus, 其原理是基于 ALM 资产配置,使用部分资产对冲部分负债,剩余资产,则基于 AO 进行资产配置,去获得更大的期望收益(generate higher expected returns)
 - **Increase contribution**: 前提: asset < liability,即 not a positive surplus,其原理是可以额外收到 sponsor的 contribution
- ◆ Limitations of two-portfolio approach: 模型的限制
 - if the funding ratio is less than 1, the investor cannot create a fully hedging portfolio: 如果 funding ratio 小于 1,投资者不能使用 fully hedging 的方法,即不能使用 basic form。
 - ✓ 解决方法: 使用 Partial hedge 和 Increase contribution
 - true hedging portfolio is unavailable:没有可以对冲负债的资产组合
 - ✓ 解决方法: 使用 partially hedge,不再 cover 这部分难以匹配的负债
 - ✓ 解决方法: investor might be able to set up a contract with someone: 投资者可以与其它人签订

2.3 Integrated asset-liability Approach(在固定收益章节讲解)

2.4 Comparing the approaches: 方法的比较

1 8 11		
Surpl	us Optimization	Hedging/Return-Seeking Portfolios

Correlation	links assets and the present value of liabilities through a correlation coefficient	not require
Fund status	does not require an overfunded status	depends on having an overfunded plan Partial hedge dose not require overfunded plan
Risk	All levels of risk	Conservative level of risk
Period	Single period	Single period

三. Developing goals-based asset allocations: 研发基于目标的资产配置方法

Goals-based asset allocation applies best to individuals who have multiple goals, time horizons, and urgency

levels: 基于目标的资产配置方法适用于个人投资者,多目标,多投资期限,紧急级别

备注: goal-based asset allocation=mental accounting=BPT

- ◆ The Goals-Based Asset Allocation Process:基于目标的资产配置流程
 - Describing Client Goals: 描述客户的目标
 - ✓ list all known 'needs' and 'wants': 了解所有客户的目标
 - ✓ Classify them in order of importance: 根据重要性进行分类
 - ✓ Classify them as duration:根据期限进行分类
 - Constructing Sub-Portfolios: 构建子类组合(不同目标构建不同子类组合、或选择已经存在的子类组合)
 - The Overall Portfolio: 检视整体组合
 - Revisiting the Module Process in Detail: 详细处理组合的再平衡
 - Periodically Revisiting the Overall Asset Allocation: 定期再平衡整体资产配置
- ◆ Why sub-portfolio needs rebalancing:为什么子类组合需要再平衡(考点)
 - Time-horizon may change: 投资期限可能已经改变
 - Excess capital: 随着某些目标的期限变少,可能存在资产超配的情况,超出的资产可做其它用途
 - Less capital:资产配置的不够,为了达成目标,需要再多配置一些资产
- ◆ Allocate capital to sub-portfolios: 如何配置子类组合
 - highest probability of success: 最大化成功的概率
 - Lowest initial capital: 最小化的初始投资

四. Heuristics and other approaches: 试探法和其他方法

- ◆ "120 minus your age" rule: 120 减去投资人年龄,作为投资在 equity 上的权重
- ◆ 60/40 stock/bond heuristic: 60%的 equity 和 40%的 bond (全球金融市场的权重差不多就是这样)
- ◆ Endowment model (Yale model): 耶鲁大学模型
 - High allocations to non-traditional assets: 更多的资产配置在非传统资产上
 - A commitment to active management: 主动的管理
 - Seeks to earn illiquidity premiums: 获得流动性风险溢价
 - Endowments with long time horizons are well positioned to capture: 基金会投资期限长,好机会捕捉的好
- ◆ 1/N rule: 平均分配各资产,例如: 买 10 支股票,权重就是各 10%,属于 naive diversification,实证 经验发现这种配置方法反尔比 MVO 更好,原因是 MVO 很可能出现输入的估计错误(estimation error in inputs)

★★五.Risk budgeting and Risk Party:风险预算和风险平价

◆ Risk budgeting: 每承担 1 个单位的风险,要使得 return 最大(The goal of risk budgeting is to maximize return per unit of risk), 类似 sharpe ratio

marginal contribution to total risk (MCTR): MCTRi=βi×σp, 表示每多投资\$1 的资产,对组合的标准差(σp)的影响,例如一个组合有三个资产 ABC,要多投\$1 可以投在不同资产上,如果投在 A 资产上,就称为 MCRT_A,如果 MCRT_A>MCRT_B,则应该**卖 A 买 B**,再者(R_P-rf)/MCRT_A>(R_P-rf)/MCRT_B,则应该**买 A 卖 B**(Ratio of excess return to MCTR=(Expected return - Risk-free rate)/MCTRi)

注意: MCRT_A>MCRT_B和(R_P-rf)/MCRT_A>(R_P-rf)/MCRT_B同时成立时,以 ratio 为主进行判断,不断的 买 A 卖 B,使得(R_P-rf)/MCRT_A=(R_P-rf)/MCRT_B,这个点称为最优 risk budget

备注: **MCTRi=Cov(i,p)**/ σ **p** 是 MCTRi 的定义式,其中 Cov(i,p)是指加入\$1 到资产 i 上与组合的协方差 **absolute contribution to total risk (ACTR)**: **ACTRi=wi**× β **i**× σ **p**,资产 i 对组合风险的总贡献,原理: 每\$1 的资产 i 对组合的标准差的影响,而总体的资产 i 就是其权重 wi

◆ Risk parity: 风险平价是一种资产配置的方法,使得组合中每一项资产对风险对组合风险的贡献程度 是相等的,例如: 一个组合中有 n 个资产,则每个资产的风险为(1/n) σ p,想要实现 risk parity 则需要 使得 ACTRi=wi×β i× σ p=wi×MCTRi=(1/n) σ p

Advantage: 优点	Disadvantage: 缺点
The sources of risk are	It ignores expected returns: 忽略了期望收益(只考虑了风险)
diversified (asset classes):	The contribution to risk is highly dependent on the formation of the opportunity
风险的来源完全分散化	set (fixed-income vs equity): 风险的贡献高度依赖资产组合的构成
	Back tests argue that they suffer from look-back bias: 回测证明会受到回测偏误
	的影响
	Dependent on the ability to use extremely large amounts of leverage at low
	borrow rates (which may not have been feasible): 依靠用低利率钱钱举杠杆的
	能力(有时不能实现)

备注: risk parity 的组合其风险是比较低的,收益也是比较低的

SS 9: ASSET ALLOCATION AND RELATED DECISIONS AND IN PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT (2)

R18 Asset Allocation with Real-World Constraints: 真实世界资产配置的约束(新增)

- 一. Constraints in Asset Allocation:资产配置中的约束
- ◆ ★Economies and diseconomies of scale: 规模经济和规模不经济(关注资产规模/Assets Size)
- ◆ The disadvantages subject to large assets: 大规模资产的缺点:
 - The <u>illiquidity</u> occurred when invest in small-cap stocks, either buy or sell: 投资小盘股的流动性较差,无论买或卖
 - Invest in small-cap stock will cause the market wildly fluctuate: 投资小盘股会导致市场剧烈波动
 - Capital inflow may cause active investment managers to <u>pursue ideas outside</u> of their core investment thesis: 资本流入可能导致主动投资的基金经理偏离其核心投资主题
 - Organizational hierarchies may <u>slow down decision making</u> and reduce incentives: 组织层级可能导致 决策变慢和资金减少
- ◆ The advantages subject to large assets: 大规模资产的优点:
 - Have sufficient size to build a diversified portfolio of investment strategies: 有足够的规模建立分散化的投资组合策略
- ◆ The disadvantages subject to small assets: 小规模资产的缺点:
 - Insufficient amount to meet the <u>minimum requirement</u> for some investments: 不充足的金额达不到某些投资的最低要求(最低投资门槛)
 - Lower governance capacity-sophistication and manpower resource to develop the required knowledge base for complex asset classes and investment vehicles: 更低的治理能力和人力资源用以开发复杂资产类别和投资工具所需的知识
 - Higher internal management fees: 更高的内部管理成本
 - <u>Too small to diversify</u> across the range of asset classes: 规模太小无法充分分散化

注意: Notice that the large and small are not rigidly defined: 注意大规模和小规模不是严格定义的

- ◆ Different owners would have different liquidity needs:不同持有人有不同的流动性要求
 - Banks typically have greater liquidity needs to meet their daily operations:银行需要达成每天的经营,要求更高的流动性(避免发生挤兑)
 - The same bank may have another designated investment pool one level removed from operating assets. This pool is able to handle some illiquidity assets: 有些银行会使用自有资金去投资一些流动性比较差的资产
 - Long-term investors can generally exploit illiquidity premiums: 长期投资者更容易获得流动性溢价
- ◆ Liquidity needs should be considered dynamically:动态的考虑流动性
 - A university must consider its prospects for future enrollments and the extent to which it relies on tuition to meet operating needs: 大学必须考虑未来招生的前景和依靠学费来满足经营需要的程度
 - A foundation whose mission supports medical research in a field in which a break-through appears imminent may desire a higher level of liquidity to fund critical projects than would a foundation that supports ongoing community efforts: 基金会的使命是支持药物研究领域出来了突破,可能需要提供更高的流动性来资助重要的项目
 - An insurance company whose business is predominantly life or auto insurance, where losses are actuarially predictable, can absorb more liquidity risk than a property/casualty reinsurer whose losses are subject to unpredictable events, such as natural disasters: 保险公司的寿险更多基于大数定率,可预测性高,财产险更随机
 - A family with several children nearing college-age will have higher liquidity needs than a couple of the same age and circumstances with no children:家庭中有小孩要读大学,则对流动性的要求更高,如果没

有小孩或不在读大学的年龄,则流动性要求低

◆ Time Horizon: 投资期限

- Changing human capital: 个人的预期收入可能会发生改变,再者随着时间的推移,越接近退休,未来能获得的工资也会越少
- Character of liabilities: 负债的特征: 随时间推移,负债也会发生改变
- ✓ For a firm, the term structure of liabilities changes due to time lapses, new employments and resignations: 对于一个公司,负债的期限结构改变是由于时间的推移,新员工入职和员工退休
- ✓ For a individual investor, he/she may set several goals when he was young. Each goal reflects a liabilities. With the change of time, the goal may change as well: 对个于人,年轻时会有很多目标,每个目标对应一个负债,随时间的变化,目标也发生变化

◆ Regulatory and Other Considerations: 监管和其它的考虑

- Insurance Companies: 基于 ALM 管理,有些国家会规定,保险公司只能投资投资级债券,不能投资垃圾级债券,通常政府会对保险公司的投资范围作出规定
- Pension Funds: 国家会鼓励公司建立养老金,政府会给予一定的税收优惠,税法的改变会对养老金产生影响
- Endowments and Foundations: spending rate 必须达到政府要求才能免税,因此要考虑监管的因素(Tax incentives/Credit considerations)

注意: 大学的 B/S 表中,可以将 Endowments and Foundations 作为资产列入其中,可能降低其 D/E ratio

- Sovereign Wealth Funds: 主权基金,重新考虑文化因素,政府因素
- Environmental, social, and governance (ESG) considerations: 考虑社会责任/ESG, 即环境, 社会, 治理方面的因素

★二. Tax considerations in asset allocation: 资产配置中税率的考虑

◆ After-Tax Portfolio Optimization: 组合的税后优化

r_{at} = $r_{pt}(1-t)$ (统一税率) r_{at} =the expected after-tax return r_{pt} =the expected pre-tax (gross) return t=the expected tax rate

 \mathbf{r}_{at} = \mathbf{p}_d × \mathbf{r}_{pt} (1 - \mathbf{t}_d) + \mathbf{p}_a × \mathbf{r}_{pt} (1 - \mathbf{t}_{cg}) (不同稅率) \mathbf{p}_d =the proportion of \mathbf{r}_{pt} attributed to dividend income \mathbf{p}_a =the proportion of \mathbf{r}_{pt} attributed to price appreciation \mathbf{t}_d =the dividend tax rate \mathbf{t}_{cg} =the capital gains tax rate

例如:期初投资\$100 买股票,期末时股利\$3,股票涨到\$110,股利税为 10%,资本利得税为 20%,此时真实税率=[3(1-10%)+10(1-20%)]/100

★ σ at= σ pt(1-t) (做 MVO 时应该,使用税后的标准差,对于投资者税后的收益才是有意义的)

- σ at=the expected after-tax standard deviation
- σ _{pt}=the expected pre-tax standard deviation

注意: 税后的标准差=税前标准差×(1-t),因此税后的标准差会变小

◆ Taxes and Portfolio Rebalancing: 税率和组合再平衡

 R_{pt} = R_{at} /(1-t) (除法关系) R_{at} =the after-tax rebalancing range R_{pt} =the pre-tax rebalancing range

the rebalancing ranges for a taxable portfolio can be wider than those of a tax-exempt portfolio with a similar risk profile: 由于税的因素,使得组合的再平衡范围变大,例如:资产权重为 40%,其再平衡范围为±4%(默认税后角度),税后上涨 10%,税前则可能上涨 12.5%,因此其再平衡范围增大

★注意: E(R)应该使用税后值,标准差也应该使用税后值,另外资产的相关系数保持不变(the correlations of asset classes will remain),使用税后值做 MVO,获得的权重才是真实的权重

三. revisions to asset allocation: 资产配置的修正

asset location:在不同的税收账户中进行资产的配置,达到税收效果的最优,称为 asset location,配置的一般原则:**债券放入 tax deferred account,股票放入 taxable account**,因为债券有 coupon,且 coupon 通常大于 dividend,可以拿到较多利息,最后提取时才纳税,相当于从税务局获得无息融资进行投资;投资者大部分都是长期投资者,因此其没有 realized gain 之前是不用交税的,但 dividend 要交税

注意: 所有的可投资资产,一定是先配置 TEA 账户和 TDA 账户,剩余的部分才配置进 taxable account; 另外 TEA 与 TDA 的配置原则是 TEA 关注当前税率,TDA 关注未来税率,再者如果存在近期的流动性需要(near-term liquidity needs),则不考虑税收账户的配置问题,因为税收优惠账户里的钱可能短期内不能取出来

after-tax value of assets in a tax-deferred account: TDA 账户中税后的资金为: vat=vpt(1 - ti)

vat=the after-tax value of assets

v_{pt}=the pre-tax market value of assets

ti=the expected income tax rate upon distribution

注意: TDA 账户的钱先不交个税,即账户中的钱是税前的,只有要将钱取出来时,才全额交税

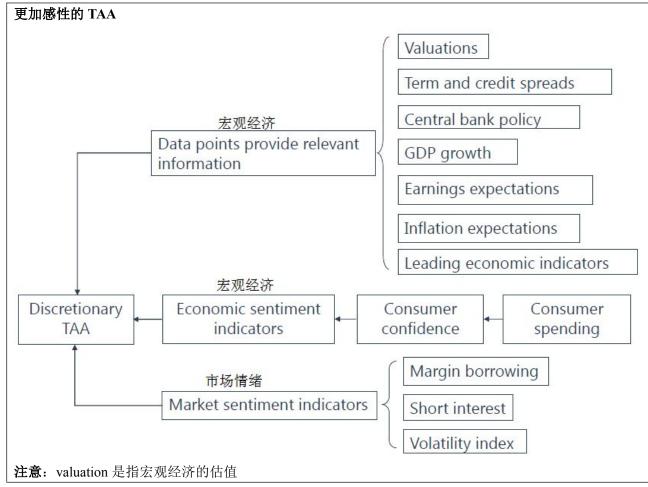
Revising the Strategic Asset Allocation: 战略性资产配置的修正: 应该每年(annually)更新 IPS,有可能目标(goals)发生变化,限制(constraints)发生变化,信念(beliefs)发生变化

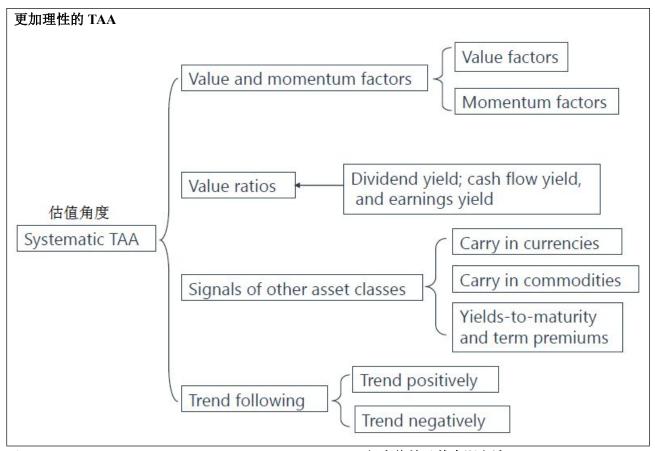
四. Short-Term Shifts in Asset Allocation: 资产配置的短期偏离

Tactical asset allocation (TAA) allows short-term deviations from SAA targets: 战术性资产配置(TAA)允许短期偏离战略性资产配置(SAA)的目标,为了获得 alpha 收益(Generating alpha)

- ◆ Three of the most common ways to evaluate TAA decisions: 常见的三种 TAA 的决策评估:
 - A comparison of the <u>Sharpe ratio</u> realized under the TAA relative to the Sharpe ratio that would have been realized under the SAA: 比较使用 TAA 的 sharpe ratio 与不使用 TAA 的 sharpe ratio
 - Evaluating the <u>information ratio</u> or the <u>t-statistic</u> of the average excess return of the TAA portfolio relative to the SAA portfolio: 评估使用 TAA 的 IR 或平均超额收益的 T 检验(超额收益与 TAA 的关系是否显著)与不使用 TAA 的差值
 - Plotting the realized return and risk of the TAA portfolio versus the realized return and risk of portfolios along the SAA's efficient frontier: 通过散点图比较 TAA 与 SAA 的收益和风险

TAA 的方法分为两类: Discretionary TAA: 由基金经理自由发挥的 TAA; Systematic TAA: 根据一定系统 机制使用 TAA





五.Behavioral biases and the methods of overcome them:行为偏差及其克服方法

- Loss-aversion bias: 损失厌恶偏差,同等金额的 loss 带来的痛苦,大于同等金额的 gain 带来的快乐, 修正: 高优先级目标使用低风险资产来配置(high-priority goals with low-risk assets)
- The illusion of control: 误以后自己会对结果产生影响,修正: 利用全球市场组合作为起点,开发资产配置的方法(mitigated by using the global market portfolio as the starting point in developing the asset allocation.)
- Mental accounting: 心理账户,不同途径获得的同样的金额会有不同的珍惜程度
- **Representative**: 代表性偏差,根据过去经验简单推断,**修正**: 客观的资产配置流程和强大的治理框架 (objective asset allocation process and a strong governance framework)
- Availability bias: 处理的信息都是容易想起来的,**修正**: 利用全球市场组合作为起点,开发资产配置的方法(using the global market portfolio as the starting point in developing the asset allocation)

◆ ★Goal-based 与 mental accounting 的区别:

Goal-based: 正确的作法,不同目标用不同的组合来达成,每一个目标都是用离散的 sub-portfolio 来达成,分析了不同目标的风险级别,每一个 sub-portfolio 都是有效前沿上的,因此其整体组合就是在有效前沿上的(Each goal is aligned with a discrete sub-portfolio, and the investor can specify the acceptable level of risk for each goal. Provided each of the sub-portfolios lies along the same efficient frontier, the sum of the sub-portfolios will also be efficient)

Mental accounting:错误的作法,不同的账户来达成自己的目标,决策存在主观性,每个 sub-portfolio 并不是都在有效前沿上

R19 Currency Management: An introduction: 货币管理导论

Base currency: 考察对象,例如 1.2X/Y,则 Y 为 base currency, X 为 pricing currency
Bid/Asked rules: 外汇市场是作市商市场,其中 bid price 为作市商的买价; ask price/offer price 为作市商的

Bid/ ask spread: 作市商买价和卖价之间的差价,其值越小,说明货币的流动性越好

Forward contracts: 远期合约,交易双方按约定价格在未来约定时间交割约定数量的商品,期初没有现金 流交换,也没能逐日盯市(mark-to-market value)制度,但双方也可以约定盯市制度

实例: Suppose that a market participant bought GBP10,000,000 for delivery against the AUD in six months at an "all-in" forward rate of 1.6100 AUD/GBP. Three months later, the market participant wants to close out this forward contract. To do that would require selling GBP10,000,000 three months forward using the AUD/GBP spot exchange rate and forward points in effect at that time. Assume the bid - offer for spot and forward points three months prior to the settlement date are as follows: (the three-month AUD Libor is 4.80%)

Maturity	Spot Rate or Forward Points
Spot rate(AUD/BGP)	1.6210 /1.6215
Three months	130 /140

To sell GBP (the base currency in the AUD/GBP quote) means calculating the bid side of the market. Hence, the appropriate all-in three-month forward rate to use is: 1.6210 + 130/10,000 = 1.6340

The AUD amounts will not net to zero because the forward rate has changed. The AUD cash flow at settlement date will be equal to: $(1.6340 - 1.6100) \times 10,000,000 = AUD240,000$

To calculate the mark-to-market value on the dealer's position, this cash flow must be discounted to the present.

present value=
$$\frac{\text{AUD240,000}}{1+0.048 \left\lceil \frac{90}{360} \right\rceil}$$
 = AUD237,154

原理: 0 时点参与者 6 个月后买 GBP \$10M, 价格为 1.6100, 3 个月后参与者想要结算掉这个远期合约, 原来是买GBP,要结算掉需要签一个反向合约,因此在3月时需要卖GBP,要卖GBP就需要使用bid price, 即 1.6210 和 130,因此卖价为 16340,另外 AUD/GBP 的形式考察对象就是 GBP,因此价格可以直接使 用,此时意味着在6个月以后,参与者可以以1.6100的价格买入GBP,以1.6340的价格卖出GBP,因 此会产生 gain, gain 是在 6 月产生,但当前时点是 3 月,因此需要将 gain 从 6 月折现到 3 月,另外 gain 是用 AUD 计价的,因此 AUD 是本币,所以折现时应该使用 AUD 的利率作为折现率

value of a forward contract (to the party buying the base currency) at maturity (time T): settlement

value of a forward currency contract prior to expiration (time t): Mark-to-market

$$V_T = (FP_T - FP)$$
(contract size)

$$V_T = (FP_T - FP) \text{(contract size)}$$

$$V_t = \frac{(FP_t - FP) \text{(contract size)}}{\left(1 + R\left(\frac{days}{360}\right)\right)}$$

FX swap: 远期合约的展期, 即远期合约结束后(到期结算/mark-to-market), 再签订新的远期合约(unlike foreign currency swap)

- Currency options (保留上涨空间,规避下行风险,需要支付期权费)
 - Call and put options/vanilla options: 普通的期权,例如: 持有人民币, 买入美元的 call, 相当于 对人民币的 put
 - Exotic options: 奇异期权

Size of FX options market: 外汇市场上的 FX option 的成交量要小于 spot market, 但其绝对规模还是较大 的, 因此其交易活跃, 流动性好

- Domestic currency/home currency: 本币
- Domestic asset: 以本币计价的国内资产
- Foreign currency: 外币
- Foreign assets: 以外币计价的国外资产
- Foreign-currency return(R_{FC}): 以外币计价的国外资产的收益,例如:美国人投资英国股票,股票上 涨 10%, 而以英镑计价的股票收益就称为 RFC

- Local currency return(R_{FX}): 因外币升值本身所带来的收益,例如:美国人投资英国股票,因为英镑上涨 3%,所带来的收益
- **Domestic-currency return (R**_{DC}): 以本币计价的收益,例如: 美国人投资英国股票,股票上涨,英镑也上涨,卖出股票后,将英镑换回美元的总收益,包含 **R**_{FC}和 **R**_{FX},公式: **R**_{DC}=(1+**R**_{FC})(1+**R**_{FX})-1

投资者投资了多个国外资产,其 R_{DC} 应加权平均, 其权重以<u>期初本币计价</u> (percentage of the aggregate domestic-currency value of the portfolio)

$$R_{DC} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \omega_{i} (1 + R_{FC,i}) (1 + R_{FX,i}) - 1$$

★投资海外资产,视同投资两项资产:海外资产和外币,因为其权重都为100%,因此组合方差公式:

$$\sigma^2(R_{_{DC}}) \approx \sigma^2(R_{_{FC}}) + \sigma^2(R_{_{FX}}) + 2\sigma(R_{_{FC}})\sigma(R_{_{FX}})\rho(R_{_{FC}},R_{_{FX}})$$

 ρ : represents the correlation between R_{FC} and R_{FX} \rightarrow w1=w2=100%

★注意: ρ取值(-1,1),当ρ=-1时,其方差公式为完全平方和公式,因此其标准差 σ_{P} = σ_{FC} - σ_{FX} ; 当ρ=1时,其方差公式为完全平方和公式,因此其标准差 σ_{P} = σ_{FC} + σ_{FX} ,换言之组合的标准差应该介于两者之间,因此<u>外币与国外资产的相关性越高,则组合的风险越大</u>,另外只要 $\rho \neq 1$ 就有分散化效果 ★推论: 假设 GBP 为外币,如果 GBP 升值,英国个股也升值,则说明个股企业是进口型公司,货币升值,进口原材料便宜,经营得到改善;反之如果 GBP 贬值,英国个股升值,则说明个股企业是出口型公司,因此投资国外进口型公司会导致组合风险上升;投资国外出口型公司导致组合风险下降

外币投资的是无风险资产,则组合标准差公式:

备注: R_{DC} =(1+ R_{FC})(1+ R_{FX})-1,要计算波动率,因为投资的无风险资产,因此(1+ R_{FC}) 是常数,只有(1+ R_{FX})部分会变化

$$\sigma(R_{_{DC}})\!=\!\sigma(R_{_{FX}})(1\!+\!R_{_{FC}})$$

- ◆ ★One camp of thought holds that in the long run currency effects cancel out to zero due to: 一派阵营认为,从长期来看,货币效应会抵消为零,主张:不需要对冲,原因:
 - exchange rates revert to <u>historical means or their fundamental values</u>: 汇率会恢复成历史均值或基本面价值,再者货币之间有自然对冲(neutral hedge),不可能所有货币都贬值
 - an efficient currency market is a zero-sum game: 外汇市场是一个零和游戏
 - management and transaction costs: 管理费用和交易费用
- ◆ ★Another camp of thought notes that <u>currency movements can have a dramatic impact on short-run</u> <u>returns and return volatility</u>: 另一派阵营认为货币流通会显著影响短期收益和收益的波动率,主张: 短期对冲,长期不对冲,原因: (结论: 汇率短期可能存在偏离,因此短期应该对冲)
 - there are <u>pricing inefficiencies</u> in currency markets: (短期)货币市场定价不有效
 - much of the flow in currency markets is related to <u>international trade or capital flows</u> in which FX trading is being done on a <u>need-to-do basis</u> and these currency trades are just a spin off of the other transactions: 货币市场流通相关于国际贸易或资本流通,外汇交易是必须的环节,并不是基于外汇的估值在交易(非外汇的价值驱动交易)
 - some market participants are either <u>not</u> in the market on a <u>purely profit-oriented basis</u> (e.g., central banks, government agencies) or are believed to be "uninformed traders": 一些市场参与者不是纯粹的以利益为导向,例如:央行,政府机构(调控)
- ◆ Currency management strategies:货币管理策略(关注对冲汇率风险)
 - **Passive hedging**:被动对冲,一种基于规则的方法(a rules-based approach),基于组合的基准,公司会设定一个汇率对冲的目标,本质为与基准一致
 - **Discretionary hedging**: 自由裁量对冲,允许适当少量偏离,目的是为了保护组合价值受汇率风险的影响(protect the portfolio from currency risk)
 - Active currency management: 主动的货币管理,允许适当较大偏离,目的是为了试图承担汇率风险获得收益(supposed to take currency risks and manage them for profit)
 - **Currency overlay:** 货币管理外包(不受限制),将汇率作为资产(foreign exchange as an asset class),通过单独聘请基金经理对其进行管理

备注: IPS 中应该明确规定自由裁量外汇管理的程度以及如何作为基准和交易策略的限制(例如: 使用杠杆)

- ◆ The currency risk management policy will usually address such issues as the: 货币风险管理政策通常 会解决以下问题:
 - target proportion of currency exposure to be passively hedged: 汇率敞口的目标比例使用被动对冲
 - latitude for active currency management around this target: 围绕目标进行活动货币管理的纬度
 - frequency of hedge rebalancing: 对冲再平衡的频率
 - currency hedge performance benchmark to be used: 货币对冲业绩的基准
 - hedging tools permitted (types of forward and option contracts, etc.): 允许使用的对冲工具

◆ ★Diversification Considerations:分散化的考虑

• 外币资产的收益率与外汇的收益率是负相关的(负相关不对冲)(negative correlation between the foreign-currency asset returns (R_{FC}) and the foreign-currency returns (R_{FX})),则有助于分散化本币的投资收益(domestic-currency return risk/ σ (R_{DC}))

实证经验: 汇率会导致投资外币债券比投资外币股票的风险大,因此投资外币债券更应该对冲汇率风险 **hedge ratios: 对冲的敞口/持有外币资产的敞口**,例如美国人持有英国股票 GBP100,对冲了 GBP110 的汇率风险,则 hedge ratio 为 1.1

对冲汇率风险成本的考虑:使用 forward 合约,期初没有现金流流出,但损失了汇率上涨所带来的收益(丧失机会成本);使用 option,期初要支付 option premium,通常使用 OTM(out of the money)/价外期权进行对冲,相对成本低。另外维护交易的管理基础设备也是一项重要成本(maintain an administrative infrastructure for trading)。

备注:对于汇率风险对冲的看法有不同观点,实务中通常使用 50% hedge ratio 进行对冲

- ◆ ★The strategic currency positioning of the portfolio should be biased toward a more-fully hedged currency management program the more: 组合的货币头寸战略应该偏向于一个更完全对冲的货币管理计划:
 - Short term the investment objectives of the portfolio: 短期投资倾向说对冲(短期波动大)
 - Risk averse the beneficial owners of the portfolio: 越风险厌恶, 越应该对冲
 - Immediate the income and/or liquidity needs of the portfolio: 短期有收益要求或流动性要求,越应该对冲
 - Fixed-income assets are held in a foreign-currency portfolio: 外币的债券更应该对冲
 - Cheaply a hedging program can be implemented: 对冲的成本低,更应该对冲
 - Volatile (risky) financial markets: 金融市场风险越大(剔除汇率因素,外币标的资产本身的风险), 越应该对冲
 - Skeptical the beneficial owners and/or management oversight committee are of the expected benefits of active currency management: 越质疑外汇的主动管理能带来收益,越应该对冲
- ◆ Tactical Currency Management: 战术性货币管理:
 - 预期外币短期内会升值(base currency's real exchange rate should appreciate),此时则不对冲汇率风险
 - 如果当前汇率已经偏离长期汇率均值(long-run equilibrium real exchange rate),则越应该对冲(说明马上要均值复归了)
 - ★真实世界中,外币真实或名义的利率上升(real or nominal interest rates),则其汇率也上升
 - ▶ 外币的期望通胀增长(expected foreign inflation),则其汇率下降

备注: 国外的经济好,则外国人买更多本国进口商品,导致本币升值; 本国的经济好,则本国人买更多国外进口商品,导致外币升值

Carry Trade: 如果 Uncovered interest rate parity 成立,则 carry trade 无意义,因为赚取的利差会因为高利率货币贬 值而亏损掉,另外 interest rate parity 成立的前提假设是各国的 risk-free rate 相同,但真实世界并非如此,历史数据显示外汇市场上 UIRP 的偏离至少在短、中期持续存在(the historical data show that there are persistent deviations from

$$\frac{F_{P/B} - S_{P/B}}{S_{P/B}} = \frac{(i_{P} - i_{B}) \left(\frac{t}{360}\right)}{1 + i_{B} \left(\frac{t}{360}\right)}$$

备注: 真实世界中高息货币应该升值

uncovered interest rate parity in FX markets, at least in the	(high-yield countries often see their
short to medium term)	currencies appreciate)

- ◆ Carry Trade: implementation: carry trade 的实施
 - Carry trade 对市场稳定(market stability)的要求比较高,如果全球市场出现压力(global financial markets are under stress),发达国家的货币可能更稳定,而发展中国家的货币更趋向贬值,因此需要频繁的检测波动性,通过 FX option 的 implied volatility 以及 foreign asset option 的 implied volatility,另外杠杆可能带来重大损失
- ◆ Equivalence of Carry Trade and trading the forward rate bias: carry trade 等价于远期利率有偏
 - Carry Trade: 借入低利率的 JPY, 换成高利率的 INR, 即现货市场卖出 JPY 买入 INR。
 - Forward rate bias: JPY 是低利率所以 JPY 的远期合约是溢价,INR 是高利率所以 INR 的远期合约是折价。所以在现货市场里卖出 JPY,买入 INR。
- ◆ Roll yield: 特指<u>外汇</u>交易中的 roll yield=(F_{P/B}—S_{P/B})/S_{P/B}, 当存在 positive roll yield 时(意味着存在 cushion),参与者更愿意通过 currency forward 去卖出/hedge
 - **positive roll yield:** 例如: 当前现货市场报价 6.6CNY/USD, 三个月的远期市场 6.7CNY/USD,则 表现为 positive roll yield,此时市场参与者更愿意通过远期合约卖出 USD

	Buy/invest	Sell/borrow	
Implementing the carry trade	High-yield currency	Low-yield currency	Earning a
Trading the forward rate bias	Forward discount currency	Forward premium currency	positive-roll
			yield

结论: carry trade 的本质就是在交易 forward rate bias,交易 forward rate bias 就是获取 positive roll yield

实例: The reporting currency of Hong Kong-based Kwun Tong Investment Advisors is HKD. The investment committee is examining whether it should implement a currency hedge for the firm's exposures to the GBP and ZAR (the firm has long exposures). The hedge would use forward contracts. The following data relevant to assessing the expected cost of the hedge and the expected move in the spot exchange rate has been developed by the firm's market strategist.

	Current spot rate	Six-month forward rate	Six-month forecast spot rate
HKD/GBP	12.4610	12.6550(市场观点)	12.3000 (基金经理观点)
HKD/ZAR	0.9610	0.9275 (市场观点)	0.9300(基金经理观点)

Calculated the roll yield respectively and recommend whether to hedge the firm's long exposure. Justify your recommendation

Correct Answer:

- Kwun Tong is long the GBP against the HKD, and HKD/GBP is selling at a forward premium of +1.6% compared with the current spot rate. All else equal, this is the expected roll yield. Moreover, the firm's market strategist expects the GBP to depreciate by 1.3% against the HKD. Both of these considerations argue for hedging this exposure.
- Kwun Tong is long the ZAR against the HKD, and HKD/ZAR is selling at a forward discount of -2.5% compared with the current spot rate. Implementing the hedge would require the firm to sell the base currency in the quote, the ZAR, at a price lower than the current rate. This would imply that, all else equal, the roll yield would go against the firm; that is, the expected cost of the hedge would be 2.5%. But the firm's strategist also forecasts that the ZAR will depreciate against the HKD by 2.2%. A risk-neutral investor would not hedge because the expected cost of the hedge is more than the expected depreciation of the ZAR.

解释:基金经理有自己的观点,因此要比较(E(S)-S)/S 与(F-S)/S 的关系

GBP: (12.3-12.4610)/12.4610 < (12.6550-12.4610)/12.4610, 因此应该通过 forward 对冲

ZAR: (0.93-0.961)/0.961 > (0.9275-0.9610)/0.9610,因此不应该通过 forward 对冲

总结:

● 以市场观点为基础(不考虑基金经理观点),如果存在 positive roll yield,则应该通过 currency

forward 对冲汇率风险;如果存在 negative roll yield,则不应该对冲汇率风险

- 以基金经理观点为基础,如果(E(S)-S)/S < (F-S)/S,则说明基金经理自身预测的远期汇率低于市场上的远期汇率,此时应该通过 currency forward 对冲汇率风险,其中(E(S)代表基金经理的观点
- ◆ Volatility Trading:波动率交易(关注外汇期权中的 implied volatility)

Implied volatility 低估,则应该 long straddle (long call, long put);反之 Implied volatility 高估,则应该 short straddle (short call, short put),本质是在交易波动率,straddle 由 at-the-money(ATM)的 call 和 put 组成 **Strangle**:由 out-of-the-money (OTM)的 call 和 put 组成的 straddle,因为是 OTM,因此 option premium 更便宜,构建的成本更低(优点),但执行价区间比较宽,更难获利(缺点)

delta-neutral position:构建一个 delta=0 的头寸,其特点是标的资产的价格对期权价格没有影响(只是在交易波动性),其中 delta 代表标的资产价格的变动,所带来其期权价格的变动

备注: Forward contracts 和 spot transaction 的 delta=1 (涨\$1,赚\$1)

Expectations		Actions
Appreciation		Reduce the hedge Or increase the long position in the currency
Relative currency Depreciation Increase the hedge Or decrease the long position in the or		Increase the hedge Or decrease the long position in the currency
Volatility Rising Long straddle (or strangle) Falling Short straddle (or strangle)		Long straddle (or strangle)
		Short straddle (or strangle)
Market conditions Stable A carry trade Crisis Discontinue the carry trade		A carry trade
		Discontinue the carry trade

◆ Adjust Hedge ratios: hedge ratio 的调整

Static hedge: unchanging hedge: hedge ratio 是不变的

Dynamic hedge: rebalancing the portfolio periodically, hedge ratio 根据投资组合周期性的再平衡, 更加精确, 但交易成本较高, 动态对冲通常是因为标的资产的价格变动或标的资产间的关系发生变化

- ◆ 调整 hedge ratio 的考虑(considerations):
 - cost-benefit trade-offs: 根据性价比进行调整
 - higher the degree of risk aversion: 越厌恶风险, 越应该使用"neutral" hedge ratio,即 1:1 完美 hedge 外汇资产的敞口,即不承担汇率风险
 - the greater the tolerance for active trading, the stronger the commitment to a particular market view: 越强的风险承受能力,越强的市场预期能力,则越不应该使用"neutral" hedge ratio
 - 对外汇变动的预期,也会影响 hedge ratio 的调整,例如: 预期未来外汇上涨,则 hedge ratio 应该调小,甚至不 hedge,预期未来外汇下跌,则 hedge ratio 应该调大

Hedge ratio 的确定原则: 例如持有铜现货,想要通过期货合约来对冲,用铜现货的收益率 y 和铜期货的收益率 x 做一元回归,得到方程 y=b0+b1x+ ϵ ,因此当 x 变动一个单位时,y 变动 b1%,如果持有 b1 份期货,那么现货也会变动 b1×1%=b1%,此时两者完全对冲,所以其 hedge ratio=b1,也称为 **MVHR=COV**xy/ σ \mathbf{x}^2 ,(minimum variance hedge ratio),即是一元回归的斜率

◆ Strategies to reduce hedging costs & modify risk: 降低对冲成本和调整风险的策略

Forward: 期初没有现金流的流出,但损失了资产价格上涨的收益,保护了资产价格下跌的风险 Option: 期初有现金流的流出(期权费),但保留了资产价格上涨的收益,保护了资产价格下跌的风险 原则: 在下行保护和获得上行空间之间进行平衡(less downside protection/less upside potential for the hedge) Over-/Under-Hedging using forward contracts: 使用远期合约进行超额对冲或不足额对冲,取决于基金经理的市场预期,如果认为外币升值,则应该减少对冲,甚至不对冲(appreciate→under-hedged); 如果认为外币贬值,则应该多对冲,甚至超额对冲(depreciate→over-hedging),如果市场预期做的好,相当于获得凸性(convexity),即升值不对冲,涨的多,贬值多对冲,跌的少

备注: 0-delta put 对应 delta=0(deep OTM); 25-delta put 对应 delta=-0.25 (OTM); 50-delta put 对应 delta=-0.5(ATM); 100-delta 对应 delta=-1(deep ITM)

Protective put using OTM options:使用价外期权对冲汇率风险,优点是价外期权成本低,缺点是特定价格区间无法保护

Risk reversal or collar: long put+short call, 优点:构建成本低(相比于 long put),缺点:下行减少了

保护,还放弃了部分的上行收益

Put spread: long 25-delta put+short 15-delta put, 优点:构建成本低,保留了上行收益的空间,提供了特 定价格区间的保护,缺点:放开了最下端的下行空间

Seagull spread: put spread+covered call, long 25-delta put+short 15-delta put+short call, 优点: 可能期初 有净现金流流入,缺点:即放弃了上行空间,又开放了下行空间

备注: 在市场有效的前提下,期初花费的钱越多,保护就越好,花的钱越少,保护就越差

Exotic options: 奇异期权

knock-in option: 敲入期权,达到 knock-in 价格,期权才生效,例如: S=\$11,put X=\$10,knock-in=\$9, 则表示股票价格必须下跌到超过\$9 才可以行权

knock-out option: 敲出期权,达到 knock-out 价格,期权就无效,例如: S=\$11, put X=\$10, knock-in=\$9.5, 则表示股票价格必须下跌到超过\$9.5 时期权就无效了

Knock-in	knock-up-in	价格上涨有效,无意义
Kilock-iii	knock-down-in	价格下跌有效,有意义(价格下跌才能行权)
Vacals aut	knock-up-out	价格上涨无效,有意义(最优选择,价格上涨时无需行权)
Knock-out	knock-down-out 价格下跌无效,无意义	
假设 ,投资者持有过度集中的资产		

备注: 加入 knock-in 和 knock-out 的期权比较便宜

Digital options/binary options/all-or-nothing options:约定一个触发价格,一定触发,则补偿一个固定金额, 例如: S=\$11, X=\$10, 如果股价变为\$9.9(触发), 则补偿\$20, 未触发, 则赔偿\$0, 很像赌博

- ◆ Hedging multiple currencies: 多种外汇情况下 hedge ratio 的确定原则: 例如美国人在英国和日本投资, 则用美元计价的收益率 y\$与 GBP 计价的收益率 X1 和 JPY 计价的收益率 X2, 进行多元回归, 得到方 程: y=b0+b1x1+b2x2+ ε, 其中 GBP 对冲 b1 份, JPY 对冲 b2 份, 另外也要考虑不同外币之间的相关 系数 (the correlation between the various foreign-currency risk exposures)
 - cross hedge/proxy hedge: 例如 A 货币和 B 货币是相关性比较高的货币,持有 A 货币敞口,但 A 货币交易不活跃,因此用 B 货币进行对冲,就称为 cross hedge,本质是标的资产与对冲工具不一致, 这种不一致也称为 Basis risk
 - Macro hedges: 使用包含了权重固定的一揽子货币的衍生品(derivatives based on fixed-weight baskets of currencies) 进行对冲, 也属于 cross hedge

注意: 使用回归方程来确定 hedge ratio 的方法存在缺点,即没有考虑外币资产和外币的相关系数 (correlations between RFC and RFX), 改进方法是在回归时,将RFC和RFX都作为自变量进行多元回归, 这样回归出的方程就考虑了两者之间的相关性

Basis risk:标的资产与对冲工具的变动并不完全相关(not perfectly correlated)的风险,例如:持有铜现 货,用铜期货对冲风险也属于存在 basis risk,cross hedge 和 macro hedge 都存在 basis risk

- ★Managing Emerging market currency: 管理新兴市场货币
 - Higher trading costs: 交易成本高
 - illiquidity under stressed market conditions: 市场有压力时流动性差,Bid-ask spread 比较大
 - 两个新兴市场货币之间通常通过主要货币作为中介货币进行交易(go through a major intermediary currency),通常以美元 USD 作为中介货币,使得 Bid-ask spread 比较大(broken into two legs)
 - 新兴市场更频繁出现极端事件(frequent extreme events),导致其收益率分布相对于正态分布, 呈现肥尾负偏(fatter tails/negative skew)
 - 新兴市场国家高利率导致远期折价比较大(higher interest rates, deeper the forward discount), 意味着 negative roll yield
 - 新兴市场的金融危机(financial crisis),容易出现蔓延("contagion" effects),在金融危机时, 新兴市场的相关性会上升(conditional correlation)
 - 新兴市场政府干预外汇市场,并采取资本管制(capital controls),限制资本自由流通(pegged), 可能导致极端事件(extreme events)
- Non-deliverable forwards (NDFs):不交割(本金)的外汇远期合约,本金不交易,只(使用主流货币

结算)**<u>机盈亏</u>**,因为只轧盈亏,因此其信用风险低(credit risk of an NDF is typically lower),金砖国家广泛应用

实例: A trader buys USD1,000,000 and enters into a long position in a three-month NDF for the BRL/USD at the forward rate of 2.0280. Suppose that three months later the BRL/USD spot rate is 2.0300 and the trader closes out the existing-NDF contract with an equal and offsetting spot transaction at this rate. Calculate the net cash flow to the long position.

Correct answer:

Can be calculated as $(2.0300-2.0280) \times 1,000,000 = BRL2,000$

(Long 方合约价格 2.028 买入,现货价格 2.03,因此 long 方赚钱)

But with an NDF, there is no delivery in the controlled currency (hence the name non-deliverable forward). Settlement must be in USD, so this BRL amount is converted to USD at the then-current spot rate of 2.0300. This leads to a USD cash inflow for the long position in the NDF of

BRL2,000/2.0300 BRL/USD = USD985.22 (以美元结算)

R20 Market indexes and Benchmarks: 市场指数和基准

- ◆ benchmark 具备如下特征: SAMURAI
 - ★Specified in advance: 事先告知
 - Appropriate: 恰当的
 - Measurable: 可计量的
 - Unambiguous: 明确的(不模棱两可)
 - ★Reflective of current investment opinions: 反应当前投资意见
 - Accountable (or owned): 负责任的,基金经理愿意让其业绩与基准做比较
 - ★Investable: 可投资的,即基准可以被 passive 投资

◆ Investment uses of benchmark: 基准的投资用途

- Reference points for segments of the sponsor's portfolio: 资助者组合的参照标准
- Communication of instructions to the manager: 与基金经理沟通的指示
- Identification and evaluation of the current portfolio's risk exposures: 识别和评估当前投资组合的风险敞口
- Interpretation of past performance and performance attribution:对过去绩效和绩效归因的解释
- Manager appraisal and selection:对经理的评价与选择
- Marketing of investment products: 投资产品营销
- Demonstration of compliance with regulations, laws, or standards: 遵守法规、法律或标准的示范

◆ Types of benchmarks: 基准的分类

- Absolute return benchmark: 绝对收益率的基准,事前告知,没有反应投资风格,不可投资
- Manager universe or manager peer group: 取一组基金经理业绩,以中位数作为基准,没有事前告知,没有反应投资风格,不可投资
- Broad market indexes: 广泛的市场指数,事前告知,没有反应投资风格,可投资
- Investment style:投资风格指数,事前告知,反应投资风格,可投资
- Factor-model-based benchmark:基于风险要素模型的基准,事前告知,反应投资风格,可投资
- Returns-based benchmarks(Sharpe style analysis): 基于收益率的基准,例如: 四个风险指数做回归
- Custom security-based benchmark: 基于客制化的基准,最好最贵

◆ Comparison of benchmarks: 基准的比较

- Asset-based benchmarks: 基于 AO 的资产管理,应该用资产作为基准,资产间的相关系数要低,说明分散化效果好,以国债作为无风险资产
- Liability-based benchmarks: 基于 ALM 的资产管理,应该用负债作为基准,使用与资产的相关系数要高的负债,才表示资产负债相匹配,以完全复制负债作为无风险资产

◆ ★Index construction trade offs:指数结构的平衡

● Completeness vs. Investability: 完整性和可投资性的平衡,越完整则更好的代表市场,但也会存在

- 一些流动性差的资产,流动性差的资产可投资性差
- Objective and transparent rules vs judgment: 客观透明和主观判断的平衡,例如: S&P 500 为主观指数,选取的是<u>最能代表美国经济</u>的 500 家公司的股票; 上证 50 为客观指数,选取的是上交所市值最大的 50 家公司的股票
- Reconstitution and rebalancing frequency vs. Turnover: 成份股增减和再平衡权重频率与换手率,越频繁的增减成份股和再平衡权重则换手率越高,跟踪成本越高,但跟踪越准确,越能代表市场
- ◆ Pros and cons of approaches to index weighting: 指数加权方法的优缺点
 - Capitalization-weighted indexes: 按市值加权,也称为 market value weighting, market cap weighting, cap weighting, 所有投资者只能持有 float-adjusted index

Advantages:

- ✓ 反应市场价值 (market value)
- ✓ 自由流通股调整的指数(float-adjusted index) 更能反应投资者的可投资资产
- ✓ 再平衡不频繁(requires less rebalancing), 只有现金股利才需要再平衡

★Disadvantages:

- ✓ 易受市场泡沫(market bubbles)的影响,并 不能代表有效投资
- ✓ 市值很大的公司,可能带来过度集中(overly concentrated)的情况,导致分散化不够
- ✓ 主动管理的基金经理可能偏离指数,导致指数 不是一个好的基准
- Price weighted indexes: 按价格加权(买相同数量)

Advantages:

- ✓ Easy to construct: 容易构建
- ✓ Long price histories are available: 历史上出现最早的指数

★Disadvantages:

- ✓ 成功公司的股价上升越容易拆股,拆股后股价下降(more likely to split and the reduced post split price),因为买相同数量,导致不断减持成功公司的股票(reduce the weighting of the more successful companies),降低了其对指数的影响
- ✓ 价格更好的反应了公司对经济的重要性 (Market cap better reflects a company's economic importance)
- ✓ 没有反应组合的构成(Does not reflect typical portfolio construction),基金经理通常不会按价格加权构建组合
- Equal-weighted indexes: 等权重(买相同金额)

Advantages:

✓ 大市值股票有更小的权重 (give smaller weights to large-cap securities)

★Disadvantages:

- ✓ small-issuer bias: 偏向小盘股,例如: 小盘股 增长多(优点),大盘股增长多,(缺点)
- ✓ 卖出表现好的股票,买入表现差的股票 (strong-performing issues must be sold and weak performers must be bought)
- ✓ 发行量小的股票,投资者可能无法获得流动性,指数难以构建 (not be able to find liquidity)

备注:按市值加权,且进行自由流通股调整的指数(capitalization-weighted, float-adjusted indexes)是最好的基准,其限制(limitation):没有反应基金经理的观点(not be compatible with a manager's investment approach);不够透明(less transparent),难以跟踪

SS 10: FIXED-INCOME PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT (1)

R21 Introduction to Fixed-income portfolio management: 固定收益投资组合管理导论

回顾:

Fixed-income 指数不容易复制,主要原因是成份太多,且很多债券的流动性比较差可能很难买到,因此通常复制指数的 risk factor 来近似的复制指数

交易债券本质是在交易债券的 risk factor,例如: r ↑ ,则 short bond,其本质是 short duration,因为在利率上升时,duration 越小越好,交易策略的核心是根据市场利率的变动,来决定增长或减少 duration

◆ 债券的风险:

- Interest rate risk: 利率风险, CFA 三级中利率风险特指收益率曲线平行移动的风险(CFA 三级中关注组合的 duration 和 convexity, 而非单个债券)
- Yield curve risk: 收益率曲线非平行移动的风险,使用 Key rate duration 衡量(缺点: 假设所有的债券都是零息债,改进方法: PVD),非平行移动分为: steepen,flatten(两者统称 twist),curvature(butterfly)
- Spread risk: (YTM=Yield treasury+Spread) 衡量因为 spread 变动导致债券价格变动的风险,用 spread duration 衡量,即 spread 变动 1%,债券的价格变动百分之几,另外 duration 与 spread duration 两者在数值上是相同的,区别是债券收益率变动的来源不同,另外所有的债券都有 duration,但国债却没有 spread duration
- Credit risk: 狭义的 credit risk 概念,特指 downgrade risk 和 default risk (无法量化)
- Liquidity risk: 流动性风险,关注某些因素会影响流动性(无法量化)
- Optionality risk:操作风险,指含权债的 option 的风险(无法量化)

注意: interest rate risk, yield curve risk, spread risk 称为 primary risk factors; credit risk, liquidity risk, optionality risk 称为 minar risk factors, 通常在复制指数时以复制 primary risk factors 为主

备注: 广义的 credit risk 分为: spread risk, downgrade risk (评级下降的风险), default risk

- ✓—. Roles of fixed-income in portfolios: 固定收益在组合中的角色
- ◆ Diversification benefit: 分散化的好处
- 1) 国际市场的债券与美国市场的投资级债券分散化效果好
 - **Correlation coefficient <1**, but difficult to find assets much lower than 1.0: 用债券进行分散化的效果是不好的,相关系数虽然小于 1,但是很难找到远远小于 1 的资产 (用其它类投资品分散化效果更好)
- p between US bond market's investment grade sub-sector=0.77~0.95 (highly correlated): 在美国的债券市场,投资级债券的相关系数在 0.77-0.95 之间
- ρ between international investment-grade bonds and US investment-grade bond=**0.54**: 海外的投资级债券和美国的投资级债券的相关系数在 0.54 左右(分散化效果更好一些)
- 2) 相关系数不是一成不变的(ρ is not constant), 当处于市场萧条时, 国债和股票的相关系数反向变动, 高收益债和股票的相关系数同向变动
 - Market stress period: 当处于市场萧条时期
 - ✓ decrease between government and equity: 政府债券和股票的相关系数降低
 - ✓ increase between high yield bond and equity: 高收益债券和股票的相关系数增加
- 3) 债券的波动率比股票更小(less volatile than equity),另外就债券本身来说,短期债券的波动率大于长期债券(收益率曲线,短期更陡峭,期限变化一点收益率变化比较大,长期则更为平坦)
 - ★near-term volatility>average volatility: 短期债券的波动率大于平均的债券波动率,也大于长期债券的波动率 (near term volatility>average volatility>long term volatility)

备注: 债券主要受利率和信用风险,风险因子较少,而股票受更多因素影响,因此债券的波动率更小

◆ Benefits of regular cash flows: 稳定的现金流

更适合 ALM 的资产管理方式,用以匹配未来的负债

Immunization(免疫策略)原理: ALM 的资产管理方式,匹配未来负债,其公式 $cost(1+r)^N=obligation$,因此只要锁定收益率 r,即可保证当前投资的资产可以确定的匹配未来的负债,而 r=total return/cost,其

中 total return=coupon+reinvestment+capital G/L, 进而 r=(coupon+reinvestment+capital G/L)/cost, 其中 coupon 和 cost 是确定的,因此只要将 reinvestment 和 capital G/L 确定下来即可,其中 reinvestment 与利率是同向变动,而 capital G/L 与利率是反向变动,因此两者与利率的变化方向相反,所以只要两者能够相互抵消,收益率 r 就可以确定下来。其中 capital G/L 反应为 price risk,本质为 interest risk,用 duration 衡量,而 reinvestment 反应为 reinvestment risk,用 investment horizon 衡量,两种风险反向变动,想要相应抵消,本质是两者的风险因子相应抵消,因此只要使得 investment horizon=duration 即可相互抵消

- **duration < investment horizon 时,price risk < reinvestment risk** (例如: 持有到期,兑付 par value, price risk=0)
- **duration > investment horizon 时,price risk > reinvestment risk** (例如: 在收到第一笔 coupon 之前 卖出债券,此时没有 coupon 再投资,reinvestment risk=0)

◆ Inflation hedging potential: 抗通胀 (R nominal= R real + Inflation rate)

备注: 正确的表达式(1+ R nominal)=(1+R real)(1+Inflation)

	Coupon	Principal
Fixed-coupon bonds	Unprotected	Unprotected
Floating-coupon bonds Protected		Unprotected
Inflation-linked bonds	Protected	Protected

★二. Fixed-income mandates: 固定收益的配置策略

◆ Liability-based mandates: 基于负债的配置策略 (也称为 Structured mandates 或 ALM: Asset/liability management 或 LDI: Liability-driven investments),目标: cover liability,分为两种方法: cash flow matching 和 duration matching

◆ duration matching: 匹配久期(复杂但成本低)

Classical immunization: 使得资产与负债的现值相等 PV_L=FV/(1+r)^N=PV_A; 锁定收益率 r=折现率; 使得 DA=horizon(免疫),另外投资期限就是负债的到期日,再者期间无现金流,因此负债相当于发行一个 zero coupon bond,而零息债的 duration=maturity,因此 D_A=horizon=obligation maturity=D_L

结论: PVL=PVA; DA=DL → Macaulay duration

备注: 符合 $PV_L=PV_A$ 且 $D_A=D_L$ 条件的组合称为 immunized portfolio,组合不受市场利率的波动影响,即组合的现值和回报率是锁定的,因此其终值也是锁定的

扩展: **PV**_L=**PV**_A; **D**_A=**D**_L组合在一起可以合并为一个条件: **DD**_A=**DD**_L(DD: dollar duration) **免疫策略的总结**:

- An ALM approach: 一种 ALM 方法
- To <u>minimize the variance in the realized rate of return</u> over a known time horizon: 在已知的投资期限内, 使得收益率的波动最小化
- <u>Reduce or eliminate the risk</u> associated with a change in market interest rate: 降低或消除市场利率波动 带来的风险(实务中风险可降低但很难消除)

免疫策略存在的风险:

- **Interest rate risk**: 衡量利率风险的指标有 duration 和 convexity, 免疫策略只是将 duration 进行匹配, 但由 convexity 而残存的利率风险并没有被匹配
- Yield curve risk: 匹配 duration 只能消除收益率曲线平行移动的风险(Parallel yield curve shifts),
 而非平行移动的风险无法消除
- Rebalancing risk: $D_L=D_A$ 并不是一成不变的,当市场利率变动时, $r \uparrow \to D_A \downarrow$ (利率上升,再投资 回报率上升,平均收款期下降); $r \downarrow \to D_A \uparrow$,另外随着时间的推移(time passes), D_A 会自然下降(收到 coupon,平均收款期变短)

key features Duration match (immunization)		Cash flow match
Yield curve assumption Parallel yield curve shifts		None
Rebalancing Frequent rebalancing required		No required but often desirable
Complexity High		Low

◆ cash flow matching:匹配现金流(简单且无风险残留,但成本高)

例如: Multiple liability 的情况每年有一笔负债,分别用 L1,L2,L3,L4,L5 表示,要匹配这些负债,首先不可选用零息债,因为零息债期限都小于 1 年,因此要使用付息债券来匹配这些负债,且要从最后一笔负债开始匹配,因为从前往后匹配会导致用于匹配后面几年负债的债券在前几年的 cash flow (coupon)被浪费,因此匹配形式如下:

- 5 year bond A: Par A+coupon A=L5
- 4 year bond B: Par B+coupon B=L4—coupon A(bond A 在第四年产生的 coupon 可匹配 L4)
- 3 year bond C: Par C+coupon C=L3—coupon A—coupon B
- 2 year bond D: Par D+coupon D=L2—coupon A—coupon B—coupon C

1 year bond E: Par E=L1—coupon A—coupon B—coupon C—coupon D(第一年的负债可用零息债匹配) cash flow matching 成本高的原因:负债在 6 月 25 日支付,但市场上并没有 6 月 25 日到期的国债,因此只能买一个日期比较接近的国债,比如说 6 月 30 日,意味着需要在 6 月 25 日提前卖出债券来偿付负债,因此需要承担 price risk。再者负债在 5 月 3 日支付,但市场上也买不到 5 月 3 日到期的国债,因此只能买一个 4 月 30 日到期的国债,意味着在 4 月 30 日就拿到了匹配负债的现金流,但负债是在 3 天后支付,因此浪费了这部分现金流的再投资收益(时间价格),承担 reinvestment risk

Single liability: 只有单笔负债,可使用 immunization 策略,存在一点风险残留,但基本可控,成本低 Multiple liability: 使用 immunization 策略风险会比较高,每笔负债都残留一些风险,风险就会高,通常使用 cash flow matching

◆ Contingent immunization: 当 present value of asset portfolio > present value of liability,就产生了 surplus,而这部分 surplus 并不会对免疫策略产生影响,因此可使用这部分 surplus 做主动投资 Cushion spread: 例如免疫策略锁定的收益率为 8%,而实际收益率为 9%,多出的 1%就称为 cushion

Cushion spread: 例如免疫策略锁定的收益率为 8%, 而实际收益率为 9%, 多出的 1%就称为 cushion spread, 因此 1%就可以做主动投资

备注: Classical immunization 是一个被动的投资策略

◆ Horizon matching: 属于 duration matching 和 cash flow matching 的结合, 短期负债用 cash flow matching, 长期负债用 duration matching

原因: 短期利率波动率更高,短期利率发生非平行移动的概率更高,因此短期负债不适合免疫策略 **结论**: Cash flow matching (short-term liability, <=4-5 years) + duration matching (long-term liability)

◆ Total return mandates: 基于总收益的配置策略(Achieve the highest <u>risk-adjusted</u> returns),目标: 在一定风险水平上获得最高收益,分为: pure indexing,enhanced indexing,active management

	Pure indexing/Full replication	Enhanced indexing	Active management
Objective	Match benchmark return and	Modest performance	Higher out performance (50bp
	risk as closely as possible	(20-30bp) of benchmark	or more) of benchmark and
	复制指数组合的收益率低于	while active risk is kept low	higher active risk levels
	指数(构建组合有交易成本)	(around 50bp or lower)	
Portfolio	Same as benchmark or only	Small deviations from	Significant deviations from
weights	slight mismatches	underlying benchmark	underlying benchmark
Risk	Risk factors are matched	Most primary risk factors	Deviations from benchmark
	exactly (匹配风险因子)	are closely matched(duration,	(duration)
		KRD, spread duration)	
Turnover	Similar to underlying	Slightly higher than	Considerably higher turnover
	benchmark	underlying benchmark	than the underlying benchmark

备注: 当利率上升时,putable bond 有价格保护应该做多;而 callable bond 也应该做多,因为只有当利率下降时,callable bond 才可能行权,当利率上升时,callable bond 不会行权,但其价格比 pure bond 便宜,因此也应该做多 callable bond 获得超额收益

√三. Bond market liquidity: 债券市场的流动性

- ◆ Liquidity among bond market: 债券市场中的流动性
 - 与股票相比,债券的流动性更差更不透明(less liquid & less transparent)
 - 新发行的债券比旧一些的债券流动性好(**On-the-run** liquidity > **off-the-run** liquidity),刚发行的

债券关注度高, 违约风险更低

● 流动性越低,债券价格越低,收益率越高(Liquidity decreases→yield increases),流动性与收益率反向变化

◆ ★Effect of liquidity on portfolio: 流动性对组合的影响

✓	More liquidity	Less liquidity	Reason	
	Sovereign government bond	Corporate and non-sovereign	Issuance size	
	(取决于信用风险)	government bond	Use as benchmark bond	
Issuers	(被动配置国债作为抵押		Acceptance as collateral in	
	物,因此交易量更大)		repo market	
			Well-recognized issuers	
Credit	High and dit quality	I avvam amadit avvalites	Eind a countaments dealer	
quality	High credit quality	Lower credit quality	Find a counterparty dealer	
Issue	Outstanding issues (卓面報)	Infraquent igguers	Eamiliarity	
frequency	Outstanding issues(频繁)	Infrequent issuers	Familiarity	
			Include or excluded in/from	
Issue size	Issue size Larger issues	Smaller issues	bond index with minimum	
			issue size requirements	
Matuwity	Nagrar tarm bands	Langar maturities hands	Intent to hold them until	
Maturity	Nearer-term bonds	Longer maturities bonds	maturity	

- ◆ Effect of liquidity on fixed-income portfolio management: 流动性对固定收益证券投资组合管理的影响
 - Pricing: 定价
 - ✓ 债券市场的流动性越高,增加了透明度(increase transparency),定价越准确
 - ✓ Matrix pricing: 矩阵式估值
 - Portfolio construction: 组合的构建
 - ✓ Trade-off between yield and liquidity: 平衡收益率和流动性
 - ✓ 2 types of investors
 - ❖ Buy-and-hold: prefer less liquid bonds for higher yields: 牺牲流动性获得更高的收益
 - ❖ Investors that **emphasize liquidity**, give up some yield: 放弃一些收益获得更高流动性

备注:债券市场是作市商市场(Dealer market),流动性强弱取决于作市商

Lower bid-ask spread (Higher liquidity)	Higher bid-ask spread(Lower liquidity)
Government bonds	Corporate bonds, structured financial instruments
Conventional bonds/plain vanilla bonds	Corporate bond with embedded options(含权债稀少)
Bonds of large, high-credit-quality corporations	Smaller, less creditworthy companies

✓四. Model for fixed-income returns: 固定收益收益率的模型

◆ Decomposing expected return: 分解期望收益率(适用于单一债券和债券组合)

Expected credit losses=Probability(default) × expected loss severity(loss given default)

$E(R) \approx yield income + rolldown return$

- +E(change in price based on investor's view yields and yield spreads)利率变化导致债券价格的变动
- -E(credit losses) 违约造成的损失
- +E(currency gains or losses) 汇兑损益

Yield income=annual coupon payment/current bond price=(coupon + coupon investment)/current bond price
Annual coupon payment=coupon + reinvestment income; yield income+rolldown return=roll yield
capital G/L=rolldown return + E(change in price based on investor's view yields and yield spreads)
rolldown return=(bond price END—bond price BGN)/bond price BGN,在收益率曲线不变的情况下(zero interest rate volatility),债券价格的变动(折价债和溢价债都会回归面值)

泰勒恒等式

 $E(\Delta price based on investor's view of yields and yield spreads)$

=-modified duration $\times \Delta yield + \frac{1}{2} \times convexity \times (\Delta yield)^2$

五. Leverage: 配置债券组合时,如何使用杠杆

◆ Using leverage: 杠杆的使用

$$R_p = \frac{Portfolio\ return}{Portfolio\ equity} = \frac{(V_E + V_B)r_I - V_Br_B}{V_E} = \frac{V_Er_I + V_Br_I - V_Br_B}{V_E} = r_I + \frac{V_B}{V_E}(r_I - r_B)$$

V_E=value of portfolio equity: 自有资金的金额

V_B=borrowed funds: 借款的金额

 r_B =borrowing rate (cost of borrowing): 借款成本 r_I =return on the invested funds (investment return): 总资金收益率

R_P=return on the levered portfolio: 自有资金的收益率

结论:

If rI > rB, leverage increase the portfolio's return If rI < rB, leverage decrease the portfolio's return

◆ Methods for leveraging portfolios: 使用杠杆配置组合的方法(五种加杠杆的方式)

◆ Futures contracts: 特指债券期货,期货合约可以使用杠杆

注意: 衡量一个组合是否是 fixed-income 组合时,最重要的标准是看其敞口是否存在 duration, convexity, KRD 等,即必须具有 fixed-income 的特征

公式: Leverage futures=(notional value-margin)/margin

◆ Swap agreement: 通过 swap 调整组合 duration,期初不需支付任何现金流,杠杆高

Fixed yets navey	pay fixed, receive floating	long a floating-rate bond + short a fixed-rate bond
Fixed-rate payer	i ↑ → value ↑	Duration swap(<0)=D floating—D fixed
Fixed note necession	pay floating, receive fixed	long a fixed-rate bond + short a floating-rate bond
Fixed-rate receiver	i ↓ →value ↑	Duration swap(>0)=D fixed—D floating

备注: Floating bond 的 duration 在完美状态下=0,因为票面利率是浮动的,利率不对价格产生影响。但现实中,票面利率并不是实时变动的,而是根据 reset period 调整。例如:一个 floating bond 每半年付息一次,因此在第一个半年期时 duration=0.5(在 reset period 内就是一个固定利率债券),而在 reset day,duration=0,在下半年时 duration=0.5,在下一个 reset day,duration=0,所以其 duration 在 0-0.5 之间变化,假设变动是均匀的,那么其平均的 duration=0.25。结论: **floating bond duration=reset period/2**

◆ Structured financial instruments (structured products): 结构化金融产品

Inverse floating-rate note (inverse floater): 逆向浮动利率债券,其 Coupon=Coupon—Leverage×R, 其本质是 short interest rate (R 代表市场利率)

核心思想: 交易债券的本质是交易债券相关的风险指标,而非债券本身

◆ Repurchase agreements (repos): 回购协议(本质为用债券抵押贷款,借款=杠杆)

例如: A 用价格\$100 的债券抵押给 B,B 借给 A 现金\$98,其中差的\$2,称为 repo margin,相当于 A 放在 B 这里的保证金,还钱时 B 将\$100 的债券还给 A,而 A 则将借款还本付息共计\$98.5 给回 B,其中 0.5 的利率就称为 repo rate,即 A 向 B 抵押借款的利息

Repo rate: 借款人向贷款人支付的借款利息

Repo margin: 借款人向贷款人支付的保证金(抵押品与抵押价值的差额)

◆ Securities lending: 卖空交易

做空方在做空期间共有 3 笔费用: lender 的 interest; broker 的 commission; lender 的债券的 coupon,但 这三笔费用的总和小于直接买 bond,因此产生杠杆作用

repurchase agreements 和 securities lending 的区别: 卖空交易的时间期限是不固定的,lender 可以在任何时间 call 回自己的债券(<u>Lender may recall the securities at any time</u>, <u>forcing</u> the borrower to deliver the bonds by buying them back or borrowing from another lender); 回购的期限是通过协商确定下来的

六. Fixed-income portfolio taxation: 固定收益组合的税

- ◆ Principles of taxation: 税收的主要原则
 - Tax is payable only on capital gains and interest income that have <u>actually been received</u>: 只有实际收到的资本利得和利息才需要交税,因此 <u>accrued interest</u> 是不交税的,因为还没到付息日,这笔利息并没有实际发生(zero-coupon bond 每年征收利息税,但并不实际支付,而是摊销了)
 - Tax capital gain < Tax interest income/coupon: 资本利得税的税率<利息税的税率(利息可持续,每年都有,资本利得税只交一次)
 - Tax short-term capital gain > Tax long-term capital gain: 短期资本利得税>长期资本利得税 (短期回报率高,税率高)

Capital loss 不能用于抵减 coupon

Capital loss 只能用于抵减 capital gain

Capital loss: 当年的 loss 能抵税部分叫做 carried forward

R22 Liability-Driven and Index-Based Strategies: 负债驱动和基于指数的策略

一. Liability-driven investing: 负债驱动的投资(LDI)

Asset-liability management: 目标是 cover liability; 以 liability 作为 benchmark

Types of liability	Type I liability	Type II liability	Type III liability	Type IV liability
Cash outlay amount	Known	Known	Unknown	Unknown
Timing	Known	Unknown	Known	Unknown
	Fixed income bond	Callable bond	Floating rate note	Property and
	having no embedded	Putable bond	Structure notes	Casualty insurance
Example	options	Term life insurance	have principal	company
			inflation indexed	DB plan
			bonds	

Type I liability 的优点: Yield duration statistics can be used to measure the interest rate sensitivity of the liability: 收益率久期的统计可以用来衡量负债对于利率敏感性

- 二. Strategies for managing single and multiple liabilities 管理单负债和多负债的策略
- ◆ Managing single liability (LDI) → ALM 强调资产和负债的相关性,LDI 强调负债本身

Immunization: The process of structuring and managing a fixed-income bond portfolio to minimize the variance in the realized rate of return over a known time horizon: 构建和管理固定收益债券组合的过程,以最小化在已知的时间期限内已实现收益率的方差(免疫策略无法消除风险因素,会存在一定的残留)

- Interest rate risk immunization: 通过 zero-coupon bond 去覆盖负债,优点是期间无现金流无再投资风险(No cash flow reinvestment risk),期末兑付本金无价格风险(No price risk),但现实世界中没有期限超过 1 年的零息债,因此现实中并不适用
- Interest rate immunization (classical immunization): 使得衡量 price risk 的 duration 和衡量 reinvestment risk 的 horizon 相互抵消,即 Macaulay duration=investment horizon

Immunizing with coupon bearing bonds needs to continuously match the portfolio Macaulay duration with the Macaulay duration of the zero-coupon bond over time: 免疫策略就是持续不断的平衡付息债组合的 Macaulay duration 和负债的 Macaulay duration(此处的 zero-coupon bond 特指负债)

 \mathbf{D}_{A} = \mathbf{D}_{L} 的逻辑: 资产的久期(\mathbf{D}_{A})等于期投资期限(horizon),投资期限刚好等于负债的到期时间(liability maturity),因此可将 single liability 看成是一个 zero-coupon bond,而零息债的久期就等于其投资期限(\mathbf{D}_{L} =liability maturity),进而推出 \mathbf{D}_{A} =horizon=liability maturity= \mathbf{D}_{L}

The Macaulay duration of zero-coupon bond always matches the investment horizon: 零息债的麦考雷久期与投资期限相等

The bond portfolio's initial market value has to match or exceed the present value of the zero-coupon bond: 债券组合的初始市场价格要等于或大于负债的现值(PV_A=PV_L)

◆ Immunization risk: 免疫策略的风险

- interest rate risk: 因为只匹配了 duration 没有匹配 convexity 所导致残存的部分利率风险
- Yield curve risk: 收益率曲线非平行移动所带来的风险,收益率曲线平行移动(parallel shift)是免疫策略的充分但非必要条件,当收益率曲线出现非平行移动时匹配 KRD 即可,但匹配 KRD 在实务中很难做到,这种因为收益率曲线非平行移动导致免疫策略失效的风险也称为 Structural risk(The risk arise because yield curve twists and non-parallel shifts)

Structural risk is reduced by minimizing the dispersion (convexity) of the bond positions: 最小化债券头寸的**离散程度(或凸性)**来降低结构化风险,即现金流离散程度越小,非平行移动的风险就越小,因此构建 bullet portfolio 比 barbell portfolio 的结构化风险小

最小化现金流的离散程度与凸性效果相同的逻辑: Convexity= $(D^2+D+\sigma^2)/(1+y)^2$,在免疫策略中 duration 是被锁定的,因此只剩方差影响凸性,而方差就是衡量离散程度的指标,在 duration 不变的情况下, dispersion 和 convexity 是同向变动的

● **Rebalancing risk:** 再平衡风险,必须定期重新平衡投资期限和目标久期(The portfolio must be regularly rebalanced over the horizon to maintain the target duration)

The portfolio's Macaulay duration changes as time passes and yields change: 组合的麦考雷久期随时间推移和收益率变化而变化

A trade-off between incurring transaction costs from rebalancing and allowing some duration gap: 要权 衡再平衡的成本和频率(允许一定的 duration gap),再平衡频率越高,效果越好,但成本也越高

- ◆ The characteristics of a bond portfolio structured to immunize a single liability: 构建单负债债券组合 免疫策略的特征:
 - Has an initial market value that equals or exceeds the present value of the liability: 资产的初始市场价格要等于或超过负债的现值(**PV**_A≥**PV**_L)
 - Has a portfolio Macaulay duration that matches the liability's due date: 组合的麦考雷久期要匹配负债的到期日(**D**_A=**D**_L)
 - Minimizes the portfolio convexity statistic: 最小化组合的凸性(凸性越小,残留的利率风险越小; Structural risk 越小)
- **♦** Managing multiple liabilities (LDI)

Duration matching: 将所有的 liabilities 作为一个整体,计算其加权的 PV 和 duration 再进行匹配 **Basis point value (BPV):** 基点价值,原理与 dollar duration 相同,但变动单位为 1bp,因此 BPV=DD/100 **备注:** cash flow yield=YTM

Rebalancing: 理论上,基金经理应该当 $\mathbf{D}_{\mathbf{A}} \neq \mathbf{D}_{\mathbf{L}}$ 时,就需要再平衡(make a rebalance when needed),但现实中,只有偏差足够大(mismatch is large enough),使交易成本合理化时才进行再平衡

- ◆ Method to rebalance: 再平衡的方法
 - Sell or buy the bonds: 卖出或买入债券
 - Use interest rate derivatives: 使用利率衍生品(futures, swap)

Cash flow matching: 从最后的负债向最早的负债进行匹配(主要考计算,内容与 single liability 相同)

- ◆ Why company do not buy back and retire its liabilities?: 公司不提前赎回负债的原因?
 - The buyback strategy would be difficult and costly: 赎回很困难且成本比较高(溢价)
 - Most corporate bonds are rather <u>illiquid</u>: 多数企业债的流动性比较差
 - The corporate has motivation to <u>improve the company's credit rating</u> by cash flow matching: 通过现金流匹配去覆盖负债可以提高公司的信用级别

A concern for cash flow matching strategy is the cash-in-advance constraint: 现金流匹配策略的一个担忧是存在预留现金的限制(例如: 重要的负债在 6 月 15 日到期,但市场上并没有这个时间到期的债券,因此只能买 5 月 31 日到期的债券,导致现金流提前预留,牺牲了一定的资金成本)

Contingent immunization: 以 immunization 策略为基础,当 PV_A>PV_L时,多余的 surplus 可以进行 active investment,这种混合策略称为 Contingent immunization

注意: 只有当 surplus 足够大时(significant surplus),才会考虑这种混合的主动+被动策略(hybrid passive-active strategy),另外当主动投资效果不佳时,可以只保持被动策略保证可以覆盖负债即可

Horizon matching: 属于 duration matching 和 cash flow matching 的结合, 短期负债用 cash flow matching, 长期负债用 duration matching

◆ Derivatives overlay: 如何用衍生品去调整债券组合的 duration

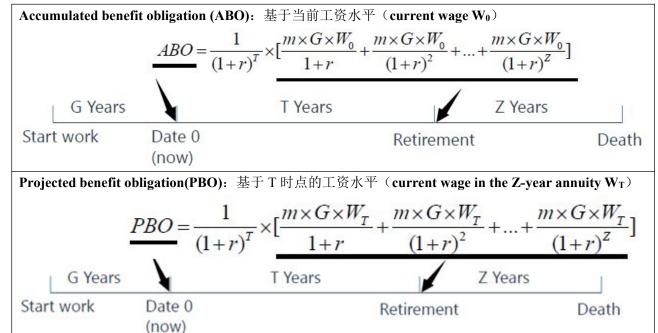
Reasons why asset managers might elect to hold a portfolio of short-term bonds rather than long-term securities: 基金经理更喜欢持有短期债券而不是长期债券的原因(更喜欢使用衍生品而非债券本身的原因)

- Greater <u>liquidity</u>: 流动性更好
- Perception of finer price in the short-term market: 短期市场定价更加准确
- The entity may face <u>liquidity constraints</u> and needs to hold short-term bonds to meet the requirements: 面对流动性限制需要持有短期债券去匹配客户的要求

$N_f = \frac{\text{liability portfolio BPV-Asset portfolio BPV}}{\text{futures BPV}}$

原理:负债的 BPV 减去资产的 BPV,即为总共需要调整的 BPV,再除以每份期货可以调整的 BPV即可得出调整所需的期货份数(份数需四舍五入)

- ◆ LDI---example of DB plan: LDI 管理方式下关于 DB plan 的讨论
- ◆ DP plan 的特点:
 - A good example of type IV liabilities: 第四类的负债
 - Both amounts and dates are uncertain: 兑付的金额和时间都是不确定的
- ◆ Basic assumptions: DB plan 的基本假设
 - This employee has worked for **G** years: 雇员已经工作了 **G** 年
 - The employee is expected to work for another **T** years: 雇员将来还要工作 **T** 年
 - The employee will retire and live for **Z years**: 雇员退休后可以活 **Z** 年
 - 其它条件:雇员退休时的工资水平



备注: 在其它条件不变的情况下,PBO 与 ABO 的关系: **PBO=ABO(1+w)**^T,其中 w 代表工资增长率 (PBO always larger than the ABO by the factor of (1+w)^T)

- ◆ Longevity risk: 长寿风险
 - The risk that employees live longer in their retirement years than assumed in the model: 雇员的实际寿命比模型假设的要长
 - The higher value of Z increases both the ABO and PBO measures of liability: ABO 和 PBO 的负债会 因为 Z year 增长而变多
- ◆ Assuming w is less than r: 假设工资增长率小于折现率(正常情况:工资增长率=通胀率),折现率即 为公司要求的回报率
- ◆ 在计算公司 DB plan 时应该选择 ABO 还是 PBO: (PBO 值更大,更为谨慎)

- If the corporation want to <u>convert the retirement plan from DB to DC</u>, the ABO measure matters more than PBO: 如果公司想把 DB 转换成 DC,则 ABO 是更好的选择
- If the sponsor sees itself as an ongoing independent institution that preserves the pension plan's current design, PBO is more appropriate measure for pension plan liabilities: 如果资助人想要保留 DB,则 PBO 是更好的选择
- ◆ Assigning a duration for equity and alternative investment: 指定股票和其它类投资的久期 用于覆盖 DB plan 的资产多数是债券,但也会投资少量股票和其它类投资,而这些资产的价格与利率也有一定关系,只是没有债券明显,通常都是假设它们的久期为 0(equity duration and alternative duration are assumed to be 0),但实际上并不是这样,因此会残留一定的风险
- ◆ Higher or lower interest can arise from: 更高或更低的利率产生于:
 - Change in expected inflation: 预期通胀的改变
 - Change in monetary policy: 货币政策的改变
 - Change in macroeconomic conditions: 宏观经济状况的改变
- ◆ 计算需要多少 interest rate swap 的 NP 去调整组合的 duration (close the duration gap to zero): NP=(liability BPV—asset BPV)/(Swap BPV/100), 注意: Swap 的最小本金单位是\$100, 因此要除以 100
- ◆ Hedging ratio: 特指免疫策略可以对冲的负债的比率(与 CFA 二级的 hedging ratio 不同)
 - A hedge ratio of 0% indicates no hedging at all: 无免疫(没有配置资产的情况)
 - A hedge ratio of 100% means fully immunized: 完全免疫(残留风险,很难现实)
 - In practice, the partial hedge ratios are common: 现实中,最常见的是部分对冲
- ◆ The plan sponsor may allow the manager some flexibility in selecting the hedge ratio: DB plan 的资助人可能允许允许基金经理在选择 hedging ratio 时有一些灵活性(结论如下)
 - When interest rate are lower, plan manager would have higher hedging ratio: 当利率比较低时,基金经理会配置比较高的 hedging ratio (未来利率上涨概率大,资产价格下降的风险比较大)
 - When interest rate are higher, plan manager would have lower hedging ratio: 当利率比较高时,基金经理会配置比较低的 hedging ratio (未来利率下降概率大,资产价格会上升,非风险)
 - The performance of the strategic hedging decisions can be measured against a strategy of maintaining a preset hedging ratio: 对冲策略的表现可以根据预告的 hedging ratio 的保持情况来衡量
- ◆ Option-based derivatives overlay strategy: 基于期权的衍生品策略 (利用 Swaption 进行调整 duration)
 - Receive swaption: receive fixed, Duration>0, duration ↑
 - Payer swaption: pay fixed, Duration<0, duration ↓
- ◆ Risks in LDI: 负债驱动投资的风险
 - Model risk: 模型风险,模型假设错误,例如: 假设 alternative 与 equity 的 duration=0
 - Interest rate risk: 利率风险,市场利率变动导致组合价值变动的风险(组合大部分资产为债券)
 - Spread risk: 利差风险,利差变动导致市场利率变动所带来的风险
 - Counterparty credit risk:对手方信用风险
 - Collateral exhaustion risk: 抵押品耗尽风险,例如:保证金被耗尽的风险(强行平仓)
 - Liquidity risk: 流动性风险

三. Matching a fixed-income portfolio to an index: 固定收益组合与指数的匹配

- ◆ Basic terminologies: 基本术语
 - Tracking risk: 跟踪误差,组合真实的收益率与指数的差,衡量组合与指数收益率的相似度
 - Pure indexing/Full replication approach: 百分百复制指数,复制指数的风险因子
 - ★Enhanced indexing strategy: 加强指数策略,在复制指数的基础之上,允许小幅主动管理,复制指数时保证主要的风险因子匹配即可(matches primary risk factors reflected in the index)
 - Active management: (完全) 主动管理
 - Tracking error: tracking risk 的标准差
- ◆ 固定收益市场的一些特征,使得其很难被跟踪,原因(完全复制指数非常困难):

- Size and breadth of the bond market: 固定收益市场的规模和宽度过大
- Wide array of fixed income security characteristics: 固定收益债券的特征会相差较大
- Unique issuance and trading pattern of bonds: 债券的发行和交易存在独特性
- Risk factors for primary indexing: 主要的指数风险因子
 - Portfolio modified adjusted duration: 衡量收益率变动 1%, 债券价格变动?%
 - Effective duration: 衡量收益率变动 1%,债券价格实际变动了?%
 - Key rate duration: 衡量收益率曲线非平行移动的风险,可用 KRD 和 PVD 量化

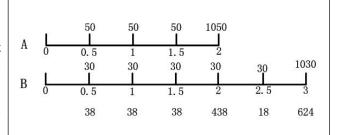
回顾 KRD: 假设组合中有两个债券 A 和 B, A 债券, 2-year, 价值\$400; B 债券, 3-year, 价格\$600, 在 KRD 概念中假设债券都是零息债,因此 A 债券的 duration=2,B 债券的 duration=3,当 2-year YTM 上升 1%时, A 债券损失的金额为: —400×1%×2=—8, 损失比例为 0.8%, 其 KRD 为 0.8; 当 3-year YTM 上升 1%时, B 债券损失的金额为: -600×1%×3=-18, 损失比例为 1.8%, 其 KRD 为 1.8; 另外 KRDA=2 ×40%, 即 A 债券 KRD_A=duration×组合中的权重,即 KRD_A=D_A×W_A,债券 B 同理,其 KRD_B=D_B× W_B, 因此组合的 duration D_P=D_A×W_A+D_B×W_B=KRD_A+KRD_B

KRD 的缺点:假设所有的债券都是零息债,但现实中绝大部分的债券都是付息债,在美国市场只有投 资期限在1年期以内的零息债

- Sector and quality spread duration contribution:数值上与 duration 相同,收益率变动的来源由 spread 变动引起(国债没有 spread duration)
- Present value of distribution of cash flows methodology: 简称 PVD 是对 KRD 的补充,是更好的 衡量收益率曲线非平行移动的指标 (不需要任何假设)

组合中有两个债券 A 和 B, 其中 A: 2-year, 10%, semiannual, par=\$1000, weight=40%; B: 3-year, 6%, semiannual, par=\$1000, weight=60%, 将整体 组合拆分成6笔现金流,第一笔由A债券的\$50和 B债券的\$30组成,再乘以各自在组合中的权重, 其它的现金流以此类推,将每笔现金流作为一个零 息债,优点:真实的零息债,而非假设的零息债

PVD 计算原理: 各债券每期现金流加权求和即为组 合的每期现金流,将这些现金流折现到0时刻,并 计算其总和即为 total PV, 因此这些现金流在组合 中的权重即为 W_N=PV(N)/total PV, 进而组合久期 $D_P = W0.5 \times D0.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W2 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W2 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W2 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W2 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W2 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W2 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1 + W1.5 \times D1.5 + W1 \times D1.$ $D2+W2.5\times D2.5+W3\times D3$



D 0.5: duration=0.5, par=\$38, W 0.5=PV(38)/total PV D 1: duration=1, par=\$38, W 1=PV(38)/total PV D 1.5: duration=1.5, par=\$38, W 1.5=PV(38)/total PV D 2: duration=2, par=\$438, W 2=PV(438)/total PV D 2.5: duration=2.5, par=\$18, W 2.5=PV(18)/total PV D 3: duration=3, par=\$624, W 3=PV(624)/total PV

- Percent in sector and quality: 版块和质量的百分比,主要衡量 credit risk, credit risk 很难量化, 因此可以通过匹配板块和信用评级来匹配风险因子(次要风险,非强制匹配,可通过调整获得超额收 益),例如:预期经济衰退,应该多配置评级高的债券,少配置评级低的债券,获得超额收益
- Sector/ coupon/ maturity cell weights: 对应 option risk, 组合中的含权债是可以不匹配指数, 并以 此获得超额收益,例如: 预期利率上涨,此时应该多配置 callable bond 和 putable bond,获得超额收益
- **Issuer exposure**:对应 liquidity risk,例如:经济向好,此时所有的债券流动性都会好,违约概率 都低,因此少配国债多配置企业债可获得超额收益(企业债更便宜,节约成本)
- ▶ Alternative methods for passive investment: 以复制指数方式进行被动投资,这种方法与有效市场假 说相一致 (The approach is consistent with the efficient market hypothesis),换言之,在完全有效市场中, 被动投资是最好的(无法获得超额收益,但被动投资成本最低)

最好的分散化

Advantages: Best means of diversification: Disadvantage: Neither feasible nor cost-effective for investors to pursue full replication:不现实,且交易成本比较高

- Enhanced indexing strategy: 增强指数策略
 - ★stratified sampling: 分层抽样, 把债券分成几个不同的层次(九宫格), 横轴为债券分类(treasury, government, corporate),纵轴为期限(short-term, mid-term, long-term),分层抽样的原理:分层即

为组合的每类债券的权重与指数保持一致,抽样即为每类债券中选择最被低估的债券

- Lower cost enhancement: 在复制指数的基础上,重新投资成本更低的债券(成本低收益率高)
- Issue selection enhancement: 在复制指数的基础上,通过模型晒筛选重新投资被低估的债券
- Yield curve enhancement: 在复制指数的基础上,通过收益率曲线形状的变化来获得超额收益

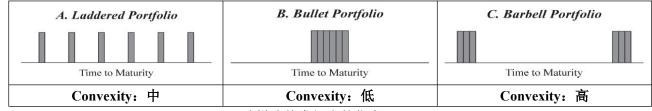
当 yield curve steepens 时,长期收益率上升,长期债券价格下降,短期收益率下降,短期债券价格上升,但此时不能通过 short long-term bond 和 long short-term bond 来获得超额收益,因为这会改变组合的 duration,使得组合的整体 duration 大幅下降,从而与指数不匹配,使得策略变为一个主动管理的策略 在保持组合 duration 并获得超额收益的原理: barbell 组合与 bullet 组合的 duration 应该接近,但当 yield curve steepens 时,barbell 的 short-term bond 价格上升,long-term bond 价格下降,但长期债券的 duration 更大,因此整个组合会产生 loss,而 bullet 组合都是由 mid-term bond 组成,当 yield curve steepens 时,中期收益率曲线变化不大,因此 bullet 组合价值不变,所以正确的交易策略为 long bullet+short barbell

- Sector/ quality enhancements: 在复制指数的基础上,通过选择不同的板块和信用质量的债券获得超额收益
- Call exposure enhancement: 在复制指数的基础上,根据时机选择不同的含权债获得超额收益
- ◆ Total return swap (TRS): 由 total return payer 和 total return receiver 作为交易的对手方,payer 每年向 receiver 支付 index cash flows+appreciation(指数的增值),即指数的收益率,同时 receiver 向 payer 支付 LIBOR+spread。Payer 相当于 short index,long floating bond;Receiver 相当于 short floating bond,long index。TRS 的优点: receiver 相当于 pure indexing,但复制指数期初需要较高成本,而 TRS 期初则只需很少成本(no requiring of the full cash outlay),结算时只需要差额结算,资金成本很小,因此 TRS 的本质是使用杠杆去获得一个 index 的头寸。TRS 的缺点: receiver 本质上并没有持有 index 这项标的资产(not actually own the underlying assets),只是获得了 index 的头寸
- 四. Benchmark selection: 选择基准 (LDI 以 liability 作为基准; total return 以 index 作为基准)
- Strategic asset allocation: 战略型资产配置, SAA 是长期的过程
- Tactical asset allocation: 战术型资产配置, TAA 是短期的过程

Smart beta: 构建一个整体上与 benchmark 相匹配的组合,使得组合的整体风险可控,在此基础上,利用某一个风险因素的偏离去获得超额收益,而调整的风险因素就称为 smart beta

Smart beta 的举例: 当 yield curve steepens 时,long bullet: 现金流集中,low dispersion,low convexity; short barbell: 现金流分散,high dispersion,high convexity,因此 long bullet+short barbell 策略的本质是在降低组合的 convexity,也称为 sell convexity,在这个过程中 convexity 即为 smart beta,同理当 yield curve flatten 时,应该 long barbell+short bullet,增加组合的 convexity,也称为 pick up convexity

五. Laddered bond portfolio: 阶梯式的债券投资组合



- ◆ Advantage to laddered portfolio: 阶梯式债券组合的优点:
 - Protection from shifts and twists——the cash flows are essentially "diversified" across the time spectrum: 保护收益率曲线平移和扭曲,现金流在时间跨度上是分散化的
 - The convexity for ladder is in the middle of bullet and barbell: 凸性介于 bullet 和 barbell 之间
 - Ladder has advantage in liquidity management, especially when bond is not actively traded: 阶梯式债券组合在流动性管理方面有优势,特别是当债券交易不活跃时(相对于 barbell 和 bullet,ladder 的现金流更加稳定)
- ◆ The way to build a ladder portfolio: 建立 ladder 组合的方法:
 - Build the ladder directly: 直接构买债券,例如: 买入 2 年期债券, 4 年期债券, 6 年期债券
 - Use fixed-maturity corporate bond ETFs:使用债券的 ETF 基金(债券 ETF 通常折价,流动性问题)

SS 11: FIXED-INCOME PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT (2)

R23 Yield Curve Strategies: 收益率曲线策略

- 一. changes of yield curve: 收益率曲线的改变(收益率曲线的纵轴为 maturity,横轴为 yield)
- ◆ Problems with modeling yield curve: 收益率曲线建模的问题
 - <u>Unsynchronized</u> observations of <u>various maturities</u> on the curve: 收益率曲线上不同期限观察值是非同步的(收益率曲线会发生非平行移动)
 - <u>Gaps in maturities</u> that require interpolation and/or smoothing: 期限间的距离被线性插补或平滑(收益率曲线并不是连续的)
 - Observations that seem <u>inconsistent</u> with neighboring values:相邻值的观察值看起来并不一致
 - Differences in <u>accounting or regulatory treatment</u> of certain bonds that may make them look like outliers: 对某些债券的会计或监管处理上的差异,可能产生异常值
- ◆ changes of yield curve:收益率曲线的变化
 - Parallel shift: 平行移动, 使用 duration 衡量
 - Change in slope(twist): 斜率变化,通过 spread=Y_L-Y_S(长期收益率减短期收益率, spread 变大说 明收益率曲线更陡峭,反之则更平坦)来衡量收益率曲线变的更平坦或更陡峭
 - Change in curvature(butterfly): 曲率变化,通过 butterfly spread 来衡量,其值越大,收益率曲线 就越弯曲,Butterfly spread=-(Short-term yield)+(2×Medium-term yield)-Long-term yield,Butterfly spread
 - Correlation of three changes: 三种变化的相关系数
- ◆ Since short-term rates tend to be more volatile than long-term rates: 短期利率比长期利率的波动性大
 - Upward shift in level→flattens + less curved(更平坦,更直)
 - Downward shift in level→steepens + more curved(更陡峭,更弯曲)
- 二. duration and convexity: 久期和凸性
 - Macaulay duration: 衡量债券的平均收款期(三级中 Macaulay duration, Modified duration, Effective duration 不做区分)
 - Modified duration: 衡量收益率变动 1%,债券价格变动?%,用于一般债券
 - Effective duration: 衡量收益率变动 1%,债券价格实际变动了?%,用于含权债券
 - Key rate duration: 也称为 partial duration, partials, 用于 yield curve 非平行移动
 - Money duration (dollar duration): 衡量收益率变动 1%, 债券价格变动多少金额
 - Price value of a basis point (PVBP, DV01): 衡量收益率变动 1BP, 债券价格变动多少金额
 - Convexity (second order): 债券价格变化对收益率变化的二阶层数, 衡量债券价格涨多跌少的特点
 - Effective convexity: 衡量含权债券的凸性 (研究凸性使用 price curve, 横轴为 yield, 纵轴为 price)
 - Callable bond 存在 negative convexity,可以通过 long callable bond 降低组合的 convexity
- putable bond 存在 more convexity,可以通过 long putable bond 增加组合的 convexity
- MBS 存在 prepayment risk 当利率下降时贷款人会选择提前偿还,再以更低的利率借钱,因此相当于 callable bond,可以通过 long MBS 降低组合的 convexity
- Call option (以债券为标的资产的 option),可以通过 long call option 来增加组合的 convexity,原因: callable bond=pure bond-call option,其中 callable bond 是 negative convexity 而 pure bond 是 positive convexity,因此 call option 也应该是 positive convexity
- ◆ 总结:增加 convexity 的方法(保持 duration 不变,即 duration neutral)
 - Long high convexity bond, short low convexity bond
 - Long barbell, short bullet
 - Long putable bond, short callable bond/MBS
 - Long call option(call option 不是债券,其 duration 很小,因此忽略);long call/put on bond

★三. major yield curve strategies: 主要的收益率曲线策略(原则: duration neutral, 本质消除利率风险) Active yield curve strategies: 主动的收益率曲线策略,以主动管理为前提,基金经理通过偏离基准,获得

超额收益

◆ Strategies for stable yield curve: 收益率曲线保持不变的策略(interest rate risk=0,不考虑 duration)

- **1) Buy and hold:** 买入债券持有到期,虽然持有不是主动的交易,但持有也会使得组合偏离基准 (diverge from the benchmark),因此也是主动管理
- **2) Riding (roll down) the yield curve**: 当 price is upward sloping 时,买入长期债券,随着 maturity 变短,其 yield 下降,从而债券 price 升高,获得 capital gain(long long-term bond,sell short term bond,此交易本身违反 duration neutral,但当前讨论的是 stable yield curve 的情况下,因此没有 interest rate risk,所以 duration neutral 就并非必要条件)
- **3) Sell convexity**: 在 stable yield curve 的情况下,convexity 是无用的,但 convexity 视为一项资产,可以卖出资产获得收益,例如: long lower convexity bond, short higher convexity bond; long bullet,short barbell; long callable bond/MBS,short putable bond; short call option (**结论**: 在收益率曲线不变的情况下,降低凸性可以获得超额收益)
- **4) Carry trade**:发行短期债券融资,再用融资的钱去投资一个长期债券,赚取息差(期限短利率低),carry trade 存在内生的风险(inherently risky),因为短期债券先到期,需要先卖出长期债券获得现金再去偿还短期债券,所以长期债券存在 price risk

◆ Strategies for yield changes: 收益率曲线变动的策略

债券组合的基金经理通常对久期有严格的限制(under very tight duration constraints),因此凸性是重要的 组合管理工具

◆ Parallel upward shift: 收益率曲线平行上移

● Choose the bond with highest total return: 根据收益率曲线平行上移的变化,选择 total return 最高的债券

Total return≈-1×Ending effective duration×(YTME - YTMB)+YTMB

在收益率曲线平行上移的情况下,通过公式计算债券的 total return,并选择 total return 最大的债券进行投资,以获得超额收益(YTMB:代表期初 YTM; YTME:代表期末 YTM)

备注: <u>收益率曲线平行移动时</u>,分为两种策略: total return (选择最高的总收益的债券); convexity (调整凸性)

实例: Hillary Lloyd is a portfolio manager at AusBank. Her benchmark had an effective duration of 2.00 with tolerant fluctuation of ± 0.30 year. Her current portfolio of annual coupon-paying bonds is shown as below. Lloyd is highly confident that yields will increase by 60 bps across the curve in the next 12 months. Select which securities to sell and which ones to buy to maximize her return during the next year while staying within her portfolio constraint.

Maturity	Coupon	Price	YTM	Vmkt	Wi%	ED _B	EDE
1 year	1.50	100	1.50	5000	5%	0.985	0.000
2 year	1.91	100	1.91	65000	65%	1.944	0.979
3 year	2.23	100	2.23	24000	24%	2.871	1.930
4 year	2.50	100	2.50	3000	3%	3.762	2.846
5 year	2.74	100	2.74	2000	2%	4.614	3.726
6 year	2.95	100	2.95	1000	1%	6.426	4.566
portfolio	2.01%		2.01%	100%	100%	2.261	1.305

Correct answer:

Security Descriptor (all are par bonds)			Next 12-Month	+60 bps
Maturity	Coupon	PO	E(i)	HPR/total return
1 year	1.50%	100	2.10%	1.50%
2 year	1.91%	100	2.51%	1.72%
3 year	2.23%	100	2.83%	1.69%
4 year	2.50%	100	3.10%	1.56%
5 year	2.74%	100	3.34%	1.41%

6 vear	2.95%	100	3.55%	1.18%

Choose 2-year bond with highest total return. The effective duration of new portfolio will be 1.944 (EDB) within the range of 2 ± 0.30 .Bonds with two to three years to maturity all have forecast yields below their implied forwards and can be expected to return more than 1.50%. (2 year bond 的 total return 最高,因此 应该所有资金购买 2 year bond,所有的资金买 2 year bond,因此组合的 ED 就等于 2 year bond 的 ED,其值为 1.944,符合组合对 duration 的要求(1.7-2.3))

注意: 题目要求计算 12 个月以后的 total return,以 2 year 期债券为例,其<u>两年期 YTM 为 1.91</u>,随着时间经过了 1 年,2 year 期债券会变成 1 year 期债券,而 1 year 期债券的 YTM 是 1.50,因此 12 个月后,应该在 1.50 的基础上增长 60bps,所以 YTME=1.5%+0.6%=2.1%,进而其 HPR=total return=-1×0.979×(1.50+0.6-1.91)+1.91 = 1.72%

方法 2: total return=-1×Ending effective duration×(YTME - YTMB)+YTMB=△P+YTMB=(P1-P0)+YTMB, 其中 P1=99.81(FV=100,N=1,I/Y=1.50+0.6,PMT=1.91,CPT PV), 因此 total return=[(99.81-100)+1.91]/100=1.72%

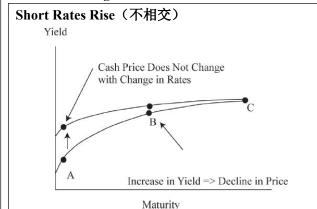
注意: increase by 60 bps <u>across the curve</u>: 意为收益率曲线上的每个点都增加 60 个基点,即收益率曲线平行上移

◆ Downward parallel shift: 收益率曲线平行下移

● Convexity Strategies: 凸性策略, (在 duration 不变的情况下)增加组合的凸性

结论: barbell portfolio outperforms the bullet portfolio,策略: long barbell,short bullet

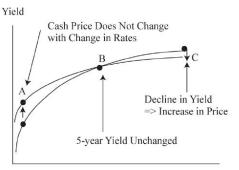
◆ A Flattening of the Yield Curve: 收益率曲线变平坦(保持 duration 不变,增加 convexity)



Barbell long-term: i 不变, p 不变

Barbell short-term: $i \uparrow$, $p \downarrow$, loss \checkmark (net loss \checkmark)
Bullet mid-term: $i \uparrow$, $p \downarrow \downarrow$, loss \doteqdot (net loss \doteqdot)

Short Rates Rise and Long Rates Fall (相交)

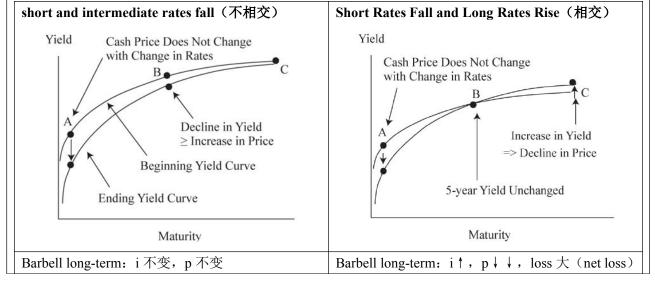


Maturity
Barbell long-term: i ↓ , p↑↑, gain 大 (net gain)

Barbell short-term: i ↑, p ↓, loss 小 Bullet mid-term: i 不变, P 不变

结论: barbell portfolio outperforms the bullet portfolio,策略: long barbell,short bullet

◆ A steepening of the yield curve:收益率曲线变的更陡峭(保持 duration 不变,降低 convexity)



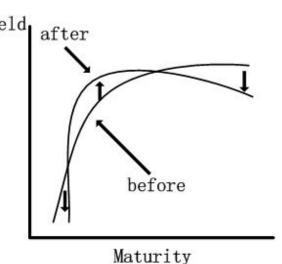
Barbell short-term: i ↓ , p ↑ , gain 小 (net gain 小) Bullet mid-term: $i \downarrow , p \uparrow \uparrow , gain + (net gain +)$

Barbell short-term: i ↓ , p↑ , gain 小 Bullet mid-term: i 不变, p 不变

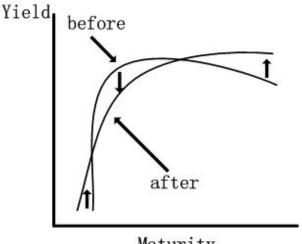
结论:Bullet portfolio outperforms barbell Portfolio,策略:long bullet,short barbell

◆ Condor/butterfly:收益率曲线曲率发生变化(保持 duration 不变,增加/减少 convexity)

short end of the curve steepens, long end of the curve flattens (more curve/adds curvature)



Short Rates Rise, Long Rates Rise, Mid Rates Fall (less curve)



Maturity

Barbell long-term: $i \downarrow$, $p \uparrow$, gain \dagger

Barbell short-term: $i \downarrow$, $p \uparrow$, gain \checkmark (net gain)

Bullet mid-term: $i \uparrow$, $p \downarrow$, loss \neq (net loss)

结论: barbell portfolio outperforms the bullet portfolio, 策略: long barbell, short bullet

Barbell long-term: $i \uparrow$, $p \downarrow$, loss \uparrow

Barbell short-term: $i \uparrow$, $p \downarrow$, loss \checkmark (net loss) Bullet mid-term: $i \downarrow$, $p \uparrow$, gain \uparrow (net gain)

结论: bullet portfolio outperforms the barbell portfolio, 策略: long bullet, short barbell

注意:两种图形的变化,结论和策略都是不同的

◆ Change in interest rates, direction uncertain:利率改变,但方向不确定(保持 duration 不变,增加 convexity)

volatility of interest increases Increase the convexity of the portfolio

结论: 利率大幅上涨时,债券价格暴跌,凸性会 对价格下跌提供保护, 利率大幅下降时, 债券价 格暴涨, 凸性会带来超额收益

策略: long barbell, short bullet

volatility of interest decreases

Decrease the convexity of the portfolio

结论: 利率波动率下降时 (例如: 波动性下降为 0, 变成 stable yield curve), 凸性没有意义, 因此应 该卖掉凸性赚钱

策略: long bullet, short barbell

注意: 两种情况, 结论和策略都是不同的

实例: Stephanie Joenk manages the emerging markets government bond portfolio for a major German bank. The investment mandate requires that the portfolio's effective duration match that of benchmark, the Bloomberg Emerging Market Sovereign Bond Index. She expects Brazilian interest rates to be extremely volatile in the coming year, given the pending federal government elections. Based on her bank's internal economic forecasts and her own analysis, she expects that rates will move by 250 bps in the year ahead, although the direction of change will depend on the outcome of the elections.

Joenk currently holds a Brazilian 10-year bond with a duration that combined with the other positions in her portfolio, keeps the effective duration aligned with the benchmark. Other securities that are readily available in the market include 6-month bills as well as 3-year notes and 30-year bonds.

Brazilian Government Notes and Bonds

Security	Coupon	Price	YTM	Effective Duration	Effective Convexity
6 month	6.000	102.70	1.110	0.538	0.006
3 year	8.875	119.75	2.599	2.895	0.105

10 year	6.000	104.80	5.361	7.109	0.666
30 year	5.000	82.50	6.332	13.431	2.827

How can Joenk profit from his anticipation?

Calculate the weighted invested in each subgroups respectively.

Calculate gains or losses from the changes in positions.

Correct Answer:

Profit from adding convexity while matching duration.

(利率的波动率增大,增加 convexity, long barbell, short bullet, 6 month 的 convexity 太小不考虑)

		Duration	Convexity
Sell	Brazil 10 year	7.109	0.666
Buy	Brazil 3 year	2.895	0.105
	Brazil 30 year	13.431	2.827

To maintain the effective duration match:

Suppose the weight of 3-year note is x.

7.109=2.895x+13.431(1-x) Solving for x, we find x = 0.60 (根据 duration 不变,计算权重)

The proceeds from the sale of the 10-year note should be allocated 60% to the 3-year note and 40% to the 30-year bond.

The gain in convexity: (加权计算组合凸性的增加)

 $(60\% \times 0.105) + (40\% \times 2.827) - (100\% \times 0.666) = 0.528$

The give-up in yield will be - 127 bps: (convexity 高的债券价格高,组合成本高,收益率下降)

$$(60\% \times 2.599\%) + (40\% \times 6.332\%) - (100\% \times 5.361\%) = -0.127 \text{ or } -1.27\%$$

If the forecast change in rates does not materialize, the "yield drag" will cause the returns of the higher-convexity portfolio to be less than that of the initial portfolio with its lower convexity.

四. implement yield curve strategies with derivatives: 使用衍生品实施收益率曲线策略

◆ Duration management: 久期的管理(内容与 SS10 的 derivatives overlay 相同)

•	Futures	$PVBP = [(NP \times D_{mod})/100] \times 0.01$
•	Swaps	Required Additional PVBP=Target PVBP-old PVBP
•	Swaptions	Number of contracts required=Required Additional PVBP/PVBP of the futures contract
•	Formula→	Effective portfolio duration≈(Notional portfolio value/portfolio equity)×Duration

实例: A manager wants to increase the duration of a portfolio with \$10 million market value and <u>a duration of 6</u> to a duration of 7. Three methods can be used.

- Use US Treasury 10-year note futures contract with a PVBP of \$85. (单位为合约份数)
- Use leverage to purchase bonds with same duration of 6. (单位为合约本金金额)
- Use interest rate swaps (all versus three-month LIBOR). (单位为合约本金金额)

Motunity	Effective	Effective	Net	DVDD non Million
Maturity	PVBP Fixed	PVBP floating	Effective PVBP	PVBP per Million
5-year	0.0485	0.0025	0.0460	460
10-year	0.0933	0.0025	0.0908	908
20-year	0.1701	0.0025	0.1676	1676

How can the manager use each of the methods to reach this target duration? (调节的对象是 PVBP)

Correct answer: (duration 从 6 到 7, PVBP 需要调整多少?)

PVBP=0.01%×6×10 million=\$6,000(**D=6**,因此收益率变动 **0.01%时**,组合价值变动 **0.01%×6=0.06%**)

PVBP target= $0.01\% \times 7 \times 10$ million= \$7,000

Required additional PVBP=7,000-6,000=\$1,000

Namely, increasing duration is equivalent to adding additional PVBP of \$1,000.

Method 1

Number of contracts required=Required additional PVBP/PVBP of futures contract=1000/85=11.76≈12

contracts (份数四舍五入)

Method 2

Market value = Required additional PVBP/duration of bonds to be **purchased and financed**×10,000=1,000/6 ×10,000=1.67 million (market value of similar bonds with a duration of 6). (7/6 -1=16.7%,需要举相当于本金的 16.7%的杠杆)

Method 3

Using five-year swaps, we would need to add 1,000/460 or \$2.17 million in swaps.

Using 10-year swaps, we would need to add 1,000/908 or \$1.1 million in swaps.

Using 20-year swaps, we would need to add 1,000/1,676 or \$0.60 million in swaps.

注意: 从 duration 的角度,10 年期国债期货与 10 年期 swap 所提供的 duration 理论上是一样的,因为它们的标的资产都是 10 年期固定收益债券,但现实并非如此,以上述实例为例,使用国债期货需要 12 份(1.2Million),而使用 swaps 只需要 1.1Million,使用国债期货需要更多的本金,这是因为国债期货基于 cheaper to delivery 原则,所以会从市场上选择最便宜的债券交割,而非标的资产债券本身,越便宜的债券其 duration 越小,因此需要的份数就变多了,而 swap 则不存在这个问题(Slight difference between the face value of 10-year note futures (1.2million method 1) and the 10-year swaps (\$1.1 million) arises because the futures contract was tracking a "cheapest to deliver" that is slightly shorter than the 10-year note)

注意: 以上述实例为例: 使用 20 年期 swap 比使用 10 年期 swap 所使用的份数要少,这是因为 Swap 时间越长,其 duration 越大

◆ Alter convexity: 使用衍生品调节凸性

- Add convexity: long call options
- Reduce convexity: short call option

实例: Haskell considers the investment situation:

- A credit/collateralized portfolio consisting of <u>corporates</u>, <u>MBS</u>, <u>and ABS</u> <u>cannot be assembled</u> (不能被构建) on a Friday afternoon.
- The market has been <u>very volatile lately</u>, and leaving the <u>\$60 million in cash has the potential to lead to severe underperformance</u> if the market were to <u>rally (反弹)</u> next week while the non-Treasury portion of the portfolio was being assembled. (现金不用会导致业绩表现不佳)
- Haskell knows he has to temporarily invest the credit portion(bond) of the portfolio, but he is <u>sensitive to transaction costs</u>. (降低交易成本)
- He also believes that a "<u>flattening twist</u>" of the yield curve was highly likely, <u>with yields on maturities</u> shorter than 2024 rising and yields on longer maturities falling. (短期利率上升,长期利率下降)

Based on his considerations, choose the optimal type of bond portfolio he should purchase.

Correct Answer:

Based on his views, Haskell decides to purchase a portfolio of highly liquid on-the-run Treasury securities that would approximately match the duration of the benchmark.

Explanations:

- Volatile market→match duration of the benchmark (保证 duration neutral)
- Leave the \$60 million in cash has huge potential of loss investing in bonds.(用现金投资债券)
- Since H believes <u>yield curve will have a flattening twist</u>. He should <u>add convexity</u> (收益率曲线变平坦, 增加凸性)
 - ✓ <u>Avoid investing</u> instruments as <u>MBS or callable bonds</u> with negative convexity;
 - ✓ Treasury bonds with <u>lower yields have higher convexity</u> than non-treasury bonds with same duration.
- Reduce transaction costs → on-the-run treasury bonds. Since they have higher liquidity than off-the-run bonds thus lower bid-ask spread. (流动性越强,交易成本越低)

注意:现实中债券的凸性比较难计算,通常使用 yield 和 convexity 的关系来判断凸性,convexity 越高说明债券越值钱(成本高),yield 就越低(国债收益率低)

五. Evaluate different strategies: 评估不同的策略

◆ Partial PVBP (partial DV01): 当某个时点的利率变动 0.01%时,整体组合的价值变动多少钱,partial PVBP 与 PVBP 的关系,就如同 KRD 与 duration 的关系,前者站在某个时点考虑问题,后者站在组合整体考虑问题

♦ Butterfly (barbell + bullet)

• Long butterfly

Long wings (barbell) and short body (bullet)

Positive convexity, buying convexity

✓ long higher convexity (barbell)

✓ short lower convexity (bullet)

Benefit from flat and volatile yield curve

• Short butterfly

Short wings (barbell) and long body (bullet)

Negative convexity, selling convexity

- ✓ Short higher convexity (barbell)
- ✓ long lower convexity (bullet)

Benefit from steep and stable yield curve

◆ Methods to construct: 模型的构建

- Duration neutral: 久期中性
 - ✓ Duration of the wings equals the duration of the body: barbell 与 bullet 的久期相等
 - ✓ Market values are also the same: 市场价值不变(本质为消除利率风险)
- 50/50 (half the duration is allocate to each wind):
- ✓ 先 short body(bullet),获得现金,再用现金配置到 barbell 的两端,权重分别为 50% (50% to long end and 50% to short end of the curve respectively)
 - ✓ 现实中不能确保 duration neutral
- Regression weighting: 将构成组合的 barbell 和 bullet 不同权重与组合的业绩进行回归(不考)

六. Decomposition of a portfolio's return: 分解组合的收益(与 SS10 内容相同)

$E(R) \approx \text{Yield income} + \text{Roll down return} + E(\Delta P) - E(\text{Credit losses}) + E(\text{Currency G/L})$

实例: Lamont Cranston is a trader on the government securities desk of a US investment bank. He has a view on interest rates and thinks the US Treasury security zero-coupon yield curve will experience an <u>upward shift by 50 bps in the next 12 months</u>. Cranston is considering two strategies for the year ahead: a bullet portfolio and a barbell portfolio. The bullet portfolio would have 100% of its funds invested in five-year Treasury zero-coupon notes, currently priced at 94.5392. The barbell portfolio would have 62.97% of its funds invested in two-year Treasury zero-coupon notes, priced at 98.7816, and the remaining 37.03% of funds invested in 10-year Treasury zero-coupon bonds, priced at 83.7906.

Other relevant assumptions

	Bullet	Barbell
Investment horizon (years)	1.0	1.0
Average bond price for portfolio currently	94.5392	92.6437
Average bond price for portfolio in one year	96.0503	94.3525
(assuming stable yield curve) Current modified duration for portfolio	4.97	4.93
Expected effective duration for portfolio (at the horizon)	3.98	3.98
Expected convexity for portfolio (at the horizon)*	17.82	32.57
Expected change in US Treasury zero-coupon yield curve	0.50%	0.50%

Correct Answer:

Rolldown return

Bullet: (96.0503 - 94.53922)/94.5392 = 1.5984%

Barbell: (94.3525 - 92.6437)/92.6437 = 1.8444%

Expected loss from increase in rates (收益率变动是在 12 个月以后,使用一年后的 duration)

Bullet: (-3.98×0.005)+ (0.5×17.82×0.005²)= -1.9677% (泰勒恒等式)

Barbell: $(-3.98 \times 0.005) + (0.5 \times 32.57 \times 0.005^2) = -1.9493\%$

Return Component	Bullet	Barbell
Yield income	0	0

+ Rolldown return	1.5984%	1.8444%		
= Rolling yield	1.5984%	1.8444%		
+ E(Change in price based on yield view)	- 1.9677%	- 1.9493%		
= Total expected return	- 0.3693%	- 0.1049%		
注意: Treasury zero-coupon bond 的 credit risk=0; US 投行买 US bond,因此无汇兑损益				

Summary: 本章重要内容总结

<u> </u>					
	1) Buy&hold (持有也会使得组合偏离基准,因此为主动管理的策略)				
6. 11 . 11	2) Riding the yield curve: long long-term bond, short short-term bond (长期				
Stable yield curve	债券随着到期日期临近,yield 下降,价格上升,获得超额收益)				
(不考虑 duration)	3) Sell convexity: 收益率曲线稳定,凸性无意义,卖出凸性获得现金				
	4) issue short-term bond, investment long-term bond, 赚取息差				
DII-I -L:64I	1)total-return: 选择 highest total return bond				
Parallel shift-upward	2)convexity ↑ ,为债券价格下跌提供保护				
D. 11.1.6.1	1)total-return: 选择 highest total return bond				
Parallel shift-downward	2)convexity ↑ ,为债券价格上涨的更多				
Slope change-flatten	convexity † , Long barbell, short bullet Duration				
Slope change-steepen	convexity ↓ , long bullet, short barbell	neutral			
Curvature-more curve	convexity † , Long barbell, short bullet				
Curvature-less curve	convexity ↓ , long bullet, short barbell				
Volatility A	convexity † , Long barbell, short bullet				
Volatility †	(上涨涨的多,下跌提供保护)				
Volatility ↓	Convexity 无意义,卖出凸性获得现金				
	1) bond: long high convexity/low yield, short low convexity/high yield				
convexity †	2) long barbel, short bullet				
(调整方法)	3) long putable bond, short callable bond/MBS				
	4) long call option, long put option; long call/put on bond				

R24 Fixed-Income Active Management: Credit strategies: 固定收益的主动管理: 信用策略 (根据 credit risk 的变化,决定交易策略)

- 一. Risk analysis: 风险分析
- ◆ ★Credit-related risk: 信用相关的风险(广义)
 - spread risk: 利差风险,用 spread duration 衡量,数值上与 duration 相同,yield 变化的原因不同
 - default risk: 违约风险
 - Credit migration risk/downgrade risk: 评级下降的风险(客户对债券评级有约束时,当债券评级下降,基金经理可能强制将其卖出/forced sales)

注意:不同的债券,关注的信用风险也不同,投资级债券(investment-grade),关注 spread risk; 高收益债券(high-yield),关注 default risk

spread duration-based: 主要用于投资级债券

market value-based: 主要用于高收益债券(通过 market value 的变化,研究债券的 default risk)

◆ Credit risk: 信用风险(狭义,不含 spread risk,本质为 default risk)

Default risk: **credit loss rate= default rate**×**the loss severity**(loss severity≤100%,credit loss rate≤default rate) **备注:** 投资级债券关注 credit migration risk 和 spread risk

实例: For example, Westpac also has a floater maturing on 13 May 2021. This bond also has a spread duration of **4.70** years, but its modified duration is only **0.21**. The floater trades at a price of 100.55 with a credit spread of 88 bps. If its credit spread narrows by 20 bps, and interest rates are unchanged (基准利率不变). Calculate the price change of this bond. (**spread** 变化导致利率变化,应该使用 **spread duration** 衡量,因此 **modified duration** 是无用的,因为无利率风险)

Correct Answer:

100.55 × (-4.70 × -0.0020) + 100.55= 101.50 (利率下降,价格上升)

注意: spread duration=4.7, 而 duration=0.21, 说明债券的价值变动主要受 spread 影响

◆ Interest rate risk: 利率风险

理论上,利率变化对 risk-free bond 和 risky bond 的影响是一样的,都是用 duration 衡量的,但现实中 credit spread 与 risk-free interest rate 是负相关的(negatively correlated)

无风险利率的变化(risk-free rates)对于 corporate bond yield 的影响比对国债的影响小,因为投资者的心理预期,公司债的价格变动主要由 spread 的变化引起,而基准利率(risk-free rates)对于任何债券来说都是一样的,因此 spread 的变动才是关键,而国债主要关注基准利率的改变

注意: 理论上 duration=spread duration, 现实中 duration<spread duration

Empirical duration: 经验久期,根据市场数据确定利率的敏感程度,随着债券评级的下降,其 Empirical duration 快速下降,换言之债券的评级越差,投资者越关注 spread,越不关注 risk-free rate

◆ Liquidity risk: 流动性风险

● Effective factor: 影响因素

Bond's issue size ↑; the size of the market ↑; Bonds that are held in dealers'inventories ↑; →Liquidity ↑

- Implications: 启示
 - ✓ High-yield bond portfolios is <u>more costly</u>: 高收益债券组合有更高的成本(成本主要指风险高)
- ✓ <u>Investment-grade bonds</u> are usually quoted as spreads over benchmark government bonds: 投资级债券通常以政府债的 spread 来报价(投资级债券的主要风险是 spread risk)
- ✓ High-yield bonds are usually quoted in price terms: 高收益债通常以价格报价(高收益债的主要风险是 default risk,价格可以反应 default risk)

二. Credit spread analysis: 信用利差分析

◆ ★G-Spread = the yield on a credit security-the yield on government bond (YTM 之间的差别, YTM 是直线),当使用线性插补法计算 spread 时,应该按久期加权 (When interpolated, weighted by duration)

备注:美国国债只有 11 个期限,因此其 YTM 是不连续的,只有 11 个点

实例: On 31 March 2016, a portfolio manager gathers information for the following bonds.

- 1. Citigroup 3.75% due 16 June 2024
- 2. US Treasury 1.5% due 31 March 2023 (on-the-run 7-year Treasury note)
- 3. US Treasury 1.625% due 15 February 2026 (on-the-run 10-year Treasury note)

	Price	Yield	Effective Duration
Citigroup 3.75% 103.64		3.24%	7.0
US Treasury 1.5% 99.80		1.53%	6.7
US Treasury 1.625%	98.70	1.77%	9.1

Later, the 7-year Treasury note's yield falls from 1.53% to 1.43% while the 10-year Treasury note yield remains unchanged. What is the price change in the Citigroup bond?

Correct Answer: (国债收益率为基准利率,基准利率变化对导致公司债价值变化,用两个国债收益率去模拟出公司债的收益率)

- Assume weight of the 7-year note "a", weight of the 10-year note "b".
- Duration match: 6.7a + 9.1b = 7; $a + b = 1 \rightarrow a = 87.5\%$; b = 12.5%. (模拟出 duration=7 的公司债,线性插补法,用 duration 加权)
- The linearly interpolated yield from the two government bonds is $0.875 \times 1.53\% + 0.125 \times 1.77\% = 1.56\%$. (模拟出的基准利率)
- The new yield on the interpolated Treasury: 1.47% = [0.875(1.43%) +0.125(1.77%)]. (新的基准利率)
- The G-spread on the Citigroup bond is 1.68% = 3.24% 1.56%. (计算出 G-spread, spread 不变)
- The interpolated Treasury yield has fallen by 0.09%, from 1.56% to 1.47%. Therefore, assumes that the yield of the Citigroup bond has fallen by 0.09% as well. (Δ yield=(1.47%+1.68%)-3.24%=-0.09%)
- The price change of the Citigroup bond is $103.64 \times (7 \times 0.09\%) = 0.65$.
- ◆ **计算思路**: 注意合成出的债券只是 duration 相同,但 reedit risk 不同

- 通过 duration 相等为桥梁,计算出合成公司债的国债的权重(以 duration 加权)
- 根据国债权重,计算出基准 YTM_T 是多少(YTM_C=YTM_T+spread)
- 使用公司债的 YTMc 减去国债 YTMT 得到 G-spread
- 根据国债 yield 的变动, 计算出新的基准利率 new YTM_T 是多少
- 使用 new YTM_T加 G-spread 得到公司债的 new YTM_C
- 再计算 new YTMc 的变化,引导的公司债的价格的变化
- ◆ I-Spread=the yield on a credit security the swap rates denominated in the same currency

优点: swap curve 更为平滑/连续(smoother/less disjointed)

G-spread=Y_C—**Y**_T, **I-spread=Y**_C—**swap rate**: 其中 Y_T和 swap rate 应该是无风险利率,否则不能很好的体现信用风险,当市场发现国债收益率(Yields on government bonds)和银行间利率(interbank rates/swap rate)存在信用风险时,G-spread 和 I-spread 就不是好的指标,因为两者本身也包含了一定的信用风险,因此会使得 G-spread 和 I-spread 被低估

- ◆ **Z-spread**: 公式: **P=PMT1**/(**1+r1+Z**)+**PMT2**/(**1+r2+Z**)²+(**PMT3+Par**)/(**1+r3+Z**)³,求解出 **Z-Spread** 的 值(两条 spot curve 之间的差距,spot curve 是向上倾斜的曲线),衡量企业债券的风险(不含权)
- ◆ **Option-adjusted spread (OAS)**:剔除了 option 的风险,用于评估 pure bond 和 option-embedded bond 的信用风险

缺点:

- OAS 依赖利率波动的假设(assumptions of future interest rate volatility),假设利率上叉树上涨和下跌的概论都是 50%
- realized spread 与 OAS 会有一定差别,因为依赖于期权是否会行权(whether the option is actually exercised)

Holding-period excess return(actual): 持有期获得的真实超额收益,公式: **XR≈(s×t) - (Δs×SD) Δs**: spread 的变动; **SD**: spread duration; **s**: <u>期初</u> spread; **t**: 持有期间(t=1 代表投资期 1 年)

解读: $-(\Delta s \times SD)$ 代表 spread 变化导致债券价格的变化;站在收益率的角度,s 本质就是超额收益,因

为 $\mathbf{Y}_{\mathbf{C}}$ = $\mathbf{Y}_{\mathbf{T}}$ + \mathbf{spread} ,总收益是在基准利率的基础上加入 \mathbf{spread} ,即为了补偿信用风险而获得的超额收益

Expected excess return: 期望超额收益,公式: EXR≈(s×t) - (Δs×SD) - (t×p×L),是当信用风险发生改变时,进行投资决策的重要指标(债券是否值得购买,主要看产生的超额收益能否覆盖其信用风险) p: annualized expected probability of default; L: expected loss severity/loss given default

实例: A corporate bond has <u>a spread duration of five years</u> and a credit spread of <u>2.75%</u>.

- 1. What is the approximate excess return if the bond is <u>held for six months</u> and the credit spread <u>narrows to 2.25%</u>? Assume the spread duration remains at five years and that the bond does not experience default losses.
- 2. What is the instantaneous/瞬间(holding period of zero) excess return if the spread rises to 3.25%?
- 3. Assume the bond has a 1% annualized expected probability of default and expected loss severity of 60% in the event of default. What is the **expected** excess return if the bond is held for six months and the credit spread is expected to fall to 2.25%?

Correct Answer:

Solution to 1:

Using Equation 1, the excess return on the bond is approximately $3.875\% = (2.75\% \times 0.5) - [(2.25\% - 2.75\%) \times (2.75\% \times 0.5)]$

5]. 根据公式: XR≈(s×t) - (△s×SD)

• Solution to 2:

Using Equation 1, the instantaneous excess return on the bond is approximately -2.5%= $(2.75\% \times 0)$ - $[(3.25\% -2.75\%) \times 5]$. 根据公式: $XR \approx (s \times t)$ - $(\Delta s \times SD)$, holding period of zero, 因此 t=0

• Solution to 3:

Using Equation 2, the expected excess return on the bond is approximately 3.575%= $(2.75\% \times 0.5)$ - $[(2.25\% - 2.75\%) \times 5]$ - $(0.5 \times 1\% \times 60\%)$. 根据公式: EXR \approx (s \times t) - (Δ s \times SD) - (t \times p \times L)

- 三. The bottom-up approach:自下而上的分析方法(通常用于现有组合的调整)
- ◆ Bottom-up approach: 先划分信用版块(Divide the Credit Universe),再在不同版块中找出相对表现

最好的债券 (the best relative value)

● **关键原则:** 所承担的信用风险与所获得的超额收益进行权衡(weighing the <u>compensation for credit-related risks/expected excess return</u> against the expected magnitude of the credit-related risks)

◆ 分析债券时着重考虑的因素:

- Spread curve: 横轴: maturity, 纵轴: spread, 一条向上倾斜的曲线
- ✓ 通过 spread curve 来看不同期限的企业债对应的 spread 是多少,并判断 spread 能否覆盖所承担的 credit risk,影响 credit risk 的主要因素: seniority (优先级), credit risk,liquidity
- ✓ **outperform a benchmark:** 更高的权重配置在表现更好的债券上(overweight position on best relative value bond)
- ✓ **generate positive absolute returns**: 创造正的绝对收益,通过少配置表现差的债券或做空表现 差的债券,具体的做空方法: shorting Verizon bonds; buying put options; long credit default swaps (CDS)
- **Bond structure:** 债券的结构,分析标的债券在公司资本结构中的优先级(priority in the capital structure),本质与 seniority 相同
- **Issuance date**:发行日期,越是近期发行的债券(recently issued),其 spread 会比较窄(narrower bid offer spreads),因此违约风险越低
- **Supply**:供应量,企业新发行了债券,会使得之前发行的债券价值会下跌,spread 变宽 (decline in value and their spreads widen),**原因**: 1)公司发行新债券,供给量增加,基于供需原则,债券价格下跌; 2)公司发行新债券,说明财务状况进一步恶化,负债率提高,信用风险上升,债券价格下跌
- Issue size: 发行规模,发行规模与债券的信用估值的影响是不确定的,**原因**: 关于发行规模有两种解读,1)正面的解读认为公司发行规模上涨,说明其财务状况很好,否则发不出债券,另外发行规模大,说明流动性越好,风险低; 2)负面的解读,公司发行规模上涨,说明公司的负债率越高,因此财务指标越差,违约率越高

实例: At the end of 2016, an analyst is about to conduct a relative value analysis of the following bonds issued by a <u>single company</u>. All of these bonds are available in the market at the time he is conducting his analysis:

<u> </u>	3) 11 <u>2</u>								
Во	Coupon	Maturity	Tenor	Credit	Issue Size	Duration	Price	Yield	Credit
nd			(years)	Rate					Spread
									(bps)
Α	2.40%	12/31/2018	2	A2/A	2,000,000,000	2.0	100	2.40%	40
В	3.50%	12/31/2021	5	A2/A	1,500,000,000	4.6	100	3.50%	50
С	8.00%	9/30/2022	5.7	Ba1/BB+	50,000,000	4.7	109.5	6.02%	299
D	5.00%	12/31/2046	30	A2/A	1,000,000,000	15.8	100	5.00%	100

Evaluate whether the analyst should include Bond C in the relative value analysis. (bond C 是否值得投资)

Correct Answer:

- Bond C has a much <u>higher spread</u> than the company's other bonds. The analyst should try to identify the cause(s) of this difference before including Bond C in the relative value analysis.
- ✓ Bond C's higher coupon and lower credit rating suggest that it is riskier than the other bonds.
- ✓ Bond C may be <u>subordinated</u> in the company's capital structure.
- ✓ Bond C also has a much <u>smaller issue size</u>, indicating that the bond may be <u>less liquid</u> than the company's other bonds.Relatively illiquid bonds often carry greater spreads to compensate investors for this disadvantage.
- ✓ Finally, Bond C's <u>higher price (价格高估)</u> means that the <u>loss in the event of default</u> is likely to be larger.
- ✓ To summarize, it is most likely unsuitable to include Bond C in the relative value analysis.

The company is issuing a new 10-year bond with the following features:

Во	Coupon	Maturity	Tenor	Credit	Issue Size	Duration	Price	Yield	Credit
nd			(years)	Rate					Spread
									(bps)
Е	4.00%	12/31/2026	10	A2/A	3,000,000,000	8.2	100	4.00%	80

Explain how the analyst may compare the relative value of the company's new issue with that of the outstanding bonds.

Correct Answer: (E 的期限在B和D之间,且三者评级相同)

- The company has no outstanding bonds maturing around 2026.
- The spread for a bond maturing in 2026 can be roughly interpolated, however, using issues already in the market. The spread should be somewhere between the spreads of Bonds B and D.
- Using the bonds' durations to interpolate, we find the interpolated spread to be 50 + {[(8.2 4.6)/ (15.8 4.6)] × (100 50)} = 66.

 $(D_D-D_E)/(D_D-D_B)=(S_D-S_E)/(S_D-S_B)$: duration 差值的比率与 credit spread 差值的比率相等,因此将数据代 $\lambda(15.8-8.2)/(15.8-4.6)=(100-S_E)(100-50)$,计算出 $S_E=66$,即 credit spread 为 66 即可以覆盖信用风险,而 E 债券给了 80,因此有超额收益;另一种解读 actual spread=66,market spread=80,说明 spread 高估,YTM 高估,price 低估

• The new issue, with a spread of 80 bps, appears to be <u>attractively valued</u> in the context of the company's outstanding issues.

◆ Bottom-up portfolio construction: 自下而上组合的组成策略

- **Substitution**:根据发行主体和期限做成的九宫格,根据 best relative value 的原则,在各版块选择 几支债券,有时版块中表现最好的债券可能买不到,此时要选择次优的债券进行投资
- Indexing: 版块的权重是模拟指数的权重,但在每个版块中挑选表现最好的债券进行投资
- **Cash**:如果基金经理想要买的表现最好的债券马上就可以买到了,此时应该持有现金等着买表现最好的债券,而不是直接去投资一个次优债券

★四. The top-down approach: 自上而下的分析方法(通常用于从零开始构建组合,共 10 个步骤,前 6 步关注组合的构建,后 4 步关注风险管理)

- ◆ 1) Macro factors: 分析宏观指标(定性)
 - 宏观指标包括: economic growth; overall corporate profitability; default rates; risk appetite (风险偏好); changes in expected market volatility; changes in credit spreads; interest rates; industry trends; currency movements
- ◆ 2) Desired credit quality determination:期望信用重量的预测(定性)
 - Credit cycle: 用于长期分析,信用周期是波浪形的,曲线上升时为信用宽松时期,宽松的货币政策,通常伴随债券的牛市; 曲线下降时为信用紧缩时期,紧缩的货币政策,通常伴随债券的熊市
 - **Credit spread changes**:用于短期分析,credit spread 的变动是好的预测指标(a good predictor),用于判断一年后违约概率(default rates one year ahead),即 spread 上升,则 default rate 上升
- ◆ 3) Assess the credit quality: 分析资产的信用质量(定量)
 - Average credit rating: 平均的信用评级
 - ✓ Arithmetic weighting: 算数加权平均,基于 S&P, Fitch 的评级
 - ✓ Non-arithmetic weightings: 非算数加权平均,基于 Moody 的评级(更保守)

			<u> </u>	
Moody's	S&P	Fitch	S&P Factor(Arithmetic)	Moody's Factor(Non-arithmetic)
Aaa	AAA	AAA	1	1
Aa3	AA-	AA-	4	40
A1	A +	A +	5	70
Baa1	BBB+	BBB+	8	260
Baa2	BBB	BBB	9	360
Baa3	BBB-	BBB-	10	610
Ba1	BB+	BB+	11	940
Ba2	BB	BB	12	1350
Ba3	BB-	BB-	13	1766
B1	B+	B+	14	2220
B2	В	В	15	2720

实例: A portfolio in which 50% of the bonds are rated A1/A+ and the other 50% are rated Ba3/BB-.

- Using arithmetic weighting:
- The average credit quality score is (50% × 5)+(50% × 13)=9. This score of 9 corresponds to an average credit rating of Baa2/BBB. (加权平均得出 9, 与 S&P 的 BBB 级 Factor 匹配,组合评级属于 BBB)
- Using a non-arithmetic weighting:
- The average credit quality score is $918=(50\%\times70)+(50\%\times1,766)$. The score of 918 corresponds most closely to an average credit rating of Ba1/BB+. (加权平均得出 918, 与 Moody 的 Ba1 级 Factor 匹配,组合评级属于 Ba1)

注意:实例中相同的债券组合,使用不同的评级机构的 Factor 得到的评级是不同的

结论: 两个组合分别用 Moody 和 S&P 评级,如果评级相同,则 Moody 组合的信用风险更小

- ◆ 4) Assess the credit quality (cont.): 资产信用质量
 - Average OAS: 只能反应 credit quality,不能反应 credit spread volatility
 - Average spread duration: 可以反应 credit spread volatility
 - **Duration times spread (DTS)**: **spread duration** × **OAS**, 可以反应 credit quality 和 credit spread volatility, 是更客观的指标(Less intuitive),但无经济学意义
- ◆ 5) Industry sector allocation: 行业版块的配置(完成前 4 步的分析,完成市场的挑选)
 - **Quantitative tools**: 使用量化工具,例如: market total return 和 industry return 做线性回归分析 (regression analysis)
 - Information: 通过获取的信息做判断,需要基金经理有比较丰富的行业经验
 - Financial ratio analysis: 通过财务比率的分析来判断哪个行业值得投资
- ◆ 6)Expected excess return in top-down approach:通过计算超额收益,在版块中选择个体资产
 - 公式: $EXR \approx (s \times t) (\Delta s \times SD) (t \times p \times L)$, 判断原则: 在信用评级相同的情况下,选择 EXR 更大的个体资产
- ◆ 7) Measure interest rate exposure: 衡量利率的风险敞口
 - effective duration: 衡量收益率曲线平行移动(parallel yield curve shifts)
 - Key rate duration: 衡量收益率曲线非平行移动(non-parallel yield curve shifts)
 - **Effective convexity**: 衡量利率波动的风险(the exposure to interest rate volatility)
 - **Maturity management**: 通过调节投资期限的方式管理利率风险(maturity 与 duration 正相关,本质也是在管理 duration),适用于基金经理不能使用衍生品的情况
 - **Derivatives**: 使用衍生品调节组合 duration 的方式管理利率风险
- ◆ 8) Interest rate volatility management: 利率波动性管理(本质为管理 convexity)
 - Credit securities: long callable bond/MBS 降低 convexity, long putable bond 增加 convexity
 - Derivatives: long call option 增加 convexity
- ◆ 9) Country and currency exposure: 国家和汇率敞口
 - 汇率风险不在本章讨论范围之内,汇率问题主要在 SS9 中涉及
- ◆ 10) Spread curves: 利差曲线的风险
 - yield curve 在 spread curve 上方,两者形状相同且是平行的,因此管理方法与 yield curve 完全相同,另外要注意不同债券的 spread curve 是不同的,如果讨论两条 spread curve 时,要从靠拢(converge)和分离(diverge)两个方向进行分析,converge 意味着 spread 在减小,YTM 下降,应该增加 duration和 convexity; diverge 意味着 spread 在增大,YTM 上升,应该降低 duration,增大 convexity

		Bottom-up approaches	Top-down approaches		
A divionation		easier to gain an informational advantage	A sizable portion of credit returns can be		
Advantages		in individual companies or bonds	attributed to macro factors		
Disadvantages		difficult to earn substantial returns	difficult for an investor to gain an informational		
			advantage		

实例: A credit investor has conducted extensive research on the European chemicals and consumer staples industries. He is constructing a portfolio of bonds issued by companies in these industries. The investor seeks to

outperform a benchmark consisting of bonds issued by <u>European chemicals and consumer staples</u> <u>companies</u>. Evaluate whether a top-down or bottom-up approach is most appropriate for this investor.

Correct Answer: (限定了行业,只需要在行业内选择个体资产,应该使用 bottom-up approach)

- A bottom-up approach is more appropriate for this investor.
- The key aspect of the bottom-up approach to credit strategy is assessing the relative value of individual bonds or issuers.
- The investor has conducted extensive research on companies within the industries. And his benchmark is consisting of bonds issued by European chemicals and consumer staples companies.

五. Liquidity risk: 流动性风险

- ◆ Effective factor: 影响因素
 - issue size: 发行规模越大,流动性越好
 - size of the market: 市场规模越大,流动性越好
 - held in dealers'inventories:作市商存货越多,流动性越好
- ◆ Measure of secondary market liquidity risk: 二级市场流动性风险的衡量
 - Trading volume: 交易量越大,流动性越好
 - Spread sensitivity to fund outflows: 资金净流出,流动性变差
 - **Bid-ask spreads**: Bid-ask spreads 越小,流动性越好
- ◆ Structural industry changes and liquidity risk:结构性行业变化和流动性风险
 - 2008 年次贷危机以后,新的监管规定限制了作市商承受风险的能力(ability to take risk),持有的库存量(hold inventories),交易行为(trading activities),作市商变的更风险厌恶,并试图降低库存量
 - Effects in liquidity risk:对流动性风险的影响
 - ✓ Dealers decrease bond positions on balance sheets→decrease liquidity: 作市商去库存降低头寸,流动性下降
 - ✓ **Dealers reduced bond positions concentration→increases liquidity:** 作市商降低头寸的集中度(增加分散化效果),流动性上升
- ◆ Management of liquidity risk: 基金经理对流动性的管理
 - Holding cash: 持有现金,没有流动性风险也没有投资收益
 - Managing position sizes: 调节头寸规模,在其它条件相同的情况下,优先投资流动性好的债券
 - Holding liquid, non-benchmark bonds: 持有流动性好,且非指数成份的债券
 - Credit default swap (CDS) index: 通过 CDS 对冲债券不能变现的风险 (流动性风险体现为不能变现)
 - Exchange-traded funds (ETFs): 相同条件下购买债券的 ETF 基金比直接购买债券要好, 因为 ETF 的流动性更好

六. Tail risk: 尾端风险(发生极端事件的风险)

Tail risk: 极端事件发生的概率比模型预测的概率更高的风险

- ◆ Assess tail risk: 评估 tail risk
 - **Scenario analysis**:使用情景分析,设定一种极端情景(specific situations),并考核组合在这种情况下的表现
 - Historical scenario analysis: 设定一个历史上真实发生过的情况
 - Hypothetical scenario analysis: 设定一个历史上未真实发生,自己预测的情况
- ◆ Manage tail risk: 管理尾端风险
 - Portfolio diversification: 通过分散化消除 tail risk
 - Tail risk hedge: 通过对冲消除 tail risk
 - ✔ 优点:对冲是更好的方法,因为分散化只能消除非系统性风险
 - ✔ 缺点:使用衍生品通常都有成本,且伴随比较高的杠杆

七. Structured financial instruments: 结构性的金融产品

结构化金融产品:结构化金融资产价格的变动受另一个资产或市场行情的变动影响的,例如:MBS 的价格取决于房地产市场的繁荣与否

- ◆ Advantages: 结构化金融产品的优点
 - Higher portfolio returns: 收益率更高 (结构化产品通常带有杠杆)
 - Relative value opportunities: 相对价值的投资机会,指两个类似的金融产品,通过做多一个,做空另一个来获得超额收益,例如: 当利率上升时,long callable bond,short pure bond,因为利率上升时 callable bond 和 pure bond 本质没有区别,callable bond 不会行权,但 callable bond 卖的更便宜,因此有超额收益
 - make exposure to a specific market or macroeconomic factor: 获得特定市场或宏观因素的敞口, 例如: long MBS 本质是投资房地产市场
 - Improve portfolio diversification: 提升组合的分散化效果
- ◆ MBS: 属于 ABS 的范畴,特指将 mortgage 进行证券化的产品
 - Advantages: 优点
 - ✓ **High Liquidity**: 流动性更好
 - ✓ Less default risk: 更少的违约风险
 - ✓ Exposure to real estate:获得房地产行业敞口(投资 MBS 比直接投资房地产的门槛低)
 - ✓ Exposure to expected changes in interest rate volatility: 获得利率波动的敞口,例如: 利率下降,MBS 面临 prepayment risk; 利率上升,MBS 面临 extension risk
- ◆ ABS: 标的资产不是住房贷款(non-mortgage)的结构化产品,通常的标的资产包括: automobile loans; automobile lease receivables; credit card receivables; student loans; bank loans; accounts receivable (理论上,一个资产可以产生分层的现金流,就可以作为 ABS 的标的资产),其优点与 MBS 相同
- ◆ CDO: Collateralized debt obligation,本质是一揽子负债放到一个池子中进行证券化(security backed by a diversified pool of one or more debt obligations),按不同优先级分为多个 tranche (Super senior tranche, Senior tranche, Mezzanine tranche, Equity tranche)
 - Correlation tend to be highly negative, can profit by selling the subordinated, buying the senior tranche
 - Correlation tend to be <u>highly positive</u>, can profit by <u>buying the subordinated</u>, <u>selling the senior tranche</u>
 - correlation ↑, the value of mezzanine tranches usually ↑ (relative to the value of senior and equity tranches): 相关性提高,应该买次级产品,equity tranches 是自留可能买不到,因此只能买入 mezzanine

实例: Describe how an investor may benefit from adding structured financial instruments to a credit portfolio. Correct Answer: (结构化金融产品的优点)

- One potential benefit is the possibility of <u>higher portfolio returns</u>;
- Potential relative value opportunities may exist because of different features, valuation, and risk exposures.
- Another benefit is the possibility of <u>more targeted exposure to a certain market or sector</u>.
- Finally, structured financial instruments improve the <u>diversification</u> to a credit portfolio.

SS 12: EQUITY PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT

R25 Equity Portfolio Management: 股票组合管理

- ◆ protection against unanticipated inflation: 防止非预期通胀
 - Corporate income taxes and capital gains tax rates are typically not inflation indexed: 企业税和资本利得税税率与通胀不是挂钩的(企业所得税的坏处: 以前买入设备花费 100 万,每年 10 万折旧,发生恶性通胀时,这个设备价值 200 万,此时每年应该折旧 20 万,但税务部门只认可 10 万的折旧,因此折旧被低估,导致多交企业税; 资本利得税的坏处: 10 年前拿 10 万投资,10 年后变成 100 万,因恶性能在通胀的因素,10 年前的 10 万,可能与现在的 40 万价值相等,但税务部门却认为你获得了90 万的资本利得,导致多交资本利得税)

注意:根据历史来看,股票的长期现实收益率(long-term real rates of return)要高于债券,换言之长期投资股票是有意义的

- ◆ 3 types of approaches to manage equity portfolios: 三种管理股票组合的方法
 - Passive management:被动管理,复制指数
 - Active management: 主动管理,主动选择表现好的股票
 - Semi-active management: 居中管理,也称为 enhanced indexing/risk-controlled active management,原理: 先复制指数,再微调试图超级指数

注意: 使用 active management 就会有更高的 expected active return 和 tracking risk; 使用 passive management 就会有更低的 expected active return 和 tracking risk,通常使用 **information ratio=E** (**R**_A) / σ **A**,作为衡量 主动管理业绩的依据,根据历史经验: **Historical IR indication**: **semi-active** > **active** > **passive**

3 种方法与市场有效性的关系: Market is efficient → passive management; Inefficient market → active management

Tax (others): Low turnover—fewer capital gains recognized (passive 投资意味着更少的调仓换股, turnover 就会越低,如果税率高,就越应该避免调仓换股,因此应该使用 passive 投资)

Large cap: More probably efficient—passive (大盘股可能更有效,应该使用 passive 的投资)

Small cap: Although more mispricing—high transaction cost for active (小盘股有更多定价错误的可能,应该使用 active 的投资)

International market: Lack of information—passive (国际市场,因为信息劣势,更应该 passive 投资)

- **Price weighted:** 按价格加权的指数,例如 DS 30,NIKKEI 225(买相同的股份数,受高价股影响比较大,存在调整分母的情况)
- Value weighted: 按市值加权的指数,也称为 Market capitalization-weighted index,例如:上证 50, SP500,绝大部分都是按自由流通股进行调整的(All major value-weighted indexes are now <u>free-float adjusted</u>),存在过于集中(Concentrated on relatively few issues)和分散化不够(Less diversified)的问题,受高市值股票的影响比较大
- Equal weighted: 等权重的指数,将成份股的收益率取平均(算术/几何)做成的指数,通常用于学术研究(买相同的\$金额数,受小盘股影响比较大)
- ◆ The major passive investment vehicles: 主要的被动投资工具
 - Conventional Index Mutual Funds: 传统的公募基金,主要针对散户(管理费较高)
 - ETF: 分为一级市场和二级市场, ETF 的一级市场主要针对机构; ETF 的二级市场主要针对散户, ETF 的交易特点: 用一揽子股票去换 ETF 基金的份额, 赎回时也会得到一揽子股票
- ◆ ETF 的特点:
 - Pay transaction costs including commissions to trade them: 支付交易费用,包括交易佣金
 - Do not have fund level shareholder accounting: 不需要基金级的持有人记账(减少成本)
 - Pay much higher index <u>license fees</u> than conventional funds: 相比传统基金要多支付版权费,例如: SP500 的 ETF, 因为 SP500 这个指数的版权属于 SP 公司,因此 ETF 基金需要支付版权费
 - Are often much more <u>tax-efficient</u>: 更好的税收效率,例如: 传统基金要赎回,需要基金经理抛掉股票,因此基金支付了资本利得税,因此赎回的投资者的资本利得税由还没有赎回的投资者承担

- 了; ETF 赎回是还给投资人一揽子股票,投资人卖出股票需要自己交税,相对更公平
- Provide inherently better protection from the cost of providing liquidity to shareholders: 为股东提供流动性的成本提供更好的保护
- **Separate Accounts or Pooled Accounts:** 分离的账户(大资金量倾向专户理财)和资金池账户(小资金量倾向集合理财)
- **♦** Advantages of pooling:
 - Lower management costs: 更低的管理费
- **♦** Drawbacks of pooling:
 - Difficult to differentiate: 没有差异化
 - hold excess cash: 基金经理持有更多现金(cash drag)
 - **Equity Futures**: 股指期货,通过 Long position in cash + long position in futures,相当于获得股票的 exposure
 - Equity Total Return Swap: 使用互换合约,通过 Long position in cash + long position in a swap on the index
- ◆ ★Construction of index portfolio 3 approaches: 指数投资组合的构建-3 种方法
 - Full replication: 完全复制,完全复制指数
- ◆ 适合的情况(appropriate for):
 - Smaller indices (less than 1,000 stocks): 指数的成份股要少
 - the index stocks are liquid: 成份股的流动性要好
 - manager has more funds to invest: 可投资资金要多

Advantage: 优点

- Low tracking risk: 更低的跟踪风险
- Adjustment is needed only for the <u>reinvestment of dividends</u> and to <u>reflect changes in index</u> composition: 只有当现金股利或指数的构成生变化时才需要调整

注意: 基于 value-weighted index,当出现 stock split 和 stock dividend 时会自动平衡(self-rebalanced)

- Stratified sampling: 分层抽样(定性方法),如果指数的成份很多(large-index),此时可以按 指数分成不同版块,再在每个板块通过一定条件抽取一些个股,分的层次越多(number of dimensions) 效果就会更接近指数,适用于指数中含有流动性较差的股票的情况(Portfolio contains a large proportion of illiquid stocks)
- Optimization: 优化(定量方法),通过要素模型进行匹配,优点: lower tracking risk; 缺点: 1. 风险因子的协方差(covariance)可能发生变动; 2.出现建模错误(misleading model); 3.要定期更新保持风险的特征(periodic trading to keep the risk characteristics)
- ◆ Active equity investing: 主动的股票投资
- ◆ Equity styles: 股票的投资风格
 - Value investment style: 价值型投资风格,投资大盘蓝筹(低市盈率,低市净率,高分红),要注意低市盈率的股票不一定就是价值型股票,侧重低 P/E(low price multiple),分为几个子风格(sub styles): 1.High dividend yield; 2.Low P/E or P/B; 3.Contrarian(反向投资,针对估值的反向投资)
 - **Growth investment style:** 成长型投资风格,侧重未来 EPS 的上升(forecasted EPS growth),分为几个子风格: 1.Consistent growth,认为公司过去高增长,未来也会高增长; 2.Earning momentum (less sustainable),认为公司过去高增长,将来短期还会增长,但长期不看好
 - Market-oriented investment style (blend or core style): 居中策略(市场导向、混合风格、核心风格),分为几个子风格: 1.Market-oriented with a value bias: 市场导向且偏向价值型; 2.Market-oriented with a growth bias: 市场导向且偏向成长型; 3.Growth at a reasonable price (GARP): 以合理的价格增长; 4.Style Rotators 风格转换(墙头草)
- ◆ Styles from size dimension: 规模分层的风格
 - Micro-cap: 微盘,适用最少可投资资产的投资人(in the lowest capitalization range)
 - Small-cap: 小盘,最高的潜在增长率(higher growth potential); 更小的股价基础(smaller stock

price base); 跟踪它们的分析师比较少(less coverage)

- **Mid-cap**: 没有大盘股研究的好,但比小盘股的现金流强劲(financially stronger),波动率小(less volatile)
- Large-cap: 大盘股通常是有效的,适合使用 passive 投资

◆ Techniques for identifying investment styles: 鉴定投资风格的技术

● Return-based style analysis: 基于收益率的风格分析(定量方法),原理: 通过组合的历史收益率与不同风格指数做回归,看回归方程的系数,系数越大,则说明组合的投资风格越偏向此风格指数,另外要注意在选择自变量(风格指数)时,应该使用互斥的风格指数(mutually exclusive),即每个个股只能被归类到一个风格中,且一定能被归类(exhaustive),且相互之间呈现不同的,不相关的风险来源(distinct, uncorrelated sources of risk)。另外回归方程的 R² 也称为 style fit,解释了风格因素对收益率的贡献,而 1-style fit=error term 代表 selection,解释了是选股因素对收益率的贡献

Multi-period return-based style analysis: 多阶段的基于收益率的风格分析,例如: 以当前时点开始,使用前 36 个月的数据做回归,计算出各风格的权重,再以前一个月的时点开始,使用之前 1 个月的前 36 个月做回归,并计算出各风格的权重,以此类推,可以计算出一段时间的权重的动态变化

● Holding-based style analysis-attributes: 基于持有的风格分析(定性方法),根据属性,分析成份股

Attributes	Value-oriented	Growth-oriented	Market-oriented
Valuation levels	Low price multiples	High price multiples	Close to market
valuation levels	High dividend yield	Low dividend yield	average
Forecast EPS		Above-average,increasing earning	
	Lower than growth-oriented	growth	
growth rate		Low dividend pay out ratio	
Earnings	Greater	Lower(增长阶段,盈利稳定增长	
variability	Greater	不波动)	
Industry sector	Larger weight in finance	Larger weight in technology, health	Similar to value
weights and utilities sector		care sector	Sililiai to value

◆ ★Equity style analysis - Comparison of 2 tech: 股票风格分析-两种技术的对比

	Advantages	Disadvantages
	Characterizes entire portfolio: 刻画整个投资组合	May be ineffective in characterizing
	Facilitates comparisons of portfolios: 促进投资组合比	current style: 可能对当前风格的特征无
	<mark>较</mark>	效(依靠历史数据回归)
	Aggregates the effect of the investment process: 聚合	Error in specifying indices in the model
	了整个投资过程的效果	may lead to inaccurate conclusions: 模型
D - 4	Different models usually give broadly similar results	中特定指数的错误可能导致不准确的结
Return-	and portfolio characterizations: 不同的模型通常给出	论
based	大致相似的结果和投资组合特征	
	Clear theoretical basis for portfolio categorization: 清	
	晰的投资组合分类理论基础	
	Requires minimal information:要求最少的信息	
	Can be executed quickly: 可以迅速执行	
	Cost effective: 成本有效	
	Characterizes each position:刻画单个股票	Does not reflect the way many portfolio
	Facilitates comparisons of individual positions: 促进个	managers approach security selection: 没
Holding	股的比较	有反应基金经理选择股票的方法
-based	In looking at present, may capture changes in style	Requires specification of classification
	more quickly than returns-based analysis: 着眼于现	attributes for style different specifications
	在,可能比 returns-based analysis 更快地捕捉到风格	may give different results: 不同的风格需

的变化	要特定的分类属性可能带来不同的结果
	More data intensive than returns-based
	analysis: 比 returns-based analysis 更密

style drift: 通过风格鉴定,发现基金宣称的风格与实际的投资风格不符合,协会认是这是不好的事情,原因: 1.investor may no longer be getting exposure(投资者没有获得想要的风格敞口); 2.deviate from manager's expertise(偏离了基金经理的专业知识)

- ◆ SRI: Socially responsible investing(ethical investing): 社会责任投资(SRI=ESG)
 - Negative screens: 一定不能投资的,例如: 污染的公司
 - Positive screens: 一定要投资的,例如: 研发癌症药物的公司

注意: Socially responsible investing 限制,通常出现在 foundation 和 endowment 中

- ◆ Long-short investing: 做多做空投资(有 long 有 short 就称为 Long-short investing)
 - pairs trade/pairs arbitrage: 找到 exposure 相同的两支股票, long 相对低估的, short 相对高估的, 获得 β =0 (overall zero beta), 赚取 2 α (value added can be equal to two alphas), 也是一种 market-neutral long short strategy, 与市场收益率无关 (uncorrelated with equity market returns)
- ◆ Short 更容易获得超额收益的原因:
 - 大多数投资人都是在寻找低估的股票,即大部分投资者是做多的,因此股价容易高估
 - 公司管理层欺诈(management fraud),使得做空的机会提升,例如:"window-dressing" of accounts 或 negligence
 - 大部分的卖方分析师都是公布买入的推荐报告,因此股份更容易高估
 - 分析师通常不会写负面的研报,因为分析师要去上市公司拜访,如果写负面研报工作很难开展
 - **short extension strategy**: 也称为 120/20 策略,在组合中将最高估的股票 short 20%,换取的现金 买入最低估的股票,因此相当于 long 120%, short 20%
- Equitizing market neutral long-short portfolio: 市场中性组合股票化(beta=0),例如: 持有创业版 ETF 基金,short 创业版股指期货,合成一个中性组合,再 long 大盘蓝筹的股指期货(长期看好创业版,短期看好大盘蓝筹时可这样操作,基于短期微调); 也可以通过进入 swap 合约达到 Equitizing 的目的,例如: 持有创业版股票,用 stock return 互换 bond return,再用 bond return 互换大盘蓝筹 return 备注: 大资金量时,建仓非常不容易,因为资金量大,买就会拉高市场,卖就会打压市场,因此不敢轻易放弃仓位,所以更倾向于使用衍生品来改变 exposure

◆ Selling discipline: 卖出准则,关注什么时候卖出股票(两种策略)

- Substitution strategies: 替换策略
 - ✓ Opportunity cost sell discipline: 用更好的投资机会去替换当前持有的头寸
 - ✓ Deteriorating fundamentals sell discipline: 减持或取消基本面恶化的头寸
- Rule-driven strategies:规则驱动策略
 - ✓ Valuation-level sell discipline:根据估值级别,例如: P/E 达到 30X 则卖出
 - ✓ Down-from-cost sell discipline:根据止损情况,例如:通常止损线设置为 20%
 - ✓ Up-from-cost sell discipline:根据止盈情况,例如:通常赚取 20%收益就卖出
- ✓ Target price sell discipline: 根据目标价位,例如: 股票价格与 intrinsic value 接近时,卖出**注意**: 判断是否卖出时,应该基于税后考虑(A sell discipline need to be evaluated on an <u>after-tax</u> basis for tax-sensitive investors)

备注: 价值投资者的周转率比成长型投资者低(Value investors have <u>lower turnover</u> than growth managers)

- ◆ semi-active or enhanced indexing equity strategies: 居中管理
 - **Derivatives based**: 基于衍生品微调,通过衍生品获得股票市场的 exposure,通过股票以外的 其它投资提高收益率
- Stock based: 基于股票微调,减持或增持指数成份股,通过监测风险因素和行业风险控制风险 注意: 两者的 IR 不同,derivatives based 决策次数少,要求策略准确度高; stock based 决策次数多,准确度可以适当低一些

- ♦ Fundamental law of active management: information ration=IR=IC× √IB
 - Information coefficient or IC: 更为正式地定义为预测收益和实际回报之间的相关性(more formally defined as the correlation between forecast return and actual return),从本质上说,它衡量投资洞察力的有效性(In essence, it measures the effectiveness of investment insight),即预测的结果和真实的结果一样,即为"水平高"
 - Investment discipline's breadth: 每年主动投资的独立决策次数,即行动力(The number of independent, active investment decisions made each year),例如: 觉得钢铁股要涨,买入 3 支钢铁股股票,算一次独立决策

A derivative-based semi-active approach involves using derivatives to equitize cash and attempting to pick up active return by adjusting the duration of the fixed-income position: 基于衍生品的居中管理包括使用衍生品股票化现金,试图通过调整固定收益头寸的久期去获得超额收益

- ✓ The attempts lead to lower breadth: 尝试的次数比较少
- ✓ To have the same information ratio, it requires a higher information coefficient: 相同的 IR 要求 更高的 IC(因为独立决策的次数少)

注意:基于股票的居中管理,在IR相同的情况下,IB的次数会多,因此相应的IC可适当降低

- ◆ Managing a portfolio of managers: 管理基金经理(方法论)(trade-off becomes one of active return versus active risk, risk 容易获得, return 难以放大)
 - Core-satellite approach: 核心+卫星,核心是指 passive 或 semi-active 策略,卫星是指 active(未强制要求 core 的权重要大于 satellite),其缺点是在整体组合的角度,各独立的 active manager 可能同时配置了某个相同的股票,导致整体组合的特定资产过于集中,即分散化可能不够
 - ✓ Optimal allocation to managers

Portfolio's active return	$=\sum_{i=1}^n h_{Ai} r_{Ai}$	hAi: weight assigned to ith mgr rAi: active return of the ith mgr
Portfolio active risk	$=\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n h_{Ai}^2 \sigma_{Ai}^2}$	hAi: weight assigned to ith mgr σ Ai: active risk of the ith mgr

Assuming the correlations between the equity managers' active returns are zero: 假设基金经理的主动管理的收益的相关系数为 0

- Completeness fund approach: 先确定投资的板块及权重,再规定不同 active manager 只能在这一版块内操作,合成出类似的指数,从而避免了不同 active manager 同时配置了相同的股票,导致过度集中,分散化不够的问题(优点:分散化程度高,风险小;缺点:收益低)
- Manager's return-Manager's normal benchmark=Manager's "true" active return: 基金经理真实的 收益减去基金经理认可的基准等于基金经理真实的 active return
- Manager's normal benchmark-Investor's benchmark=Manager's "misfit" active return: 基金经理 认可的基准减去投资人的基准等于 misfit active return
- Manager's "true" active risk=standard deviation of "true" active return
- Manager's "misfit" risk=standard deviation of "misfit" active return

Manager's total active risk= $\left[\left(\text{true ative risk}\right)^2 + \left(\text{misfit active risk}\right)^2\right]^{(1/2)}$

True IR=true active return/true active risk: 更好的衡量基金经理业绩的指标

- **Alpha and beta separation**: alpha 和 beta 分离策略,找两类的基金经理,一类只做 pairs trade 对应 alpha 收益;一类 passive 投资对应 beta,其优点:在一定的 beta 范围内,增加 alpha 收益
- ◆ Limitations: 限制
 - The fees being paid to capture market (inexpensive) and active (costly): 做 pairs trade 的基金经理收益 会比较贵

- Certain markets may constrain the ability to manage long short alpha-generating strategies: 市场可能有限制,会影响基金经理操作 long short alpha-generating strategies 的能力
- Short positions may be very costly to establish in smaller or emerging markets: 在小市场或新兴市场中建立做空头寸可能成本非常高
- 在做 pairs trade 时存在 beta 残余,并非 beta neutral,导致 beta expose 上升

◆ Selecting investment managers: 选择基金经理

- 使用问卷调查(questionnaire),通过一些定性和定量的考量(qualitative and quantitative considerations),选择基金经理,过去的业绩不能保障未来会达成(past performance is no guarantee of future results),通常考虑 5 个关键领域:
 - ✓ Organization/People: 组织架构/人员
 - ✓ Philosophy/Process: 投资哲学/流程
 - ✓ Resources: 资源 ✓ Performance: 业绩
 - ✓ Fees: 收费
- **Ad valorem fees**: 根据规模收费, 例如: 50M 以内的部分按 0.6%收费, 超过 50M 的部分按 0.45% 收费
- A simple performance-based fee: 简单的业绩相关的费用
- ✓ **A fee cap**: 限制与业绩无关的总费用金额上限和收费频率(total fee paid regardless of performance and is frequently),避免基金经理为了高收益而冒险承担过高的风险(limit the portfolio manager's incentive to aim for very high returns by taking a high level of risk),例如:限制基金经理只能拿 500 万的绩效资金,从而避免了基金经理为了获得更高奖金拿客户的钱冒险
 - ✓ A high-water mark: 高水位,业绩必须突破历史新高,超额部分才能计提绩效奖金
- top-down approach: 在 CFA 三级的架构中,理解为只分析宏观经济和行业
- bottom-up approach: 在 CFA 三级的架构中,理解为只分析公司基金面

SS 13: ALTERNATIVE INVESTMENTS FOR PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT

R26 Alternative Investments Portfolio Management: 另类投资组合管理

- ◆ Reasons for investing in alternative investments: 投资另类投资品的原因
 - Risk diversification: 风险分散化(与传统投资品的相关性较低)
 - Active management: 主动管理
 - Capture alpha: 超额收益
- ◆ Types of alternative investment: 另类投资的种类
 - Real estate: 房地产
 - Private equity/venture capital: 私募/风投
 - Commodities: 大宗商品
 - Hedge fund:对冲基金
 - Managed futures: 管理期货
 - Distressed securities: 濒临破产的证券
- ◆ Common features of alternative investments: 另类投资的一般特征
 - Relative illiquidity: 流动性差
 - Diversifying potential relative to a portfolio of stocks and bonds: 分散化(相关系数低)
 - High due diligence costs: 高尽调成本
 - Difficult performance appraisal because of complexity of establishing valid benchmark: 业绩难以衡量, 很难找到合适的基准
 - Informationally less efficient than the world's major equity and bond markets: 信息不有效
 - High kurtosis, fat tail, negative skewness: 尖锋, 肥尾, 负偏
 - 税率都是独特的 (unique)
- ◆ Questions for advisers of private wealth clients: 为高净值用户做顾问时的问题
 - Tax issues: 税收问题
 - Determining suitability: 确保适应性(time horizon、liquidity needs、emotional、financial needs)
 - Communication with clients: 与客户交流
 - Decision risk: 决策风险(个人投资者受个人情绪影响,容易出现低卖高买)
 - Concentrated equity position:过于集中的资产,另类投资品的起投门槛通常比较高
- 一. Real estate: 房地产,只关注房地产的股票类投资(equity investments in real estate)
- ◆ Direct ownership: 直接投资,直接去购买地产
- ◆ Indirect investments: 间接投资
 - ✓ Companies engaged in real estate ownership: 直接买房地产公司的股票
 - ✓ REITs: 房地产信托投资基金,公开募集可以二级市场交易(publicly traded equities)
 - ✓ CREFs: commingled real estate funds,私募的房地产基金
 - ✓ Separately managed accounts (SMA): 专户投资

★Direct equity investment: 直接投资

Advantages:

- tax deductible: mortgage interest, property taxes 可税前列支
- more financial leverage: 更高的金融杠杆
- direct control: 直接控制
- ✓ Geographical diversification: 地域上的分散化
- ✓lower volatility:波动率比较低

Disadvantages:

- ✓ not easy to divide into smaller pieces: 不容易 分离成小包(交易)
- ✓ more cost: 成本高(获得信息的成本、交易成本、维修保养成本)
- neighborhood deterioration: 邻里环境恶化
- ✓ political risk: 政治风险

★注意: 相对于间接投资,直接投资的流动性比较差的几点原因: 1.transaction size 大; 2.information cost 大; transaction cost 高

◆ ★Infrastructure funds: 基础设施投资基金, 其特征如下:

- CF stable: 现金流稳定
- Growth potential: 增长潜力低
- Entry barrier: 进入壁垒高
- Regulatory risk: 监管风险(政策风险)
- Corelation: 与股票和债券的相关性比较低
- ★Match long term liability: 匹配长期负债
- ◆ Investment characteristics: 房地产的投资特点:
 - Capital gain: 地产升值的资本利得
 - rental income: 租金收入
 - ★physical real estate 直接投资房地产的特点: lack of liquidity、large lot sizes、high transaction costs、heterogeneity(异质性)、immobility(不可移动)、relative low information transparency(信息不透明)
 - appraisal-based valuations: 基于评估价值,波动性会被低估,风险被低估
 - factors affect: 考虑诸多经济因素(demand and supply for real estate: Interest rate, business financing costs, employment levels, saving habits, demand and supply for mortgage financing;)
 - Mixed conclusions on the inflation-hedging: 抗通胀(混合的结论),美国的数据: 长期抗通胀,短期不确定
 - Location: 地段对价值的影响比较大
- ◆ ★Benchmarks of real estate: 房地产的基准(指数)
 - NCREIF: 直接投资的指数, value weighted and includes sub-indices grouped by real estate sector and geographical region, 分为 NCREIF smooth 版本和 NCREIF unsmooth/corrected 版本
 - NAREIT: 间接投资的指数, real-time, market-cap-weighted index of al REITs actively traded on the New York Stock Exchange and American Stock Exchange

注意: NCREIF smooth 版本会低估波动率(underestimate volatility)

★结论:数据显示,直接投资对于分散化的效果更好

二. **Private equity: 私募股权投资**,分为 venture capital 和 buyout funds,其主要投资人(Major investors)为 pension funds、endowments and foundations

均 pension funds、endowments and foundations		
Private Equity Investments	Publicly Traded Securities	
Structure and Valuation		
Deal structure and price are negotiated between the	Price is set in the context of the market: 价格由市场	
investor and company management: 交易结构和价格	行情决定	
是投资人和公司管理协商的结果	Deal structure is standardized. Variations typically	
	require approval form securities regulators:标准化的	
	处理结构。变动通常需要证券监管机构的批准	
Access to Information for Investment Selection		
★Investor can request access to all information,	Analysts can use only publicly available information	
including internal projections: 投资人可以要求全部	to assess investment potential: 分析师只能使用公开	
的信息,包括内部预测	信息进行投资预测	
Private Equity Investments	Publicly Traded Securities	
Post Investment Activity: 投后管理		
Investors typically remain heavily involved in the	Investors typically do not sit on corporate boards or	
company after the transaction by participating at the	make ongoing assessment based on publicly available	
board level and through regular contact with	information and have limited access to management:	
management: 投资人通常在投后继续大量参与公	投资人不列席董事会,继续基于公开信息评估,参	
	L + - + + +	

与有限的公司管理

◆ 私募的投资人:

● Angel investors: 天使投资人

司的董事会管理,继续与公司管理层联系

● Venture capital: 风投

- Large companies: 大型公司也会进行 PE/VC 的投资,以公司形式进行投资的这类公司称为 corporate venturing
- ◆ buyout funds 的分类:
 - **Mega-cap buy-out funds**: 特大型的 buyout funds,将上市公司私有化,经过资产重组,到更大的市场再上市,获得更高的收益
 - Middle-market buy-out funds: 杠杆收购
- ◆ 被收购公司 (Target Company) 的特征: 适合通过 LBO 进行收购的公司
 - Undervalued/depressed stock price:被收购公司的股价被低估
 - Willing management: 管理层愿意被收购
 - Inefficient companies:被收购公司的经营效率不高
 - Strong and sustainable cash flow: 强劲和可持续的现金流
 - Low leverage:被收购公司的杠杆很低
 - Assets:被收购公司的实物资产比较多

◆ ★Buyout 的收益来源:

- Undervalue 的资产
- Operation efficiency 提高
- Issue more debt(公司规模增长,但 debt 不会增长)
- ◆ ★Dividend recapitalization: PE 的一种退出方法,具体流程: PE 去投资一个陷入短期流动性危机的公司,获得股份,公司周转过来后便可正常运转,PE 让公司发债,公司的杠杆上升,再让公司进行分红,获得投资收益,收回一定的初始投资,同时 PE 保有公司的股份。这种方法对公司的影响: 1.公司的净资产下降; 2.公司的杠杆上升; 3.使得公司变弱(potential to weaken the company)
- ◆ ★convertible preferred stock: 可转换优先股, PE/VC 在投资非上市公司时,通常会使用 convertible preferred stock 的方式进行投资,原因如下:
 - Flexible: 灵活性,如果目标公司经营的好,将可转换优先股变为股票获得资本利得;如果公司经营的不好,每年可以拿到优先股股利
 - Risk: 降低投资风险,可主动选择资本利得或股利
 - More senior: 新一轮 PE 的可转换优先股的优先级要高于之前投资的 PE,因为越后面的轮次越有价值(later rounds are more valuable)
 - 在对公司的可转换优先股进行估值时,不会对新的和旧的可转换优先股进行区分
- ◆ PE 和 HF 会使用有限合伙人(limited partnerships or limited liability companies (LLCs))的结构,原因是避免双重征税(avoid possible double taxation),如果是公司制结构,则 PE 公司投资目标公司赚的钱要先缴纳分红类的税,之后公司又要缴纳企业所得税,而股东又要缴纳个人所得税,如果是LLC 结构,就可以避免企业所得税
- ◆ ★Private equity funds fees: PE 的管理费
 - **management fee** is 1.5-2.5 percent range, Based upon the committed fund: 管理费通常为 1.5%-2.5%, 基于承诺出资
 - incentive fee/carried interest: 绩效奖金,通常为 20% (actual return—hurdle rate)×incentive fee%
 - hurdle rate: 要求的最低收益率,只有高过 hurdle rate 的收益才计提绩效奖金
 - **High water mark: 高水位:** 例如一个对冲基金开始是 100 亿,经过一年的运作,其价值上升到 150 亿,这时基金经理会拿到绩效奖金,第二年基金下降到 120 亿,这时基金经理拿不到绩效资金,第三年基金上涨到 140 亿,这时基金经理也拿不到资金,因为这个基金在从 100 亿变成 150 亿时,已 经给过相应的绩效奖金,除非基金的价值能再次超过 150 亿,否则基金经理都拿不到绩效奖金,而这个曾经的基金价值的最大值 150 亿就叫高水位
 - Clawback provision: 利益回拨机制:保护 LP 的机制,例如:基金初始有资金 100 亿,一年后基金经理操作成 150 亿,这时基金经理会拿到相应的绩效奖金,第二年价值下降到 120 亿,这时基金经理就需要之前拿到的这 30 亿的绩效奖金还回来(并不是所有的 PE 都有这个条款)
- ◆ FOF (fund of fund): 一个 PE 基金去购买其它的 PE 基金,管理费通常为 0.5%-2%,因为不是直投,

因此管理费会比较少(Management fees range from 0.5%-2% of net asset managed)

- ◆ ★Differences in return characteristics of VC funds and buyout funds: VC 与 buyout 基金收益特征的 区别:
 - Buyout funds are usually highly leveraged: buyout 通常使用高杠杆
 - The cash flows to buyout fund investors come earlier and are often steadier than those to VC fund investors: VC 的投资更早期; buyout 的现金流更为稳定
 - The returns to VC fund investors are subject to greater measurement error: VC 更容易发生估值错误
 - VC 的 potential growth 更高
 - VC 的 frequent loss 更高
- ◆ PE 和 VC 的角色 (roles):
 - Ability to achieve sufficient diversification: 达成分散化效果
 - Low liquidity of the position: 头寸的流动性低
 - Provision for capital commitment: LP 要将承诺出资预留出来,以备 GP 给 LP 打电话 (capital calls)
 - Appropriate diversification strategy: PE 也可以进行分散化策略

PE 的分散化投资方向:根据行业(industries),根据公司的发展阶段(stage),根据地域(region) ★结论:数据显示,PE 有分散化效果

- 三. Commodity: 大宗商品 (risk diversification; inflation hedge)
- ◆ ★大宗商品的分类:
 - Direct commodity investment: 直接投资大宗商品
 - ✓ purchase of physical commodities: 购买实物现货,存在 carry costs and storage costs
 - ✓ in spot market values via derivatives:购买大宗商品的衍生品,分散化效果好
 - Indirect commodity investment: 间接投资大宗商品,购买大宗商品上市公司的股票,敞口更小 (equity in companies specializing in commodity production)
- ◆ Special risk characteristics: 大宗商品特别的风险特征
 - Commodities have tended to have correlation with equities and bonds that are unusually low: 大宗商品与股票和债券的相关性比较低
 - Commodities are generally business-cycle sensitive: 大宗商品通常对经济周期敏感
 - Commodities correlate positively with inflation whereas stocks and bond are negatively correlated with inflation: 大宗商品与通胀是正相关,但通胀与股票和债券是负相关
- ◆ Commodities as an inflation hedge: 大宗商品抗通胀
 - ★Storable commodities: 不可再生的大宗商品,可抗通胀(gold, silver, zinc, aluminum, copper, crude oil, heating oil and natural gas), 其原因: 1.原油价格本身就是 CPI 的组成部分 (CPI component); 2. 在高通胀状态时 (inflationary period), 对贵金属的需求 (demand) 会增大
 - Non-storable commodities: 可再生的大宗商品,不可抗通胀(livestock, wheat, com)
- ◆ ★Components of return for commodity future contracts: 大宗商品期货合约收益的组成:
 - the spot return: 现货价格上涨带动期货价格上涨
 - collateral return:抵押收益,期货产品有杠杆,因此不需要支付全部的金额去购买,这些暂时用不到的自有资金可用于购买国债,期间所产生的收益称为抵押收益
 - roll return:滚动收益:例如:如果期货合约期限比较长,这时市场上可能找不到对手方,这时可以 long 一份短期一个月的期货合约,到期后再 long 一份一个月的合约,以此类推,滚动进行,在这期间所产生的收益就称为滚动收益

备注: 在升水的情况下 roll yield 是负的;在贴水的情况下 roll yield 是正的(站在多头角度)
Contango: 升水,某资产将来的价格>现在的价格,即 Futures price>Spot price (roll yield 是 loss)
Backwardation: 贴水,某资产将来的价格<现在的价格,即 Futures price<Spot price (roll yield 是 gain)
convenience yield: 持有便利,持有现货带来的好处,例如:直接买入现货原材料,也可以规避价值上涨带来的风险,另外 convenience yield 比较高的大宗商品更容易出现 backwardation

◆ ★Benchmarks of commodities: 大宗商品的基准

- 大宗商品 index 是基于 futures price 编制的
- 大宗商品 index 是基于 world production weighted (全球产量加权); importance of economy (对经济的重要性,含有主观成份)

常见的指数: The S&P Goldman Sachs Commodity Index (GSCI), 权重最大的是 energy

结论:数据显示,大宗商品收益很低,但风险极高,但不代表不应该投资大宗商品,投资大宗商品的主要目的是分散化(理论上)。但实证大宗商品的分散化效果并不好,原因:1可能是特殊时间段的问题; 2.sharpe ratio 会被拖累(comprised),因为另类投资收益率都是高峰(high kurtosis)负偏(negative skewness)

四. Hedge fund: 对冲基金

- ◆ 对冲基金的策略:
 - **Equity market neutral**: 市场中性策略,构建一个 beta 为 0 的组合,追求的是基金经理的 alpha 能力(择股/择时)
 - Convertible arbitrage: 可转债套利策略,利用可转债定价和对应的正股定价的偏差套利
 - **Fixed-income arbitrage**: 固定收益套利策略,利用 credit spread 的变化和 yield curve 的变化,选择 long 和 short 不同的债券
 - Distressed securities investments: 投资陷入困境的公司
 - Merger arbitrage or deal arbitrage: 兼并套利和处置套利,例如: A 公司收购 B 公司,应该 short A 公司股票, long B 公司股票
 - **Hedged equity strategies**: long 一些股票,short 一些股票,与市场中性的区别是 beta 并不一定等于 0
 - Global macro strategies: 宏观套利策略,研究各国的宏观经济,选择 long/short 哪些资产,例如: 日本要进行量化宽松,则 short JPY, long Nikki Futures, long T-bond Futures(日本要印钱,钱多了钱就不值钱,而且钱多了要么进股票市场,要么进债券市场)
 - Emerging markets funds: 投资新兴市场的对冲基金
 - ★Fund of funds (FOF): 基金中的基金,对冲基金会投资市场上各类的投资品,因此对冲基金的FOF 会过于追求分散化,反而丧失分散化效果(more positively correlated with equity market)
 - Relative value strategies: 相对价值策略,通过 long、short 去发现价格的差异,并以此获利
 - Event-driven strategies:事件驱动策略,聚焦企业交易,例如:兼并/收购,并利用这些信息获利
 - Equity hedge: 使用不同程度的股票市场敞口和杠杆做多/做空股票头寸
 - Global asset allocators: 在全球范围搜索做多/做空资产的机会,包括金融资产和非金融资产
 - Short selling: 专注做空策略,分析上市公司基本面,发现上市公司真实情况与财报披露的不符,做空这支股票,并发布做空报告,并以此获利

实例:

1.Equity market neutral 策略,如果市场流动性下降好还是不好,为什么?

答:不好,因为流动性下降, transaction cost 会上升

2. Equity market neutral 策略,使用大盘指数作为基准好还是不好,为什么?

答:不好,因为 Equity market neutral 策略 beta=0,并不承担 market risk,因此作为基准不匹配

- ◆ Compensation structure of hedge funds: 对冲基金的薪酬结构
 - Asset-under-management (AUM) fee: 对冲基金基于 AUM 收取管理费,通常 1%-2%
 - Incentive fees: 绩效奖金,通常为 20%
 - High-water marks: 高水位,只有超过高水位的部分才会再计提绩效奖金
 - Lock-up period: 锁定期,通常为 1-3 年
- ◆ FOF 的特征:
 - Diversification: 追求分散化(但 FOF 过于追求分散化,其分散效果可能并不好)
 - **Variation Two layers of fees**:双重收费
 - Offer additional liquidity: 提供了更好的流动性(赎回条款更加宽松)
 - **√** The FOF manager must hold a <u>cash buffer</u> that may reduce expected returns: FOF 应对赎回,需要预留一些现金头寸,因此降低了期望收益率(cash drag)

- Popular as entry-level investments: 在初级投资者中比较流行
- Less survivorship bias and backfill bias: 更少的生存者偏差和回填偏差
- Provide a more accurate prediction of future fund returns: 为未来的基金回报提供更准确的预测
- **√Suffer from style drift:** 风格偏移的影响(FOF 投资了很多对冲基金,如果其中的一支对冲基金发生了风格偏移,则这种情况在 FOF 整体上的体现并不明显)
- ✓More highly correlation with equity markets: 与股票市场的相关性更高(过于追求分散化导致)
- **Vo lock-up period or minimum lock-up period**: 无锁定期或很短的锁定期
- ◆ ★Empirical studies have found that:实证研究发现
 - Funds with quarterly lock-ups have higher returns than similar-strategy funds with monthly lock-ups: 锁定期长的对冲基金收益率更高(锁定期不一定越长越好,因为流动性不好)
 - Young funds outperform old funds on a total-return basis: 新的对冲基金表现往往好于以前老的基金
 - On average, large funds underperform small funds: 平均来看,大型基金表现好差于小型基金

注意: 对冲基金在进行估值时,假设所有的钱都是自有资金(equity/基于 AUM),不考虑杠杆金额(as if the asset was fully paid for)

◆ ★★使用 Sharpe ratio 评估对冲基金业绩的一些限制(limitation):

Sharpe ratio= (annualized rate of return - annualized risk-free rate)/annualized standard deviation

- **√Time dependent** (the overall sharp ration increases proportionally with the square root of time): 长期的 sharpe ratio 比短期的 sharpe ratio 数值大,SRM=(RP-Rf)/ σ M,SRY=(12RP-12Rf)/ √ 12 σ M
- **√** Has an **asymmetrical return distribution**: 不对冲的收益率分布,SR 要求正态分布,对冲基金通常是尖峰肥尾负偏
- ✓ Illiquid holding bias:对冲基金持有的资金可能流动性不好,导致定价不准确,可能会影响 RP的估计
- Are overestimated when investment returns are <u>serially correlated</u>: 序列相关导致收益率被高估(线性差补)
- For Stand-alone investments: sharpe ratio 不能把各年的表现连在一起,即不能(1+r1)(1+r2)...
- Has been found to have predictive ability for hedge funds: sharpe ratio 对于对冲基金业绩的解释力度不高

注意: sharpe ratio 可被人为的操控 (SR can be gamed)

- ✓Lengthen measurement period: 拉长评估时间, 自然 SR 的值会上升
- 【Return smooth: 平滑收益率,对流动性较差的资产进行收益率平滑,高估收益率
- ✓ Short OTM option: 做空或卖掉一些价外期权, 当期就收到行权费, 操纵组合收益率
- 在计算 RP 时会剔除一些极端不利的收益,例如:超过三倍标准差的收益率都不核算(cherry picking)

★Rolling return: 滚动收益,例如: 以 9 个月为单位,计算 1-9 月的收益率相加取平均,下一期为 2-10 月的收益率相加取平均(去除一个旧的,加入一个新的)

结论: rolling return 可以显示基金经理的收益是否有一致性(consistent the returns are over the investment period),以及是否受周期性影响(any cyclicality in the returns)

- ◆ Benchmarks of hedge funds: 对冲基金基准的偏差(Biases)
 - Relevance of past data on performance: 依赖过去的业绩表现(所有指数都是用历史数据编制的)
 - ★Popularity Bias: 流行性偏差,对冲基金指数可以按市值加权,如果有几支基金表现特别好,因此其基金规模会一直增大,因此其对指数的影响会越来越大(size 大, market-value 大,影响大)
 - Survivorship bias: 生存者偏差,导致收益率高估
 - Stale Price Bias:过时价格偏差,流动性不好导致的偏差,依赖估值技术,可能造成收益率高估
 - Backfill Bias (Inclusion Bias): 回填偏差,导致收益率高估

结论: 1.对冲基金有一定的分散化效果; 2.对冲基金的 FOF 分散化效果有限; 3.分散化效果更好的策略: Equity Market Neutral、Convertible Arbitrage、Global Macro

五. Managed futures: 管理期货

★管理期货<u>属于 global macro 的子策略(sub-strategy)</u>,主要投资衍生品: 1.currency; 2.financial(国债期

货/股指期货等); 3.diversified (commodity futures)

◆ Managed futures 与对冲基金的相同点和不同点:

Similarities (相同点):

- limited partnerships: 有限合伙
- Compensation arrangements: 薪酬结构
- actively managed: 主动管理
- absolute return: 绝对收益

★Differences (不同点):

- trade exclusively in derivative markets: 管理期货大量投资 于衍生品市场,但对冲基金也可能投资现货
- 对冲基金关注 individual securities; 管理期货关注 baskets of assets (研究宏观经济,关注被低估的大类资产)
- 对冲基金关注 micro (security) stock and bond markets; 管理期货关注 macro (index) stock and bond markets
- ◆ ★Types of managed futures investments classified by investment style: 管理期货根据投资风格分类:
 - Systematic trading strategies: 套利策略 (无风险/统计套利)
 - Discretionary trading strategies: 主观投资
- ◆ Investment characteristics: 衍生品市场是零和游戏(zero-sum games),但管理期货仍然可以长期获得正的收益的原因:
 - ★sufficient number of hedgers or other users of the markets: 市场上的参与者并不都是基于投资目的,有的参与者是为了对冲风险(目的是对冲风险,因为降低了风险,因此愿意支付一定的 premium)
 - traders take short positions: 因为市场上有的参与者不能做空
 - ★不同类型的 investor/hedger 对 futures 的定价模型是不同的

结论: 管理期货的主要目标是分散化(useful in diversifying)

- 六. Distressed securities: 投资陷入财务困境的公司 (赌公司的破产重组是否成功)
- ◆ 陷入财务困境公司的投资者:
 - Hedge fund structure:对冲基金, passive 投资,不参与破产重组进程
 - Private equity fund structure: 私募股权投资, active 投资,参与破产重组进程
- ◆ ★Types of assets distressed securities: 陷入困境公司的标的类型:
 - The publicly traded debt and equity: 债权和股权
 - Orphan equity: 孤儿股,重组完成后的公司的股权
 - Bank debt and trade claims: 银行坏账
 - Lender of last resort: 作为陷入困境公司的最后借款人
 - 投资风险比较大,会使用一些衍生品进行对冲(derivative instruments)
- ◆ Investment characteristics: 投资陷入困境公司的特征
 - unable to hold below-investment-grade: 有的投资者不能参与投资级以下的标的,例如:银行,保险公司
 - might be mispriced: 指 Orphan equity 会被错误定价
 - specialist skills and deep experience in credit analysis and business valuation: 在信用分析和商业估值方面要有特别的技能和深度的经验
 - Illiquidity: 流动性差
 - Return distribution has **negative skewness** and **positive kurtosis**: 收益率分布负偏高峰
- ◆ ★★Strategies of distressed securities investing:陷入困境公司的投资策略
 - Long-only value investing: 只做多的投资方法
 - ✓ High-yield investing: 高收益
 - ✓ orphan equity investing: 可投资重组后公司的股票
 - ★Distressed debt arbitrage: 操作方法: long debt&short equity, 如果公司变好了,债权人先拿到钱赚的多,equity 会有一定亏损; 如果公司变的更差了,equity 跌的更多,short equity 赚的多,debt 会有一定亏损
 - Private equity: 介入破产重组的进程 (active approach),可以成为主要的贷款人 (major creditor),对董事会施加影响力,帮助公司去恢复或重组 (influences and assists in the recovery or reorganization process)

- prepackaged bankruptcy: 破产前重组,属于 active approach,是 Private equity 的一种变形。具体作法: 在申请破产保护之前,先跟股东和债权人商定一个破产重组方案(达成共识),接下来破产重组成功的可能性会增高
- ◆ ★Risks in distressed debt investing: 投资陷入困境公司的风险:
 - Event risk:事件风险,例如:重组不成功
 - Market liquidity risk: 市场的流动性风险,陷入困境公司的资产流动性很差
 - Market risk: 市场风险
 - ★J factor risk (judge factor risk):法官因素风险,法官是否认可破产重组方案的风险,J代表 judge

SS 14: RISK MANAGEMENT

R27 Risk Management: 风险管理

- ◆ Risk Management Process: 风险管理的流程
 - The identification of exposures to risk: 识别有哪些风险敞口
 - The establishment of appropriate ranges for exposures: 建立风险敞口可接受的范围
 - The continuous measurement of these exposures: 持续度量这些风险敞口
 - The execution of appropriate adjustments whenever exposure levels fall outside of target ranges: 敞口的级别低于目标范围时进行适合的调整
- ◆ Evaluate A Risk Management System: 评估风险管理系统
 - Identify each risk factor to which the company is exposed: 识别公司暴露的每个风险因素
 - Quantify each exposure's size in money terms: 用货币为单位量化每个敞口
 - Map these inputs into a risk estimation calculation: 将输入数据映射到风险评估计算
 - Identify overall risk exposures as well as the contribution to overall risk deriving from each risk factor: 识别总体风险敞口,以及从每个风险因素对总体风险的贡献度
 - Set up a process to report on these risks periodically to senior management, who will set up a committee of division heads and executives to determine capital allocations, risk limits, and risk management policies: 建立定期向高级管理层报告这些风险的流程,高级管理人员将设立一个高管委员会和负责人,以确定资本分配、风险限制和风险管理政策
 - Monitor compliance with policies and risk limits: 监控政策和风险限制的执行
- ◆ Risk Management Governance: 风险的治理

Governance	Description	★ Characteristics
	由集中的的风险管理部门,负责监	● Permit economies of scale: 规模经济效应
	督并最终控制所有组织的风险活	• Enterprise-level risk estimates may be lower
Cantanaliand	动	than those derived from individual units: 公
Centralized		司层面的风险可能要小于单项风险的加总(不
集中化		同的部门可能有自然对冲)
		Put the responsibility on a level closer to senior
		management, which is deemed reasonable: 由高
		级经理管理风控部门,管理更有效
	不同投资品由各自的风控部门进	Allowing the people closer to the actual risk taking to
Decentralized	行管理,每个部门的独立计算和报	more directly manage it: 每个部门更加了解实际的
分散化	告其风险	风险情况,便于直接管理(隐含假设:所有部门的
		ρ=1,即所有风险完全正相关,但正常情况下这
		种估计是高估的)

- ◆ ERM (Enterprise Risk Management): 企业全面风险管理,其流程与一般的风险管理流程类似,其中包括资本分配(allocation of capital),即将不同的风险预算分配到不同的投资品中
- ◆ Risk Types: 风险的分类

★ Financial Risks	Non Financial Risks	Other Risks
Market risk	Operational or operations risk	ESG (environmental, social, governance) risk
Credit Risk	Settlement risk	Performance netting risk
Liquidity risk	Model risk	Settlement netting risk
	Sovereign risk	
	Regulatory risk	
	Tax/Accounting/Legal/Contract risk	

- ◆ ★Financial Risks: 金融风险
 - Market risk: 所有投资标的的价格发生变化,只要其价格受供需(supply and demand)的影响,

与 interest rates, exchange rates, equity prices, commodity prices 相关,market risk 是最大的风险组成部分(largest component of risk),market risk 是一个连续的风险

- **Credit Risk**: 也称为 counterparty risk,指对手方没有按合约规定,履行相应的职责,credit risk 是第二大的风险组成部分(second largest financial risk),credit risk 是一个非 0 即 1 的风险(**binary-a risk**),通常是单边的,即赚钱的一方有 credit risk(例外: currency swap)
- **Liquidity risk**: 在短时间内无法以公允价格去买或卖一项资产的风险(narrow bid-ask spread 说明市场流动性好)

考法: 涉及的投资品一般都有 market risk; Bond 和 OTC 的衍生品有 credit risk; real estate, hedge fund, commodities (主要指现货), OTC 的衍生品, 艺术品, 红酒, 名表有 liquidity risk

◆ Non Financial Risks: 非金融风险

- **〈Operational or operations risk**:操作风险,由于人为的操作失误所带来的风险
- **√Settlement risk**: 也称为 Herstatt risk,例如:清算窗口未开启的时间内,银行倒闭,即无法提供结算的动作所带来的风险,常见于外汇交易和 OTC 衍生品交易,解决方法: central counterparty(中央清算),netting arrangements(差价结算),periodically mark to market(定期盯市),continuously linked settlement(双方同时结算)
- **√ Model risk**:由于模型的问题所带来的风险,通常指估值模型,分为两个方面:construction模型没建好和Inputs输入有问题
- **Sovereign risk**: 主权风险,指政府未偿还其所欠债务的风险,即国家层面的 credit risk,例如: 国债违约
- Regulatory risk:投资品隶属于不同的监管机构,因为监管的差异所带来的风险
- Tax/Accounting/Legal/Contract risk: 指税务制度,会计制度,法律发生变化所带来的风险
- Political Risk: 政治风险,由于政治环境的改变所带来的风险
- **VESG** (environmental, social, governance) risk: 社会责任风险,投资要关注社会责任
- **√Performance netting risk**:整体组合中有一些基金经理业绩好,拿到业绩奖金,但更多基金经理业绩差,因此整体组合业绩是差的,即整体业绩差,却付出业绩奖金的风险
- **√** Settlement netting risk: 也称为 netting risk, 例如: A 公司欠 B 公司\$1M, B 公司欠 C 公司\$1M, B 公司协商 A 公司直接将钱还给 C 公司(三角债),但此时 A 公司倒闭了,B 公司拿不回 A 公司的欠款,又要支付给 C 公司欠款的风险

◆ Measuring Risks: 风险的度量

Measuring risks focused particularly on measuring market and credit risk: 衡量风险,特别聚焦在衡量市场风险和信用风险

- ◆ ★Tools to measure market risks: 度量市场风险的工具
 - Volatility: Standard deviation to measure price: 价格的标准差,即 σ
 - Tracking error: Standard deviation of excess return: 超额收益的标准差(超出基准部分的波动性),即σ(R_P-R_B)
- ◆ Two forms of exposure to loss from market risks: 市场风险损失的两种表现形式
 - First-order projections: beta for stock, duration for bonds, delta for options
 - **Second-order projections**: convexity for bonds, gamma for options (还要考虑资产间相关系数)
- ◆ ★★★Measuring Risks -VAR:在险价值
- ◆ VaR (Value at Risk): **在险价值**,表示在一定**概率水平**(specific probability)下,在一段期限(time period)内产生的最小期望损失(minimum expected loss)

VaR 的写法:

The 1-day, 1% VAR of a portfolio is \$2.6M

有两个纬度的解读(dual interpretation):

投资组合未来 1 天之内,有 99%的概率,最大损失\$2.6M 投资组合未来 1 天之内,有 1%的概率,最小损失\$2.6M

◆ VaR 的要素:

- 损失可用总资产的百分比(percentage terms/相对)或具体数额体现(currency units/绝对)
- 衡量最小损失,也是未预期(unexpected)的损失

● 必须要规定一个时间期限(time horizon),规定一个概率(显著性水平 alpha)

◆ VaR 缺点:

- VaR 的时间期限选择必须与实际情况相符,例如:逐日盯市的资产就需要选择一天的 VaR
- 显著性水平会影响 VaR 的数值,通常显著性水平变小,VaR 会变大(概率越低越保守)
- VaR 只衡量损失,因此他只衡量左边的尾巴(left-tail)
- VaR 的符号用正值表示(绝对值),代表损失
- 两个组合相同时间的 5%的 VaR 相同,此时不能分辨哪个组合风险小,因此需要再研究 (should be examined) 左尾发生极端损失的概率,才能分辨哪个组合风险更小

◆ VaR 的三种计算方法:

★analytical method(分析法/参数法): 也称为 variance-covariance/delta normal method 重要假设: 收益率要服从正态分布(normal distribution)

 $VaR=|\mu-Z\times\sigma|$,即组合均值(E(R))减去(Z值×组合标准差)

注意: 如果均值和标准差是带有单位的,则计算出的 VaR 就是带有单位的;如果均值和标准差是百分比的形式,那么计算出的 VaR 也是百分比的形式(VaR 虽然代表损失,但计算结果全部用绝对值表示)备注: 单尾情况下 1%VaR 对应的 Z 值为 2.33;5%VaR 对应的 Z 值为 1.65;10%VaR 对应的 Z 值为 1.28注意: 对于非常短期的 VaR(very short period (1-day)),通常是忽略 μ 的,因为从统计学角度一天之内不能获得一个显著的不等于 0 的 return,如果考试中计算一天的 VaR,如果没有给定 μ,默认 μ = 0时间调整: 已知一年的期望收益率(均值),以及一年的标准差,求解每周的 VaR,思路,先求出每周收益率和每周标准差,再套公式计算 VaR。其中,周收益率=年化收益率/52,周标准差=年标准差/√52注意: 月标准差=年标准差/√12,天标准差=年标准差/√250(通常股票市场一年有 250 个交易日)备注: VaR 时间调整的方法称为平方根法则(前提:每天的收益率是独立的,且每天的收益率分布相同)

- **♦** Advantages of the analytical method:
 - Easy to calculate and easily understood as a single number: 容易计算,容易理解
 - Allows modeling the correlations of risks: 考虑了模型之间风险因素的相关性,解释: VaR 的公式本质为 VaR= | μ p—Z × σ p | ,其中 σ p 会考虑各资产之间的相关系数
 - Can be applied to shorter or longer time periods as relevant: 期限灵活,可长可短
- **♦** ★Disadvantages of the analytical method:
 - Assumes normal distribution of returns: 假设收益率服从正态分布(现实中并不可靠)
 - ✓ Some securities have **skewed returns**: 有些证券收益率是有偏度的
 - ✓ leptokurtosis (fat tails): 有些资产呈现出尖峰肥尾
 - ✓ **delta-normal method**:期权的收益率是非正态分布的,如果组合中含有期权,则需要先将组合的 delta 调整为 0 再计算 VaR
 - The difficulty of estimating standard deviation in very large portfolios:资产很多的投资组合其标准差很难估计

补充: 20 个资产组合中协方差项有(20×19)/2=190 个, 方差项有 20 个

Historical method(历史法): 计算一天的 5%的 VaR,找出近 100 天的损益情况,按损失从大到小进行排序,5%的 VaR 可理解为: 一天之内 5%的概率出现的损失比当前大,换言之 100 天之内至少有 5 天的收益率比当前小,因此数出数序中的第 5 个数据,即为 VaR 的值,如果计算结果不是整数,例如计算出的数字是 4.5,此时有两种方法: 1)选择更为保守的数据,即第 4 个(更大的损失); 2)取第 4 个和第 5 个数据的平均值

- **♦** Advantages of the historical method:
 - Very easy to calculate and understand: 容易计算,容易理解
 - Does not assume a returns distribution: 不需要收益率的分布假设
 - Can be applied to different time periods according to industry custom: 期限灵活,可长可短
- **♦** Disadvantage of the historical method:
 - Relies completely on events of the past: 假设历史会重演(数据性质发生改变时,就不能使用历史法,另外当历史数据太少时也不能使用)

Monte Carlo method(蒙特卡罗模拟法):假设价格从第 0 天到第 100 天的随机变动符合几何布郎运行(步长越短越好),可以模拟出多个路径样本,这些样本的终值构成了一个分布,基于此分布计算其 VaR 的值,其计算公式 $VaR=|E(Rp)-Z\times\sigma|\times NP$ (与分析法方法相同,但思想不同)

重要假设:假设**输出的分布是服从正态分布的**(现实中并不一定)

The **primary advantage** of the Monte Carlo method **is also its primary disadvantage**: 蒙特卡罗模拟法的优点就是其缺点

- **♦** Advantages of the Monte Carlo method:
 - any distributional assumption: 任意收益率分布假设
- **♦** Disadvantages of the Monte Carlo method:
 - GIGO (Garbage in, garbage out): 输入数据有问题,输出结果也会有问题
 - Complexity falsely leads to overconfidence of the accuracy of the outcomes: 复杂性错误地导致对结果准确性的过度自信
 - Costly in complex situations: 复杂情况下成本很高

备注:蒙特卡罗模拟是非常复杂的,人在做困难的事情时会有一个偏差,即认为我为这件事付出了很大的努力,那么这件事情的成功是必然的

★Advantages and Limitations of VAR: VaR 总体的优点和限制

♦ Advantages:

- Industry standard for risk assessment: 评估风险的行业标准
- Simple to understand and contain nearly all risks:简单数字,包含了几乎所有的风险
- Useful for asset allocation: 用于资产配置

♦ Limitations:

- ★VaR does not estimate potential losses over longer time horizons where moves **may be extreme**: 没有估计较长时间内发生极端事件的潜在损失
- VaR does not take account of the relative liquidity of different risk positions: 没有考虑不同风险头寸的流动性问题
- Previous moves in market risk factors may not produce accurate predictions of all future market moves:
 以前的市场风险因素可能无法准确预测未来的市场走势
- Backtesting: 例如: 通过计算得到 100 天内 5%的 VaR 值,再通过查询过去 100 天中第 5 多的损失的数据,与计算出的 VaR 进行比较,看两者相差多少,用以确认计算出的 VaR 是否准确
- ◆ VAR should not be used in isolation but in combination with other tools and actions: VaR 不应该单独 使用,应该和其它的工具结合使用,与 VaR 结合的一些工具:
 - Incremental VaR (IVaR): 新加入资产产生新的 VaR 与之前的 VaR 的差值,用于衡量新加入资产对 VaR 的增量的影响,例如 AB 两个资产的 VaR_{AB},加入资产 C 后 VaR_{ABC},则 IVaR=VaR_{ABC}—VaR_{AB}, IVaR 可正可负,另外加入了一个对冲资产,此时 IVaR 可能为负
 - Cash flow at risk (CFAR):未来一段时间内,一定概率下,可能损失的现金流是多少
 - Earnings at risk (EAR):未来一段时间内,一定概率下,可能损失的会计利润是多少
 - **√Tail value at risk (TVaR)**等价于 **Conditional VaR (CVaR)**:显著性水平的点左边的所有损失的算数平均值,每个极端损失都要比 **VaR** 大,因此 **CVaR>VaR**,但 **TVaR** 并没有真正解决未考虑极端事件的缺点,因为其算法是根据概率加权平均,如果某个极端事件发生概率非常小,但损失巨大(概率×损失),根据公式其加权的值也不会很大,真如果这个极端事件真的发生了,会造成级大损失

注意: Historical method 的 TVaR 计算: 刨除分位点数字,其它的极端值求平均

- Credit VaR (default VaR): 用于衡量信用风险的 VaR
- ★Scenario Analysis: 场景分析,模拟一个场景,将对组合有影响的**多个因素**进行同时变化,并估计这些因素变化对组合结果的影响
- Stylized Scenarios: 风格化场景,通过模拟从经济特别好,到经济特别差,分为若干种情况,每种情况的 interest rate, exchange rate, stock price, commodity price 都处于不同情况,并估计这些因素的变动对组合结果的影响

- **Actual Extreme Events**:模拟实际发生过的极端情况,在这种情况下若干因素会如何变化,并以此估计对组合的影响(通常模拟的是极差的情况,但极差不一定是最差)
- Hypothetical Events:假设一个从未发生过的场景,但这种情况未来可能发生

Problems of Scenario Analysis:

- 不能精确衡量多个因素变化时的副产品(by-products),意为某个因素的变动,还会带来其它因素的变动,如果场景的构建不能成功预测一个因素对其它因素的影响,那么这个场景分析是有问题的
- 任何的场景分析都有潜在的弱点(Potential weaknesses)
- ★Stress Testing: 压力测试,分为三种 Stressing Models,不停的去改变某一个或几个相关参数,使得组合的表现越发的不寻常,以此来确认当参数如何变化时,组合的表现将触碰到 VaR 或容忍边界。例如:银行的房贷投资,预期未来房价下降 10%时的情况,有多少人会违约,此时银行是否能容忍这种风险
- Factor Push Analysis: 将一个或多个因素推到极端
- Maximum Loss Optimization:验证最大的潜在损失是多少(考虑了风控措施后的最大损失)
- Worst-case Scenario Analysis:将所有的因素推到极端(所有参数推到最差,其结果不一定最差)

Problems of Stress Testing: 压力测试的一些问题(压力测试带有主观成份)

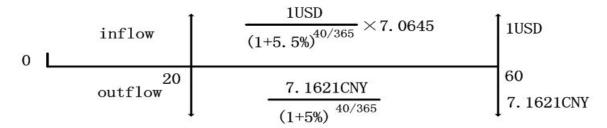
- Incorrect inputs and assumptions: 错误的输入或假设
- User bias:每个用户对极端的定义是不同的
- Some factors have differing or even opposite effects on values: 各个因素之间可能会反相作用,并不一定会同时达到极端值
- ◆ Two Dimensions of Credit Risk: 信用风险的两个维度
 - The event of loss: Usually defined in terms of probabilities
 - The amount of loss: Requires a recovery rate
- ◆ Credit risk 的分类:
 - Current credit risk (jump-to-default risk): 已经到期或可视为到期(美式期限,随时可以行权结束合约)的信用风险
 - ✓ Payments that are currently due: 付款已经到期
 - ✓ Current ability to pay: 当前有支付能力
 - ✓ May not be connected to future ability to pay: 可能与未来的支付能力无关
 - Potential credit risk: 还没有到期,但有可能发生的信用风险
 - ✓ Payments due in the future, must consider cross-default-provisions: 在未来支付,必须考虑交叉 违约条款
 - ✓ Difficult to determine: 很难定义(难以估计)

Forward	未到期时会有 Potential credit risk,到期时会有 Current credit risk,远期合约是净额结算,因		
Forward	此 credit risk 只会发生在一方。估值公式: Value=PV inflows - PV outflows		
	Interest rate swap: highest risk around the middle: 最高的信用风险在中段 ● Starts out low: 开始时 credit risk 很低		
	● Increases to middle of tenor: 中期 credit risk 会增长(最高)		
Swaps	● Decreases toward end of tenor:临近到期时 credit risk 降低(只剩下小部分)		
	Currency swap: both parties can be simultaneously exposed to credit risk; highest risk between		
	the middle and maturity of the agreement:双方同时有信用风险;最高的信用风险在中期和合		
	约到期之间		
	Only long position in option bears credit risk: 只有 long 方有 credit risk		
	European options: 未到行权日时只有 Potential credit risk, 到行权日时只有 Current credit r		
Options	American option:未到行权日时即有 Potential credit risk 也有 Current credit risk (未到期时必		
	须是 in the money 才有 current credit risk),到行权日时只有 Current credit risk		
	注意: Amount of Potential credit risk: 即为 option premium		

注意: 只有按<u>市场公允价值</u>签订的 forward 和 swap 合约,期初的 valuation=0

实例: You have entered into a 60-day forward contract to deliver 10,000,000 Chinese Yuan Renminbi for U.S. dollars at CNY 7.1621/USD. After 20 days the exchange rate is CNY 7.0645/USD. The risk-free rate is 5% in China and 5.5% in the U.S.

- Determine which side of the contract, if any, faces credit risk
- Evaluate the amount of the credit risk



Correct Answer:

The position who has a positive net cash flow faces credit risk.

Amount of credit risk per 1CNY=spot exchange rate/(1+RfR for US)t/T-forward rate/(1+RfR for China) t/T $7.0645/(1+5.5\%)^{40/365}$ - $7.1621/(1+5\%)^{40/365}$ =-0.100736CNY/USD

So, the amount of credit risk for 10,000,000 CNY=0.100736*CNY10million = CNY1,007,364.12

实例: Angus is the pay-fixed party, while Beatrice is paying floating, in a plain vanilla swap with quarterly settlements. There are two settlements remaining, the next in 30 days, the last in 120. LIBOR was **3.04%** at the last settlement date and the swap fixed rate is **3.0%**. Thirty-day and 120-day LIBOR are 3.05 and 3.10%, respectively.

- Determine which side (if either) of the contract faces potential credit risk
- Evaluate the amount of any credit risk

Angus Recive-floating

t-60 t 30 Pay-fixed

PV outflow=
$$\frac{1 \times 3\% \times (\%)}{1+r30 \times (30/360)} + \frac{1 \times 3\% \times (\%) + 1}{1+r120 \times (120/360)}$$

PV inflow= $\frac{1 \times 3.04\% \times (\%) + 1}{1+r30 \times (30/360)}$

Correct Answer:

1st Step: calculate the PV of swap contract

- For Angus: receive floating, pay fix (Assume principal is 100)
- So, PV of swap for A= floating cash inflow-fix cash outflow
- CF inflow= (100+3.04/4)/(1+3.05%)30/365=100.511526
- CF outflow=(3/4)/(1+3.05%)30/365+(100+3/4)/(1+3.1%)120/365=100.491981
- So, PV for A=100.511526-100.491981=0.019545 per 100 principal.

2nd Step: Judge which party faces credit risk

- In this example: A faces credit risk as the present value for A is positive.
- ◆ **Risk Budgeting:** Establishing objectives for individuals, groups, or divisions of an organization that take into account the allocation of an acceptable level of risk: 为一个组织的个人、团体或部门制定目标,考虑可接受的风险水平的配置(Risk budgeting 可以站在 organizational 角度或 portfolio management 角度进行评估)
- ◆ Benefits of risk budgeting:风险预算的好处
 - Manage these limits carefully, constantly monitor their implementation and instantly reported to

managers: 仔细管理这些限制,不断监视其贯彻情况,立即报告给基金经理

- Applied to allocating funds to portfolio managers:应用于组合基金经理的资金分配
- ★Other Methods (besides VaR) for managing market risk: 除了 VaR, 其它的管理市场风险的方法:
 - Position concentration limits: 头寸集中度的限制,例如: 在组合中规定一支股票的权重不能超过 10%
 - Liquidity limits:流动性限制,例如:一支股票当天的交易量,不能超过当天总交易量的5%(交 易量比较大,会带来比较大的市场冲击)
 - Performance stopout: 止损,例如: 损失超过最大的限制金额,交易就停止
 - Risk factor limits: 个人的风险因素,针对个人的某个风险敞口做限制
 - Leverage limits: 杠杆的限制,限制杠杆的大小
- ★Methods to control credit risk (besides VaR): 除了 VaR, 其它的控制信用风险的方法:
 - Limit exposure: 头寸限制,个人贷款的金额上限
 - Marking to market: 逐日盯市制度(每日结算的盈亏比较小,信用风险低)
 - Reducing credit risk with collaterals: 要求有抵押品,降低信用风险
 - Payment netting: 净额结算, 例如 IRS
 - Closeout netting: 抵消权,一种破产的处理流程(bankruptcy proceedings),例如: A 公司 持有 B 的债券价值\$100 万,此时 B 公司破产了,而 A 公司还欠 B 公司 80 万的货款,因此 B 公司在 申请破产清算时,可将对于破产企业 B 的债权与 A 公司欠破产企业的货款进行抵消,将剩下的债权, 作为申报破产财产会议管理人债权人会议上的金额,去参与B公司的破产财产分配,是一种对B公司 保护的条款
 - Minimum credit standards and enhanced derivative product companies: 最低债务评级(例如: 限制只能购买 BBB 级以上的债券)和强化衍生产品的公司
 - **Special purpose vehicles (SPV)**: 特殊目的体: 两个作用: 1.信用增值(Credit enhancement); 2.风险隔离(risk segregation):设立 SPV 的母公司出现问题,不可使用 SPV 的资产进行偿债
 - Enhanced derivatives products companies (EDPC): 信用增级的衍生产品
 - Credit derivatives: 信用衍生品,例如: CDS
- Transfer risk to others: 信用风险的转移
 - Total Return Swaps: 总收益互换,例如 bond 的收益换 equity 的收益
 - Credit Spread Options: 以 credit spread 为标的资产的期权, call on credit spread
 - Credit Spread Forwards: 以 credit spread 为标的资产的远期合约
 - Credit Default Swaps: 信用违约互换
- Measure Risk-Adjusted Performance: 衡量风险调整的业绩表现

√Setting Capital Requirements: 设定资本要求(补窟窿)

Nominal position limits: Benefit: simply defines the amount of capital that the individual portfolio: 根据投资大类的名义金额,进行 | 简单的定义资本的金额在个人组合中,例如: bond 配置 2 亿, equity

资本分配	配置 3 亿	
	Drawback: Not capture effectively the effects of correlation and	
	offsetting risks: 没有有效地捕捉相关性和风险抵消的影响	
VAR-based position limits:	Benefit: capital is allocated across business units or portfolio managers	
根据投资大类的 VaR, 进行资本	本 according to VAR: 根据 VaR 做资产配置 Drawback: failure to consider correlation of different positions	
分配		
	Benefit: ability to allocate capital so that maximum loss never exceeds the	
	firm's capital: 体现了使最大损失永远不会超过公司资本的资产配置	
Maximum loss limits:	能力	
根据每个部门可能出现的最大		
损失(止损点),进行资本分配	(不可靠的方法: 你认为的最大损失不一定是真实的最大损失,如果	
	所有的部门同时超过了估计的最大损失,此时资本不够覆盖这些损失,	
	即认为的自然对冲没有出现)	

SS 15: RISK MANAGEMENT APPLICATIONS OF DERIVATIVES

R28: Risk Management Applications of Forward and Futures Strategies: 远期和货期的风险管理应用策略 **备注:** 在本章中,**对冲是广义的概念**,可以指对冲掉相应的风险,也可以指把风险调整到需要的目标值

◆ ★Target duration: 用国债期货来调整债券的 duration

买进国债期货→远期买国债→duration 上升; 卖出国债期货→远期卖国债→duration 下降

$$N_f = \left(\frac{MDur_T - MDur_B}{MDur_f}\right) \times \left(\frac{B}{f}\right) \times \beta_y$$

MDur_T: 代表希望调整成的 target duration

MDur_B: 代表当前债券组合的 duration

MDur_f: 代表一份国债期货的 duration

Nf: 代表需要多少份国债期货来进行调整

B: 代表当前债券组合的价值

f(multiplier): 代表一份国债期货的价格

β y: 对冲系数: yield beta/hedge ratio,其含义是手里每持有一份债券,则需要用 b1 份国债期货去对冲。 **原理**: 以持有的债券为 Y,以调整 duration 的期货为 X,回归出方程: Y=b0+b1X+ ϵ ,其中的 b1 就是 yield beta,意为每份 Y 需要 b1 份 X 对冲(MVHR)。另外考试没有说明 yield beta 的值时,默认为 1 注意: MD_T—MD_P,决定 contracts 份数是正或负,如果是正数代表 long 国债期货;如果是负数代表 short 国债期货,即如果要调增 duration 则需要 long 国债期货;如果要凋减 duration 则需要 short 国债期货

◆ Adjusting the portfolio beta: 用股指期货去调整股票组合的 beta

 $N_f = \left(\frac{\beta_T - \beta_P}{\beta_f}\right) \left(\frac{S}{f}\right)$

Beta 的计算公式:

Beta=cov(i,m)/ σ^2 m= ρ im(σ i/ σ m)

注意: 调整后的 target beta 并不影响组 合中现货的 beta

β_T: 代表想要调整到的目标 beta

β_P: 代表当前股票组合的 beta

βf: 代表一份股指期货的 beta

S: 代表股票组合的价值

f: 股指期货对应的指数的价格=点数×倍数(multiplier)

注意:默认 yield beta=1,但现实中 yield beta 不一定就是 1

Stock Index Futures	Multipliers
S&P 500 Index	250
NASDAQ 100	100
DJIA Index	10

实例: A manager decides to adjust the beta on \$38,500,000 of large-cap stocks from its current level of 0.90 to 1.10 for the period of the next two months. It has selected a futures contract deemed to have sufficient liquidity; the futures price is currently \$275,000 and the contract has a beta of 0.95. Calculate the number of futures contracts.

Correct Answer:

Target beta =1.1

#Contracts=[(1.1-0.9)/0.95]×38500000/275000=29.47 long 29 contracts(这句话答题时要写上)

扩展:如果股指上涨2%,现货和期货赚多少钱?

现货部分: beta=0.9, 股指上涨 2%, 则 beta 赚 1.8%, 即现货赚 38500000×1.8%=693000 期货部分: beta=0.95, 股指上涨 2%, 则 beta 赚 1.9%, 即期货赚 29×275000×1.9%=151525

实例: The market as a whole increases by 4.4 percent. The stock portfolio increases to \$40,103,000. The stock index futures contract rises to \$286,687.50, an increase of 4.25 percent.

- The profit on the futures=29×(286,687.50-275,000.00)=338,937.50 (股指期货的收益)
- The return of the stock portfolio =40,103,000/38,500,000-1=0.0416(未调整 beta 的股票组合的收益率)
- Adding the profit from the futures gives a total market value of \$40,103,000.00+\$338,937.50 = \$40,441,937.50. The rate of return for the stock portfolio is \$40,441,937.50/\$38,500,000.00−1=0.0504 (调整 beta 的股票组合的收益率)
- Because the market went up by 4.4 percent and the overall gain was 5.04 percent, the effective beta of the

portfolio was 0.0504/0.044=1.15 (target beta=1.1, effective beta=1.15, 说明不能完美对冲)

- ◆ ★Effective Beta=%δportfolio value/%δindex value,考虑了股指期货和股票组合两者叠加的收益与 市场收益的关系
- ★对冲不一定完美的原因:
 - rounding in the futures position:凑整的因素,因为计算出的份数可能是 29.47,但实际中只能 long29 份, 因此调整后的 target beta 会有差别
 - portfolio and futures contracts are not perfectly correlated with the index: 股票组合与股指期货不 是完美的相关于股指,组合的 beta= $4.16/4.4=0.9455 \neq 0.9$,期货的 beta= $4.25/4.4=0.9659 \neq 0.95$

★Synthetic stock index fund and Synthetic Cash: 合成的股指基金和合成的现金

- Synthetic stock index fund:
 - Synthetic Equity = Long risk-free asset + Stock index futures
- **♦** Synthetic Cash:
 - Synthetic risk-free asset = long stock Stock index futures

备注:如果持有 risk-free asset,且看好未来 3 个月的股票市场,因此有两种方法操作: 1.直接使用 risk-free asset 去购买股票;2.购买股指期货,通常 CFA 协会认为第二种方法更好,因为 CFA 默认都是大资金量操 作,因此直接买卖股票会对市场造成比较大的冲击,所以通过 long stock futures 去合成一个股票的头寸 备注: CFA 三级中 cash 特指无风险资产

★Synthetic stock index fund

contracts
$$\frac{V(1+r)^T}{q \times f}$$
 $\frac{V(1+r)^T}{q \times f}$ T-bill futures 本身可获得的无风险收益 f: 股指期货一个点位的价格 q: 指数的倍数 (multiplier) $q \times f$ 股指期货的价格

V: 代表股票组合的价值

V(1+rf)^T: 表示使用 T-bill futures 去 long 股指期货,

(multiplier), q×f: 股指期货的价格

$$\star \qquad T_{\text{equitized}} = \frac{N_f \times q \times f}{(1+r)^T}$$

实例: A manager has \$120 m in Treasury bills with a yield of 3%. For the next six months, the manager wishes to have a synthetic equity position approximately equal to this value. The manager chooses S&P 500 Index futures, and that index has a dividend yield of 2%. The futures price is \$1,100, and the multiplier is \$250. Calculate the required number of contracts.

Correct Answer:

- 1. In six months, the bills will be worth: \$120,000,000(1.03)^{1/2}=\$121,786,699
- 2. The manager will purchase 443 futures contracts:

N=\$121,786,699/(1100×250)=442.86 , long 443 contracts(此时不是完美对冲)

3. 443 contracts will actually equitize \$120,037,739.30:

443×(1100×250)/1.03^{1/2}=\$120037739.30 (当金额为\$120,037,739.30 时,可通过 443 份合约完美对冲) We assume the manager purchases an additional \$37,739.30 in T-bills. (缺少的部分)

- ▶ 考试中出现以下三个条件,就使用 Synthetic stock index fund 的公式,其它情况使用 Adjusting the portfolio beta 的公式(Synthetic 关注定期调整;adjusting beta 关注短期调整)
 - 题目中出现了 synthetic 这个题眼;题目中给定了 rf 和时间段 T;题目中没给 β_T 和 β f

equity contracts =
$$-\frac{V(1+r)^T}{q\times f}$$
 | Synthetic risk-free asset = long stock - Stock index futures 持有股票,但不看好未来三个月的股票市场,因此可以 short 股指期货合成出 Synthetic risk-free asset

Synthetic risk-free asset = long stock - Stock index

可以 short 股指期货合成出 Synthetic risk-free asset

注意: 基金经理有明确目标,未来想要 synthetic 头寸,此时使用 Synthetic 公式;基金经理调节 duration 和 beta,认为市场会变动,但没有清楚的预期,此时使用 adjusting portfolio beta/target duration 公式

- ★Steps for Synthetically Altering Debt and Equity Allocations:债和股做对转(债和股收益率对转)
 - 原理:例如:从 equity 转换成 bond,第一步将 equity 的 beta 降成 0,变成 cash,再用 cash 买 duration,

实例: Given the data of a portfolio:

- Market value of the portfolio is \$80 million.
- The portfolio consists of 50% stock and 50% bonds.
- The beta of the stock position is 0.7.
- The modified duration of the bond position is 7.0.

A manager wishes to allocate 55% stock and 45% bond with the following futures contracts:

- The price of futures contract of which the underlying asset is the stock index is \$230,000 (including the multiplier), and its beta is 1.3.
- The price, modified duration, and yield beta of the futures contracts are \$135,000, 7.6, and 1, respectively. Identify the suitable strategy for the manager.

Correct Answer:

- The manager should long stock index futures and short bond futures if he wishes to increase the equity percentage in the portfolio.
- Decrease the bond percentage by \$80,000,000*5%=4,000,000.
- ✓ **Strategy**: Short 27 bond futures would make the duration of 5% decrease of bond position to zero.

$$\# \ bond \ futures = \left(\frac{MDur_T - MDur_B}{MDur_f}\right) \left(\frac{B}{f}\right) \beta_y = \left(\frac{0 - 7}{7.6}\right) \times \left(\frac{\$4,000,000}{\$135,000}\right) \times \left(1\right) = -27.29$$

• To increase the equity exposure also by \$4 million:

equity index futures =
$$\left(\frac{\beta_T - \beta_P}{\beta_f}\right) \left(\frac{S}{f}\right) = \left(\frac{0.7}{1.3}\right) \times \left(\frac{\$4,000,000}{\$230,000}\right) = 9.36$$

✓ **Strategy**: Long 9 stock index futures contracts.

总结: To transfer \$V from class A to class B, (两类资产相互转化需要先转换成 cash 再转换成另一类资产)

- use futures to first transfer \$V in class A to cash
- and then transfer \$V in cash to class B using index futures

例如: 从 mid-cap stock 转换成 small-cap stock,需要先 short mid-cap 的股指期权,把 beta 降成 0 变成 cash,再 long small-cap 的股指期权,把 beta 变成 small-cap 的 beta

实例: A manager has a \$30 million of large-cap companies would like to move half of the position to small-cap companies.

- The beta of the large-cap position is 1.05
- The average beta of small-cap stocks is 1.55
- The betas of the large- & small-cap futures contracts are 1.02 and 1.36, respectively.
- The large- and small-cap futures total prices are \$230,920 and \$200,780, respectively.

Identify the appropriate strategy.

Correct Answer:

• Firstly, convert the large-cap position to cash.

contracts large cap =
$$\left(\frac{\beta_{\rm T} - \beta_{\rm P}}{\beta_{\rm f}}\right) \left(\frac{S}{f}\right) = \left(\frac{0 - 1.05}{1.02}\right) \times \left(\frac{\$15,000,000}{\$230,920}\right) = -66.87$$

• Then, take long position on the small cap index.

$$contracts_{small\ cap} = \left(\frac{1.55 - 0}{1.36}\right) \times \left(\frac{\$15,000,000}{\$200,780}\right) = 85.15$$

◆ **Pre-investing: 预先投资**: 是期货合约中做多头寸的做法,建立一个敞口,将一笔还没有收到的现金头寸,转换合成 equity 或 bond 头寸(直接套 Adjusting the portfolio beta 和 Target duration 公式)

◆ **Pre-investing** is the practice of taking long positions in the futures contracts to create an exposure that converts a **yet-to-be-received** cash position into a synthetic equity and/or bond position.

实例: Assume \$10 million cash will be received in a month.

- The portfolio is 60% invested in stock with average beta of 0.82 & 40% invested in bonds with a duration of 3.1.
- The most appropriate stock index futures contract has a total price of \$230,000 and a beta of 1.1.
- The most appropriate bond index futures have a yield beta of 1.00, an effective duration of 7.0, and a total price of \$100,500.

Correct Answer:

• The equity position is 60% x \$10 million=\$6 million and bond position is 40% x \$10 million=\$4 million:

$$\text{\# stock futures} = \left(\frac{0.82 - 0}{1.1}\right) \times \left(\frac{\$6,000,000}{\$230,000}\right) = 19.44 \qquad \text{\# bond futures} = \left(\frac{3.1 - 0}{7}\right) \times \left(\frac{\$4,000,000}{\$100,500}\right) \times \left(1.0\right) = 17.62$$

- ◆ Weighting 和 duration 都要调节的思路: 一个组合有 50% bonds,duration=6; 50% stocks,beta=1.2,想要将债券的权重调整成 60%,且把 duration 调节为 7,先 short 股指期货将 10% stocks 的 beta 降成 0,再 long 国债期货将 10% cash 转换为 duration=6 的债券,完成权重的调节,最后 long 国债期货将 60% bonds 的 duration 升为 7,完成 duration 的调节,另外债期货的份数先保留两数小数,最后叠加再四舍五入,这样更为精确(先调权重,后调风险因子)
- ◆ Exchange rate risk: 汇率风险
 - Economic exposure: 受宏观经济影响所带来的敞口,例如:本币贬值,出口利好,进口利空
 - **Translation exposure**: 跨国贸易中的境外子公司与本国母公司合并报表时由外汇折算的差异所带来的敞口(会计意义上的敞口)
 - Transaction exposure: 由于非现金的货币性资产交易的汇总损益折算所带来的敞口(交易意义上的敞口)
- ◆ Strategies for hedging expected currency positions:对冲期望外汇头寸的策略

Contractual agreement	position	action
foreign currency inflow	long	short forward contract
foreign currency outflow	short	long forward contract

例如: 中国公司在三个月后会收到一笔美元,要管理这个汇率风险,此时应该三个月后 short 美元,即 short USD forward contract

- ◆ Hedging limitations: 对冲的限制(投资海外股票市场的两个风险: equity risk 和 foreign risk)
 - An equity investment in a foreign market has both **equity risk** and **foreign exchange risk**:海外投资股票市场会有股票的风险和汇率的风险
 - Two hedging strategies: 两种对冲策略
 - ✓ Manage market risk: short forward contracts on foreign market index
 - ✓ Manage currency risk: short forward contracts on the foreign currency
 - Hedging the foreign exchange risk of an equity portfolio with forward contracts is difficult because the precise value of the equity position in the future is unknown: 通过远期对冲国外股票头寸是很困难的,因为未来股票头寸精确的价值是未知的
- ◆ Hedging currency risk: 对冲货币风险 (解决对冲的限制问题)
 - ✓ **Hedging a minimum future value** below which they feel the portfolio will not fall: 对冲未来可能最小的头寸,即最低不会跌破的价值
 - ✓ Hedging the estimated future value of the portfolio: 对冲未来组合的预估值
 - ✓ **Hedging the initial value** (i.e., the principal): 对冲初始价值,即本金
 - ✓ Another proposed strategy is **doing nothing**: 什么也不做(两个原因: 1 对冲需要成本; 2 国际投资者会持有若干国家的资产,各国货币之间会自然对冲)
- ◆ Hedging with Futures or Forwards: 讨论使用期货合约还是远期合约进行对冲:

- Bond 和 equity 使用期货对冲
- 利率用远期对冲 (FRA)
- 货币用远期对冲

R29 Risk Management Applications of Option Strategies: 期权策略的风险管理应用

Call option

Long 方: C_T =max(0, S_T -X)

Short 方: C_T = $-max(0, S_T-X)$

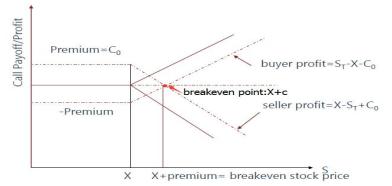
Breakeven point: X+c

考虑了期权费的情况:

Long 方: C_T =max(0, S_T -X)-c

Short $\dot{\pi}$: $C_T = -max(0, S_T - X) + c$

c: 表示 call premium



Put option

Long 方: P_T =max(0, X-S_T)

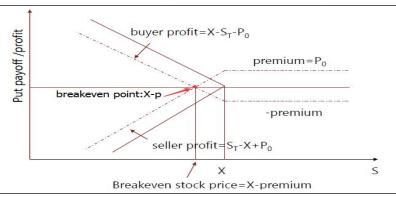
Short 方: P_T = $-max(0, X-S_T)$

Breakeven point: X-p 考虑了期权费的情况:

Long 方: P_T =max(0, X-S_T)-p

Short 方: P_T = $-max(0, X-S_T)+p$

p: 表示 put premium



Stock profit

Covered call

Stock price

一. exotic option: 奇异期权: 一些基础的期权的组合,也称为 exotic option strategy

Profit

\$0

Covered call: long stock+short call, 即 S-C, 与 short put 图形相同,股票主导的策略

 $Profit=S_T-S_0-max(0,S_T-X)+C$

Breakeven point: S₀-C (构建组合的成本点)

Maximum Loss: $-(S_0-C)$, 当股票价格为 0

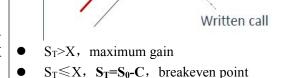
时损失最大(所有成本都亏)

Maximum Gain: X—(S_0 -C) (最大的收入 X 减去构建组合的成本)

意图: 持有股票的现货,看好股票,只是不认为股票会涨的太高,所以在高位 short call,放

弃掉高位的收益, 改去赚一个期权费

风险点: 股票现货涨的太高



Protective put: long stock+long put, 即 S+P, 与 long call 图形相同,股票主导的策略

Profit= S_T - S_0 + $max(0,X-S_T)$ -P

Maximum Gain: +∞

Breakeven point: S₀+P (构建组合的成本点)

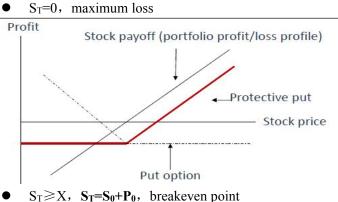
Maximum Loss: X—(S₀+P),以执行价卖出股

票获得的钱减去构建组合的成本

意图:看涨股票,但信心不强,担心下跌,因

此使用 long put 进行保护

风险点: 股票没有下跌, 浪费了期权费



51 21, 51 Suring oreaseven por

• $S_T < X$, maximum loss

备注: Covered call 与 short put 的图形相同,而 Protective put 与 long call 的图形相同,为什么不直接 short put 或 long call 是因为并不是从 0 开始构建组合,而是手中持有股票现货

Bull spread using call (牛市看涨差价期权): 顺势操作, long X_L call (顺势赚钱, 但期权费很贵), short X_H call (用于降成本)

 $Profit=max(0,S_T-X_L)-max(0,S_T-X_H)-C_L+C_H$

Max gain $(S_T>X_H): X_H-X_L+C_H-C_L$

Breakeven point $(X_L < S_T < X_H)$: $S_T = X_L + C_L - C_H$

Max loss $(S_T < X_L) : C_H - C_L$

意图: 看好股票,又认为不会涨过 X_H ,因此 short X_H call 来赚一个 C_H , 以此弥补 C_L 的成本

风险点: 1.跌至 X_L 以下; 2.涨过 X_H

Bull spread using put (牛市看跌差价期权): 逆势操作, short X_H put (赚更高期权费), long X_L put (用于降风险)

 $Profit=max(0,X_L-S_T)-max(0,X_H-S_T)+P_H-P_L$

Max gain $(S_T > X_H)$: $P_H - P_L$

Breakeven point $(X_L \le S_T \le X_H)$: $S_T = X_H + P_L - P_H$

 $Max loss (S_T < X_L) : X_L - X_H + P_H - P_L$

意图: 看好股票,short X_H put,赚取 P_H ,又怕下跌,因此花 P_L long X_L put 锁定最大损失

风险点: 1.股票跌破 X_H ; 2.股票没跌破 X_L

Bear spread using put (熊市看跌差价期权): 顺势操作,long X_H put (顺势赚钱,但期权费很贵),short X_L put (用于降成本)

意图:看空股票,long X_H put,会亏 P_H ,又不觉得会跌破 X_L ,因此 short X_L put 赚 P_L

Profit= $max(0,X_H-S_T)$ - $max(0,X_L-S_T)$ - P_H+P_L

Max loss $(S_T>X_H)$: P_L-P_H

Breakeven point $(X_L < S_T < X_H)$: $S_T = X_H - P_H + P_L$

Max gain $(S_T < X_L)$: $X_H - X_L + P_L - P_H$

风险点: 1.没跌破 X_H; 2.跌破了 X_L

Bear spread using call (熊市看涨差价期权): 逆势操作,short X_L call (赚更高期权费),long X_H call (用于降风险)

Profit= $max(0,S_T-X_H)$ - $max(0,S_T-X_L)$ + C_L - C_H

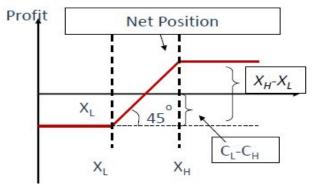
Max loss $(S_T>X_H)$: $X_L-X_H+C_L-C_H$

Breakeven point $(X_L < S_T < X_H)$: $S_T = X_L + C_L - C_H$

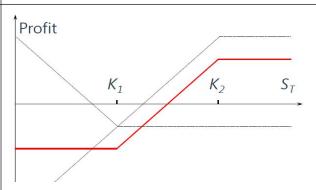
Max gain $(S_T < X_L)$: $C_L - C_H$

意图:看空股票,short X_L call 赚 C_L ,但又怕涨的太高,花 C_H long X_H call 锁定最大亏损

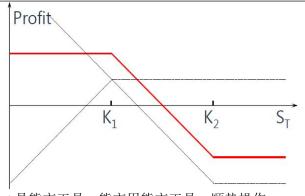
风险点: 1.涨过 X_L; 2.没涨过 X_H



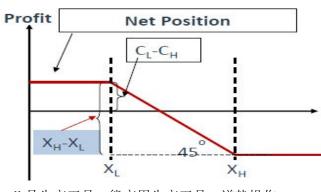
call 是牛市工具, 牛市用牛市工具, 顺势操作



put 是熊市工具, 牛市用熊市工具, 逆势操作



put 是熊市工具,熊市用熊市工具,顺势操作



call 是牛市工具,熊市用牛市工具,逆势操作

总结: 顺势操作以通过期权获得更高利润为主, 逆势操作以赚取更高的期权费为主

备注: bull call, bull put, bear put, bear call, 这四种交易策略属于以 spread 主导的策略,应用于小牛市和小熊市,也被称为垂直套利(vertical arbitrage)

Butterfly Spread Using Calls(蝶式看涨差价期

权): Long X_H call,Long X_L call,2 Short X_M call 满足: X_M =(X_H + X_L)/2,注意: $2C_M$ < C_H + C_L

 $\begin{aligned} & \text{profit=max}(0,\!S_T\text{-}X_L)\text{-}2\text{max}(0,\!S_T\text{-}X_M)\text{+}\text{max}(0,\!S_T\text{-}X_M)\text{+}\text{max}(0,\!S_T\text{-}X_M)\text{-}C_L\text{+}2C_M\text{-}C_H \end{aligned}$

Max loss $(S_T < X_L)$: $-C_H - C_L + 2C_M < 0$

BEP1 $(X_L < S_T < X_M)$: $S_T = C_L + C_H - 2C_M + X_L$

BEP2 $(X_M < S_T < X_H)$: $S_T = -C_L - C_H + 2C_M + X_H$

Max loss $(S_T>X_H)$: $-C_H-C_L+2C_M<0$

Max gain($S_T=X_M$): $X_H-X_M+2C_M-C_L-C_H$ 或

 X_M - X_L + $2C_M$ - C_L - C_H

Butterfly Spread Using Puts(蝶式看跌差价期

权): Long X_L put, Long X_H put, 2Short X_M put 满足: $X_M = (X_H + X_L)/2$, 注意: $2P_M < P_H + P_L$

 $\begin{aligned} & profit = max(0, X_L - S_T) - 2max(0, X_M - S_T) + max(0, X_H - S_T) - P_L + 2P_M - P_H \end{aligned}$

Max loss $(S_T < X_L)$: $-P_H - P_L + 2P_M < 0$

BEP1 $(X_L < S_T < X_M) : S_T = P_L + P_H - 2P_M + X_L$

BEP2 $(X_M < S_T < X_H)$: $S_T = -P_L - P_H + 2P_M + X_H$

Max loss $(S_T>X_H)$: $-P_H-P_L+2P_M<0$

Max gain $(S_T=X_M)$: $X_H-X_M+2P_M-P_L-P_H$ 或

 $X_M-X_L+2P_M-P_L-P_H$

Long straddle(骑跨式期权): 也称为long volatility 策略/做多波动率策略(初始净成本)

call 和 put 的执行价相同,即 $X_P=X_C$ **Profit=max(0,S**_T-**X)+max(0,X**-**S**_T)-**C-P**

Max profit: +∞

Max loss (S_T=X): P+C (成本点)

Breakeven point $(S_T < X)$: $S_T = X - (P + C)$

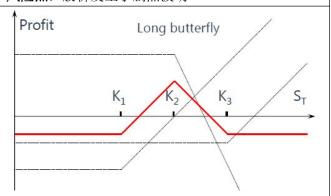
Breakeven point $(S_T>X)$: $S_T=X+(P+C)$

Short straddle: 头寸 short call+short put,做空波动率策略,图形为倒 V 型,当波动率很小时可以赚取两个期权费(初始净收入)

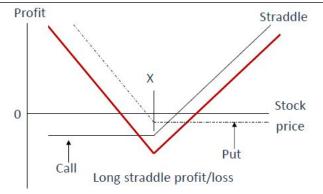
Profit Long butterfly

K₁ K₂ K₃ S_T

意图:认为股价不发生剧烈波动 **风险点**:股价发生了剧烈波动



意图:认为股价不发生剧烈波动 **风险点**:股价发生了剧烈波动



意图: 股价发生剧烈波动(bets on volatility) 风险点: 股份没有发生剧烈波动

备注: long straddle 与 short butterfly 对赌的都是股价剧烈波动

备注: bull call, bull put, bear put, bear call, long/short butterfly, long/short straddle, 都是应用于对市场方向有观点的情况

Collar: long stock,long X_L put,short X_H call,以股票为主导的策略

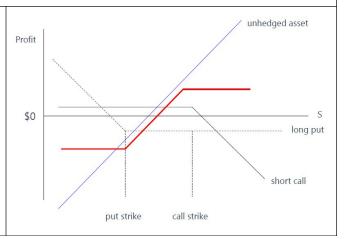
两个角度理解: 1.Covered call (S-C), 其最大的风险在于股价下降,可以再 long put, 对冲掉了股价下降的风险 (S-C+P); 2.protective put (P+S) 其成本比较高,可以再 short call,降低成本 (S-C+P),其图形与 bull spread 相同

Payoff: $max(0,X_P-S_T)-P+(St-S_0)-max(0,S_T-X_C)+C$

Max profit (St> X_C) : X_C - S_0 -P+C

Breakeven point $(X_P < St < X_C)$: $S_T = S_0 + P - C$

Max loss (St<X_P) : X_P-S₀-P+C

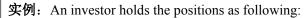


Box spread strategy (盒式差价期权): 顺势而为, bull spread using call+bear spread using put 组合在一起,其头寸为: long C_L , short C_H , long P_H , short P_L , 且 C_L = P_L , C_H = P_H

Profit: -C_L-P_H+C_H+P_L+X_H-X_L (X_H-X_L+net premium), 其 profit 为无风险收益

逆势而为,bull spread using put+bear spread using call, 其头寸: short P_H ,long P_L ,short C_L ,long C_H

意图:验证 call 和 put 的定价是否公允,寻找套利机会



- Long a call and short a put with the same strike price of $X_L = 20 .
- Call premium $C_{L0} = \$ 1.36$, put premiums $P_{L0} = \$ 0.42$.
- Short a call and long a put with the same strike price of $X_H = 24 .
- Call premium $C_{H0} = \$0.17$, put premiums are $P_{H0} = \$3.10$.
- The options all expire in two months.
- The risk-free rate is 4%.

Calculate the profit and the annualized return on the investment and determine if the investment is good or not.

Correct Answer:

• The initial cost: + \$0.42 - \$ 1.36 + \$0.17 - \$3.1 = \$3.87. So we can get that the holding period return is 0.13/3.87 = 0.03359. As it is a 2-month return, the annualized return is $1.03359^{12/2} \cdot 1 = 0.2192$.

(净利润是 0.13,总成本是 3.87,因此 HPY=0.13/3.87 = 0.03359, EAR=21.92%>4%)

• Because the annualized return > the risk-free rate of 4%, this would be a good strategy.

备注: EAR=(1+HPY)^{365/t}-1

- 二. Interest rate options(IRO): 利率期权: 以 LIBOR 利率为标的资产的期权(与借款上浮无关)
- ◆ IRO call: 当利率上涨时会赚钱的一方→担心利率上涨→借浮动利率的一方(borrower)
 - Payoff= $(NP) \times [max(0, LIBOR strike rate)] \times (D / 360)$
 - Borrower 期初 long IRO call 支出 premium,相当于在未来递减借到的 NP,即收: NP-FV(premium)
- ◆ IRO put: 当利率下跌时会赚钱的一方→担心利率下跌→贷浮动利率的一方(lender)
 - payoff= $(NP) \times [max(0, strike rate LIBOR) \times (D / 360)]$
 - Lender 期初 long IRO put 支出 premium,相当于在未来<u>增加借出 NP</u>,即支: -NP-FV(premium)

注意: LIBOR 是 360 天单利计算; effective interest rate 是 365 天复利计算

实例: GF determines that it will <u>borrow \$40 million at LIBOR plus 200 bps on 20 August</u>. The loan will be repaid with a single payment of principal and interest 180 days later on 16 February.

To protect against increases in LIBOR between 14 April and 20 August, GF buys a call option on LIBOR with an exercise rate of 5% to expire on 20 August with the underlying being 180-day LIBOR. The LIBOR on 14 April is <u>5.5%</u>. The call premium is <u>\$100,000</u>. The LIBOR on 20 August is <u>8%</u>.

Calculate the payoff and effective rate of the loan.

Correct Answer:

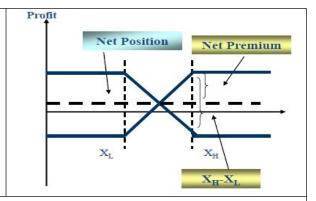
• For LIBOR=8%, the call payoff at expiration is:

 $40,000,000 \times max(0, LIBOR-0.05) \times (180/360) = 40,000,000 \times max(0,0.08-0.05)(180/360) = 400,000$

- (计算 IRO call 的 payoff,行权与否与 LIBOR 上浮无关)
- The premium compounded from 14 April to 20 August at the original LIBOR of 5.5% plus 200 bps is:

\$100,000×[1+(0.055+0.02)(128/360)]=\$102,667 (计算期权费的 FV)

So, the call costs \$100,000 on 14 April, which is equivalent to \$102,667 on 20 August. The effective loan proceeds are \$40,000,000-\$102,667=\$39,897,333.



The loan interest is:

\$40,000,000×(0.08+0.02)(180/360)=\$2,000,000 (计算借款本身的利息,要考虑 LIBOR 上浮的基点)

● The loan interest minus the call payoff is the effective interest. The effective rate on the loan is: [(\$40,000,000+\$2,000,000-\$600,000)/39897333]^{365/180}-1=7.79% (计算有效利率)

(分子: 本金+总利息,包括: NP+利息—IRO call 赚取的部分; 分母: 到手的 NP,即 NP-FV(premium), 其值为持有期有效利率,再进行年化即可)

四个考试时要注意的事宜:

- 1) 如果是 lander 计算 effective interest rate, 分母是所有的支出,包括: NP+long IRO put 的 FV(premium)
- 2) 计算 IRO call 的 FV(premium),要用 current LIBOR 单利计算
- 3) 判断是否行权(行权利率直接与到期日 LIBOR 比较,不考虑 LIBOR 上浮的问题)
- 4) 计算 effective interest rate 时用复利,其它用 LIBOR 时都用单利

◆ Options on rate vs. options on bond price

Options(long 方)	If rates increase and bond prices decrease	If rates decrease and bond prices increase
Value of call on LIBOR	Increases	Decreases
Value of put on bond price	Increases	Decreases
Value of payer swaption	Increases	Decreases
Value of put on LIBOR	Decreases	Increases
Value of call on bond price	Decreases	Increases
Value of receiver swaption	Decreases	Increases

总结: 买入 call on LIBOR 等效于 put on bond 等效于 payer swaption(利率上涨赚钱)

三. Interest rate caps, floors, and collars

- ◆ cap, floor 与 IRO call, IRO put 的区别:
 - Cap 由一系列的 caplets 构成, floor 由一系列 floorlets 构成, cap 和 floor 可以多次行权
 - Cap 和 floor 是 OTC 市场交易,是客制化的(customized),与贷款现金流时间匹配,贷款开始时签订 cap 和 floor,因此没有期权费的 FV 调整
 - borrower 需要 cap (封顶); lender 需要 floor (保底)
- ◆ The value of a cap or a floor is just the sum of the values of the individual caplets or floorlets: cap 或 floor 的价值就是各自 caplets 或 floorlets 的价值相加
- cap buyer payoff: $P=max(0, NP \times (LIBOR cap strike) \times actual days /360)$
- floor buyer payoff: P=max (0, NP×(floor strike LIBOR)×actual days /360)

实例: Suppose that a 1-year cap has a cap rate of 8% and a notional amount of \$100 million. The frequency of settlement is quarterly, and the reference rate is 3-month LIBOR. The contract begins on January 1.

Determine the payoffs on April 1, July 1, October 1, and the following January 1 for the indicated LIBOR rates on those dates in the figure below.

LIBOR and Payoff Dates for an Interest Rate Cap			
Date	3-Month LIBOR	Dt	Payoff
Jan.1	7.7%	_	_
Apr.1	8.0%	90	0
July.1	8.4%	91	0
Oct.1	8.6%	92	$(8.4\%-8\%)\times(92/360)\times NP$
Jan.1(Year2)	8.3%(无用)	92	$(8.6\%-8\%)\times(92/360)\times NP$

注意: 浮动利率由期初利率决定当期的定价

Correct Answer:

• On January 1, there is no payoff and the cap's premium is paid. The payoff on April 1 would be based upon LIBOR = 7.7% and D1 = 90:

payoff on April 1 = $100,000,000 \times [max(0, 0.077 - 0.08) \times (90/360)] = 0$

- The remaining payoffs are:
- payoff on July $1 = 100,000,000 \times [max(0, 0.080 0.080) \times (91/360)] = 0$
- payoff on Oct. $1 = \$100,000,000 \times [\max(0, 0.084 0.080) \times (92 / 360)] = \$102,222$
- payoff on Jan. $1 = \$100,000,000 \times [\max(0, 0.086 0.080) \times (92 / 360)] = \$153,333$

实例: A borrower is combining a cap with a 2-year, floating-rate, \$20 million loan. The floating rate on the loan is LIBOR plus 200 bp to be paid semiannually. The loan is made on March 1 when LIBOR is 5%. The cap begins on that day also, and the strike rate is 6%.

- The loan payments and cap settlement dates are September 1 and March 1 over the next two years. LIBOR on the next three settlement dates are 6.1 %, 6.4%, and 6.0%.
- Calculate the actual interest rate payments, settlements, and effective interest payments.

Correct Answer:

A good first step is to determine the Dts; they are 184 and 181.

The payoffs on the caplets follow.

Year 1:

• payoff on Sept. $1 = \$20,000,000 \times [\max(0, 0.050 - 0.060) \times (184/360)] = \0 (不行权)

Year 2:

- payoff on March $1 = \$20,000,000 \times [\max(0, 0.061 0.060 \times (181/360)] = \$10,056$ (行权)
- payoff on Sept. $1 = \$20,000,000 \times [\max(0, 0.064-0.060) \times (184/360)] = \$40,889$ (行权)

Year 3:

● payoff on March 1 = \$20,000,000×[max(0, 0.060-0.060)×(181/360)]= \$0 (不行权)

The actual interest payments on the loan are: (计算借款利息)

Year 1:

• payment on Sept. $1 = \$20,000,000 \times [(0.050+0.020) \times (184/360)] = \$715,556$

Year 2:

- payment on March 1 = $20,000,000 \times [(0.061+0.020) \times (181/360)] = 814,500$
- payment on Sept. $1 = \$20,000,000 \times [(0.064+0.020) \times (184/360)] = \$858,667$

Year 3:

• payment on March $1 = \$20,000,000 \times [(0.060+0.020) \times (181/360)] = \$804,444$

We subtract the payoff to find the effective interest payment:

Year 1:

• effective payment on Sept. 1 = \$715,556 - \$0 = \$715,556 (不行权)

Year 2:

- effective payment on March 1 = \$814,500 \$10,056 = \$804,444 (行权,利息减去行权赚取的金额)
- effective payment on Sept. 1 = \$858,667 \$40,889 = \$817,778 (行权,利息减去行权赚取的金额)

Year 3:

• effective payment on March 1 = \$804,444 - \$0 = \$804,444 (不行权)

四. GREEKS: 希腊字母的意义

◆ Delta: Changes of option value to change of stock price: 股价变化\$1 导致期权价值变动多少(一阶导),
 其公式: Delta=△option/△S (delta 只能用于管理微小变动,分为两种解读)

ΔS=1/delta × Δ option (持有股票) 当 option 变动 1%,股票变动(1/delta)% 1 份股票需要 1/delta 份 option 对冲

- Long stock short 1/delta 份 call
- Long stock long 1/delta 份 put

Δ option=delta × **Δ S** (short option 有风险想对冲) 当股票变动 1%时,option 变动 delta% 1 份 option 需要 delta 份股票对冲

• Short call long delta 份 stock

deep in the money 时 delta=1,行权,需要1份股票交割 deep out of money 时,delta=0,不行权,需要0份股票交割

• Short put short delta 份 stock

◆ Gamma: Change of Delta to change of stock price: 股价变化\$1 导致 delta 变动多少(二阶导),其公

式: Gamma=Δ delta/ΔS (考点: 1.风险度量; 2.涨多跌少; 3.gamma 越大, delta hedge 越难)

- ◆ ★Delta hedge is not easy: Delta hedge 并不简单
 - Delta can only provide an approximation for price changes of stocks and call: delta 只是股票和 call 相对价格变化的近似值,股价较大变化时,不那么准确,即当股价极小范围变化时,股价与期权价格可以近似的看成一种线性变化(本质上期权图形并不是线性的)
 - Market situation changes lead to delta changes: delta 会随市场情况的变化而变化(S, σ, rf, T), 也包括股价的变化(股价上涨,则 delta call 变大,虚值倾向于 0,实值倾向于 1;股价下跌,delta put 变小,虚值倾向于 0,实值倾向于-1)
 - Delta changes only as time goes by: 其它因素不变,只时间变化了 delta 也会变化

实例: Assume the initial value of a call is \$1.20, which has a delta of 0.6841 and 20 days to maturity. A dealer sells 100 contracts or 10,000 calls. To delta hedge the position, the dealer purchases 10,000(0.6841) = 6,841 shares of the stock at \$100/share. A day later, the price of the stock is the same with a new call price of \$1.19 and a delta of 0.682. Calculate the initial value of the position and its value on the next day.:

Correct Answer:

Initial value of portfolio = $$100 \times (6,841) - $1.20 \times (10,000) = $672,100$ (构建股票组合的成本 S-C) A day later we find: next-day value of portfolio = $$100 \times (6,841) - $1.19 \times (10,000) = $672,200$ (第二天构建组合的成本)

The portfolio's value has increased by 0.0149% (=100 / \$672,100). The value of the portfolio will increase over time if the other inputs do not change. (收益率年化后应该是 rf, 这样才说明定价准确)

One day later, and 19 days remaining and others keep same, the delta will have decreased. Obviously, this means fewer shares of stock are required to delta hedge the 10,000 call options.

• The manager will now need only $10,000 \times (0.682) = 6,820$ shares. The manager should sell 21 (=6,841-6,820) shares and invest the proceeds at the risk-free rate. Thus, the entire value of the original position will continue to grow at the risk-free rate.

The delta will increase as the stock price increase, but it will fall as the time goes by.

- Assume the initial value of a call is \$1.20, which has a delta of 0.6841 and 20 days to maturity. The stock price at 20 days is \$90. A dealer sells 10,000 calls. To hedge the position, the dealer purchases 6,841 shares of the stock at \$100/share. One day later, the stock price rises up to \$101/share, others keep the same. The call premium is 1.98 and delta is 0.782.
- How the manager adjust the hedge?

Correct Answer:

The original value of the portfolio at 30 days was \$672,100.

The manager must purchase:

No. of shares = (No. of calls) \times (new delta - old delta) = $(10,000)\times(0.782 - 0.6841) = 979$ new shares. Borrow at risk-free rate. (因为 S 和 T 都变动了,因此 delta 变动了,所以需要的股票数就变动了)

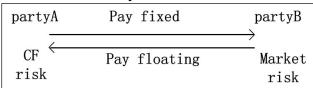
◆ The second-order GAMMA effect:二阶导 gamma 的影响

GAMMA=(change in delta)/(change in S): GAMMA 意为股票价格发生变动,所带来的 delta 的变动

- 如果 delta 与股价是完美的线性关系,此时 gamma 趋向于 0,但现实中两者并不是完美的线性关系,因此当 gamma 越大,就意味着 delta hedge 的效果越差(gamma 越大,则表示股价发生变动导致 delta 不停的发生变化,因此 delta hedge 需要的现货数量就在发生剧烈变动,来不及调整,则组合收益率就无法与 rf 保持一致);在 at the money 时(平值时)gamma 值最大;离到期日越近,gamma 越大,当 gamma 很大时,delta hedge 有可能失效,此时应该使用 gamma hedge
- 类似 convexity 涨多跌少的特征: call option,由于股票价格上涨所带来 call option 价格上涨幅度大于股票价格下跌相同幅度所带来的 call option 价格下跌的幅度
- 以 call option 为例,ATM 时 delta 趋于 0.5,当 ITM 时 delta 趋于 1,当 OTM 时,delta 趋于 0,因此当 option 处于 ATM 并接近到期时 gamma 值最大,因为马上到期,要决定 ATM 或 OTM,因此其值可能在 1 和 0 之间大幅变动,此时 delta hedge 有风险(Gamma is large → option values are exposed to

R30 Risk Management Applications of Swap Strategies: 互换策略在风险管理中的应用

一. interest rate swap: 利率互换



结论: 站在 CFO 的角度,利率互换并不是在互换

利息, 而是在互换风险

例如: 我想要 market risk,不想要 CF risk,此时应该进入 pay floating 一端

Party A 向 party B 支付固定利率, party B 向 party A 支付浮动利率, 此时 party A 收到的现金流是不固定的, 因此站在 party A 的角度, 他有 CF risk, party B 收到的现金流是固定的 (party A 的现金流反应了当时的利率环境, 因此 party A 并没有 market risk), 但是在不同的利率环境下, 这部分固定现金流的价值是不同的, 因此站在 party B 的角度他有 market risk

注意:发行一个债券,会使得 duration 下降;购买了一个债券,会使得 duration 上升,而 swap 的 duration 就是两者之差,即 **duration 收一duration 支**,另外 fixed 端的 duration 要大于 floating 端,因此 swap 的 duration 是由 fixed 端主导的,所以对于 pay floating 是正的 duration,对于 pay fixed 是负的 duration,另外 fixed 端有 market value risk,floating 端有 cash flow risk,要在两者之间进行平衡(trade off)

◆ Duration pay floating=Duration fixed—Duration floating >0

注意: 如果考试中没有给定 fixed 端的 duration,则默认按 maturity 的 3/4 计算 (assuming a convention of 3/4 of the maturity); 而 floating 端的 duration 则默认按付息时段的 1/2 计算

◆ Assume the firm's equity is positive and the duration of the firm's assets is greater than that of the liabilities, such that the net duration of the firm's equity is positive: 假设一般公司的权益是正数,公司资产的久期要大于公司负债的久期,因此公司权益的净久期是正数,所以利率上涨,权益价值下降,为了对冲这种风险,就需要降低 duration,此时可以进入一个 pay fixed/receive floating 的 swap,用于控制公司的 net duration

备注: cash 也有 duration,因为 cash 也是货币市场工具

◆ ★Using swaps to change duration: 使用 swap 调整 duration 的公式: 站在基金经理的角度

$$B \times (MDur_{T}) = B \times (MDur_{B}) + NP \times (MDur_{swap})$$

$$NP = B \times \left(\frac{MDur_{T} - MDur_{B}}{MDur_{swap}}\right)$$

MDur_T: 目标 Macaulay duration

MDur_B: 组合的当前 Macaulay duration

MDur_{SWAP}: SWAP 的 Macaulay duration

B: 当前组合的价值

NP: 份数×每份合约的价格

注意: NP 一定是正数,如果公式分子部分<0,则分母部分也必须是<0 的,swap duration<0则表示 pay fixed/receive floating

- 二. Currency swap: 货币互换
- ◆ Difference between Currency swap and interest rate swap:货币互换与利率互换的区别:
 - exchange the principals on the effective date and return them at the maturity date: 货币互换期初要互换本金,到期日换回本金
 - periodic interest payments are not usually settled on a net basis: 期间利率不是净额结算
- ◆ Reasons for currency swap: 需要货币互换的原因:
 - Converting a loan in one currency into a loan in another currency: 将贷款从一种货币转换成另一种货币
 - Converting foreign cash receipts into domestic currency: 将外币现金收入转换成本国货币
 - Create and manage the risk of a dual-currency bond: 构建和管理双重货币债券
 - To gain access to loanable funds in a foreign currency that might be too costly to obtain from a bank: 更低的借款成本去获得国外的货币(本国公司在本国借款利率比在海外直接借款利率低)
 - A firm may also have issued a foreign-currency bond earlier, and now the firm wishes to convert it into a domestic obligation: 将持有的外币债务转化成本币债务

补充: 比较优势(comparative advantage)是促成货币互换的重要原因;再者 A 国公司在 B 国借不到钱,B 国公司在 A 国借不到钱,此时两者可以进行货币互换

- ◆ Currency swap without changes of notional principles: 无需改变本金的货币互换
 - Some currency swap agreements do not require an exchange of notional principals: 有一些货币互换合约不要求互换本金,但默认情况是要互换本金的
 - A series of exchange-rate cash flows in the future at a fixed exchange rate: 固定汇率下的一系列汇率 现金流
 - The amounts exchanged are based on the exchange rate and interest rate: 兑换的金额是以汇率和利率为基础的

实例: Example: A US firm wants to exchange its cash flow received quarterly which is \in 5 million each to USD. Current exchange rate is \in 0.85/\$. The swap rate in US and Euro are 4% and 4.5% separately. We calculate the notional principals in Euro, then translate it to dollar notional principal and dollar interest.

(签订一个本金是多少的合约,可以起到不互换本金,且能把每季度收到的欧元按一个固定的汇率转换 成美元)

Correct Answer:

- **NP(0.045/4)** = € 5,000,000 → NP= € 444,444,444 → Dollar principal = € 444,444,444/(€ 0.85/\$) = \$522,875,816. (按 **4.5**%的固定利率互换 **4** 期,每期 **5**M 欧元,反推共需要多少欧元本金,按当前汇率这部分本金相当于多少美元)
- Quarterly interest payments = \$ 522,875,816×(0.04/4) =\$5,228,758.16 (计算出的名义本金在每季度的利息是多少,即每期换回的美元是多少)
- So, the US firm could exchange its € 5,000,000 for \$ 5,228,758.16 quarterly. No principal exchange is required. (本质是锁定一个汇率,即 5,000,000/5,228,758.16=0.9563 €/\$)

逻辑:签订一个欧元合约,欧元的 swap rate 为 4.5%,每期利息 5M 欧元,根据公式计算出这个欧元合约的本金是 444,444,444 欧元,根据 \in 0.85/\$的当前汇率 444,444,444 欧元相当于 522,875,816 美元,再根据美元的 swap rate 4%,推算出每期利息是 5,228,758.16 美元,达到的效果是每期支付 5M 欧元,获得5,228,758.16 美元,因此锁定了固定的汇率,也可以通过签订汇率不同的远期合约实现,因此不换本金的货币互换本质就是锁定了一组按时间价值加权的汇率远期合约的汇率均值

备注: Currency swap 的 dealer 抽成的逻辑,例如 dealer 手中美元存货多,此时有对手方想用其它货币交换 美元,这时 dealer 可能会不抽成或者少量抽成,反之如果 dealer 手中美元很多,此时对手方想要用美元换 其它货币,这时 dealer 可能会要求一个比较高的抽成,即抽成比例取决于货币资源的稀缺程度,但也与市 场的流动性有关

- 三. Equity swap: 股权互换(关注使用 equity swap 实现资产大类的转化)
- ◆ **Equity swap**: 特指用 equity position 与 equity position, Bond 或 fixed payments 三者之一进行互换 **总结**: 对于大资金调仓换股/债是很贵的,将 bond 转换成 equity 有三种方法:
- 1.卖掉 bond, 买入 equity (交易成本高)
- 2.卖出国债期货,将 duration 降成 0,再买入股指期货,加 beta
- 3.利用 equity swap 直接将 bond 和 equity 的收益互换
- 4.利用 C+K=P+S, hold bond, long call, short put, 相当于得到 stock

四. Swaption: 利率互换期权(Interest rate swaptions: IRS)

- ◆ Swaption 的功能: (swaption 是一个期权,要考虑期限和是否行权,因此其功能不是立即生效的)
 - Using swaption to convert loans: 用 swaption 来转换贷款
 - ✓ **Payer Swaption** (利率上升→行权): convert floating-rate loan→fixed-rate loan,收益与 Long interest rate call 相似
 - ✓ **Receiver swaption (利率下降→行权):** convert fixed-rate loan→floating-rate loan, 收益与 Long interest rate put 相似

注意:使用 swaption 进行 fixed 和 floating 转化时,只有 in the money 的情况才会行权;另外只有达到了 swaption 的到日期后,才能转化

● **Swaption cancels swap**: 进入一个反向的 swap 来取消当前的 swap,对于 pay fixed swap,要使用 receiver swaption 去取消;对于 pay floating swap,要使用 payer swaption 去取消

备注: FRN: floating rate note, 称为浮息票据

◆ Synthetically Adding or Removing a Call: (站在 CFO 角度)

例如:公司发行了一个 non-callable bond,如果想要把这个 bond 变成 callable bond 是不可能的,因为 call 是对发行方有利的,投资人不会允许你后期加入,因此转换思路,在利率下行时,能赚到钱,就相当于合成了一个 call,具体的方法有: Long call on bond; Long put on LIBOR; Long receiver swaption 备注:如果想要 removing a call,只需要将 long 改为 short,即 short call on bond; short LIBOR put; short receiver swaption

Summary	Description	Solution
	Callable bond→pure bond Callable bond=long bond+long call on bond	Short call on bond
		Short put on LIBOR
		Short receiver swaption
	Pure bond→callable bond	Long call on bond
		Long put on LIBOR
Issuer	Callable bond=long bond+long call on bond	Long receiver swaption
issuei	Putable bond→nure bond	Long put on bond
	Putable bond → pure bond	Long call on LIBOR
	Putable bond=long bond+short put on bond	Long payer swaption
	Pure bond→putable bond Putable bond=long bond+short put on bond	Short put on bond
		Short call on LIBOR
		Short payer swaption
	Callable bond→pure bond Callable bond=long bond+short call on bond	Long call on bond
		Long put on LIBOR
		Long receiver swaption
	Pure bond→callable bond Callable bond=long bond+short call on bond	Short call on bond
		Short put on LIBOR
Investor		Short receiver swaption
	Putable bond→pure bond Putable bond=long bond+long put on bond	Short put on bond
		Short call on LIBOR
	1 tradic bolid—long bolid long put on bolid	Short payer swaption
	Pure bond→putable bond Putable bond=long bond+long put on bond	Long put on bond
		Long call on LIBOR
	1 datable bond—long bond long put on bond	Long payer swaption

注意: 合成时要注意主体是发行人还是投资人,因为 call 和 put 站在不同角色,例如: callable bond,对发行人来说是 long call on bond,对投资人来说是 short call on bond

SS 16: TRADING, MONITORING AND REBALANCING

R31 Execution of Portfolio Decisions: 组合决策的执行

- ◆ Market and limit orders: 市价单和限价单
 - Market order: 市价单,以市场可用的最优价格立即执行
 - Limit order: 限价单,当市价不高于限价的价格时执行

注意: 平衡交易执行的速度和最好的价格(Trade off between trade execution speed and obtaining the best price)

- ◆ ★The effective spread=2×|execution price midquote|,用于评价作市商市场中交易员的交易水平,如果存在多笔交易,则 effective spread 按交易量加权计算是更为准确的(share-volume-weighted)
 - **Inside bid or market bid:** 站在 trader 的角度,最高的卖价即是最好的(highest and best bid from the perspective of traders)

实例: Based on the exhibit above, calculate and interpret the effective spread for <u>a buy order</u>, given an executed price of \$20.01.

	Bid Price	Bid Size	Ask Price	Ask Size
Order entry	\$19.97	400	\$20.03	1000
Order Execution	\$19.97	400	\$20.01	500

Correct Answer:

The quoted bid - ask spread is \$20.03 - \$19.97 = \$0.06. The midquote is (\$20.03 + \$19.97)/2 = \$20.00. The effective spread is $2 \times (\$20.01 - \$20.00) = 2 \times \$0.01 = \0.02 , which is \$0.06 - \$0.02 = \$0.04 less than the quoted spread. The price improvement has resulted in an effective spread that is lower than the quoted spread. (effective spread 比 quote bid-ask spread 小,说明:交易员的交易水平高或当时市场流动性好)

实例(多笔交易): Charles McClung, portfolio manager of a Canadian small-cap equity mutual fund, is reviewing with his firm's chief trader the execution of a ticket to <u>sell 1,000</u> shares of Alpha Company. The ticket was split into three trades executed in a single day as follows:

A market order to sell 200 shares was executed at a price of C\$10.15. The quote that was in effect at that time was as follows:

Ask Price	Ask Size	Bid Price	Bid Size
C\$10.24	200	C\$10.12	300

A market order to sell 300 shares was executed at a price of C\$10.11. The quote that was in effect at that time was as follows:

Ask Price	Ask Size	Bid Price	Bid Size
C\$10.22	200	C\$10.11	300

A market order to sell 500 shares was executed at an average price of C\$10.01. The quote that was in effect at that time was as follows:

Ask Price	Ask Size	Bid Price	Bid Size
C\$10.19	200	C\$10.05	300

This order exceeded the quoted bid size and "walked down" the limit order book (i.e., after the market bid was used, the order made use of limit order(s) to buy at lower prices than the market bid).

- 1. For each of the above market orders, compute the quoted spread. Also, compute the average quoted spread for the stock for the day.
- 2. For each of the above, compute the effective spread. Also, compute the average effective spread and the share-volume-weighted effective spread for the stock for the day.
- 3. Discuss the relative magnitudes of quoted and effective spreads for each of the three orders.

Correct Answer:

• The quoted spread is the difference between the ask and bid prices. So, for the first order, the quoted spreads C\$10.24 - C\$10.12 = C\$0.12. Similarly, the quoted spreads for the second and third orders are

C\$0.11 and C\$0.14, respectively. The average quoted spread is (C\$0.12 + C\$0.11 + C\$0.14)/3 = C\$0.1233.

• For the first order, the midpoint of the market at the time the order is entered = (C\$10.12 + C\$10.24)/2 = C\$10.18. So, the effective spread = $2 \times (C\$10.18 - C\$10.15) = C\$0.06$.

The effective spread for the second order = $2 \times [(C\$10.11 + C\$10.22)/2 - C\$10.11] = C\0.11 .

The effective spread for the third order = $2 \times [(C\$10.05 + C\$10.19)/2 - C\$10.01] = C\0.22 .

The average effective spread = (C\$0.06 + C\$0.11 + C\$0.22)/3 = C\$0.13.

The share-volume-weighted effective spread = $[(200 \times C\$0.06) + (300 \times C\$0.11) + (500 \times C\$0.22)]/(200 + 300 + 500) = C\0.155 . (多笔交易的情况下 effective spread 按交易量加权是更为准确的)

- In the **first trade**, there was a <u>price improvement</u> because the shares were sold at a price above the bid price. Therefore, the effective spread is less than the quoted spread.
- In the **second trade**, there was <u>no price improvement</u> because the shares were sold at the bid price. Also, there was no impact on the execution price because the entire order was fulfilled at the quoted bid. Accordingly, the effective and quoted spreads are equal.
- In the **third trade**, the <u>effective spread is greater than the quoted spread</u> because the order size was greater than the bid size and the order had to walk down the limit order book, resulting in a lower average price for the sale and therefore a higher effective spread.

◆ Markets are organized to provide: 市场被组织起来,用于提供:

- **Liquidity**: 流动性,以相对较低的成本和相对较大的成交量无延迟地进行交易的能力(the ability to trade without delay at relatively low cost and in relatively large quantities)
- Transparency: 透明度,提供及时准确的市场和贸易信息(the availability of timely and accurate market and trade information)
- **Assurity of completion**: 确保完成交易,t 在所有的条件下交易都没有问题(trades settle without problems under all market conditions)
- ◆ main categories of securities markets: 证券市场的主要分类
 - Quote-driven: 报价驱动,作市商市场,例如:外汇,债券
 - Order-driven markets: 订单驱动,买卖双方各自报价,由系统匹配报价完成交易,例如: 股票
 - Brokered markets: 经济商市场,例如:房地产市场,借头公司(特点:流动性差,匿名交易)
 - Hybrid market: 混合的市场,例如:新三版市场(即有作市商,也可以买卖双方报价成交)
- ◆ Order-driven markets: 订单驱动市场的主要类型:
 - Electronic crossing networks: 主要针对机构投资者(institutional investors),避免信息泄漏(information leakage),更低的佣金(low commission),但不保证能找到对手方,例如: 一个机构要卖掉大单 A 股票,而另一个机构要买进大单 A 股票,如果各自去平台交易手续费会很贵,通过网络撮合可以节省手续费,也不会泄漏交易信息
 - Auction market
 - ✓ Periodic/batch auction:集合竞价,以能够清掉最多的集合竞价订单的价格作为开盘价
 - ✓ Continuous auction: 连续竞价
 - Automated auction
- ◆ Brokered market: 经济商市场 (交易中介寻找对手方进行交易: traders' agents to find counterparties to their trades)
 - 在证券市场上,通常在有大订单(a large block)的情况下,会使用经济商去寻找对方手撮合交易,主要优点是匿名交易(remain anonymous),对市场的冲击比较小,通常适用于规模小或流动性差的市场(small or illiquid)
- ◆ Hybrid markets: 混合市场
 - 即有 <u>Quote-driven(dealer)</u>又有 <u>Order-driven(broker)</u>的市场,例如: New York Stock Exchange (NYSE)

Roles of brokers: 经济商的角色 Role of dealers: 作市商的角色

Representing the order: 代表订单

Finding the opposite side of a trade: 寻找交易对手方

Supplying market information: 提供市场信息

Providing discretion and secrecy: 提供决策和保密

Providing other supporting investment services: 提供 投资服务的其它支持

Supporting the market mechanism: 市场机制的支持

Help market operate continuously:帮助市场持续经营

Set prices in dealer-driven markets: 在作市商驱动的市场中设置价格

Provide liquidity by taking the opposite side of trade orders: 作为交易的对手方提供流动性

◆ Market quality: 市场质量(Liquidity,transparency,assurity of completion)

- The market has relatively low bid-ask spreads: 市场有相对低的 bid-ask spread (反应流动性问题)
- The market is deep: 市场深度
- ✓ Depth means that <u>big trades tend not to cause large price movements</u>: 深度意味着大交易往往不会引起大的价格波动
- ✓ Deep markets have high <u>quoted depth</u>, which is the number of shares available for purchase or sale at the quoted bid and ask prices: 深度市场有较高的报价深度,即可通过买价或卖价交易的股票的数量
- Market is resilient: 市场弹性, 受到意外冲击可快速准确的价值回归 (if any discrepancies between market price and intrinsic value tend to be small and correct quickly)
- Transparency: 透明度
- ✓ **Pre-trade transparency**: 交易前透明度,能够快速、方便、廉价地获得关于报价和交易的准确信息(can quickly, easily, and inexpensively obtain accurate information about quotes and trades)
- ✓ **Post-trade transparency**: 交易后透明度,已完成的交易详情迅速准确地向公众报告(details on completed trades are quickly and accurately reported to the public)
- Assurity of completion: 确保交易完成,依据合约保障(depends on assurity of the contract)
- ◆ Volume-weighted average price (VWAP): 交易量加权平均价格(通常用于 order-driven market)

实例: At 10 a.m. the trader placed an order to sell 100 shares at the price of \$15.25. At 1 p.m. the trader placed an order to sell 300 shares at the execution price of \$17.35. At 2 p.m. the trader placed an order to sell 600 shares at the average execution price of \$18.75.

Calculate the VWAP of the portfolio

Correct Answer:

VWAP=(100/1000)\$15.25+(300/1000)\$17.35+(600/1000)\$18.75=\$17.98

- ◆ ★Shortcomings of VWAP: VWAP 的缺点
 - VWAP is less informative for trades that represent a large fraction of volume: 交易量很大时, VWAP 是无效的,此时交易员的 VWAP 与市场的 VWAP 相似,不能正确评价交易员的水平
 - ★A broker with sufficient discretion can try to "game" the measure: 有丰富经验的经济商可以尝试操纵这个指标
- ◆ Execution costs: 交易成本
 - Explicit costs: 显性成本,直接交易的成本 (given a receipt),例如: broker commission costs, taxes
 - Implicit costs: 隐性成本,间接的交易成本(no receipt)
 - ✓ Market impact cost: 市场冲击成本,大资金量交易时,买就涨很多,卖就跌很多
 - ✓ Missed trade opportunity costs: 错过交易机会的成本 (未成交)
 - ✓ **Delay costs (also called slippage)**: 延迟成本,由于市场规模和流动性的原因,无法立即完成 所需的交易的成本(最终成交)
- ◆ ★★Implementation shortfall: 执行落差(解决 VWAP 的缺点,但不能解决 market impact cost 问题)
 - **decision price/arrival price/strike price**: 是决定交易时的主要价格(prevailing price when the decision to trade is made),即 **paper portfolio**,一旦确定不可改变

备注: paper portfolio: 最理想状态,即按<u>理想价格成交了需要的成交量且不考虑交易成本</u>(hypothetical paper portfolio's return of trades executed at no cost)

- ◆ Implementation shortfall has four elements: 执行落差的四个元素
 - Explicit costs: 显性的成本,例如: commissions, taxes, fees
 - Realized profit/loss: 判断真实的损益情况(成交价与前一个交易日的收盘价比较),只考虑成交的订单,评判当日的择时能力
 - **Delay or slippage cost:** 错过买卖时机所造成的成本(前一个交易日的收盘价与理想价格的比较),只考虑成交的订单
 - Missed trade opportunity cost: 未成交所造成的成本(现在的价格与理想价格的比较),只考虑 未成交的订单

注意: Realized profit/loss, Delay or slippage cost, Missed trade opportunity cost 的计算过程中,分母都是使用理想价格

实例: On Monday, the shares of Impulse Robotics close at £10.00 per share.On Tuesday, before trading begins, a portfolio manager decides to buy Impulse Robotics. An order goes to the trading desk to buy 1,000 shares of Impulse Robotics at £9.98 per share or better, good for one day. The benchmark price is Monday's close at £10.00 per share.No part of the limit order is filled on Tuesday, and the order expires.The closing price on Tuesday rises to £10.05.

On Wednesday, the trading desk again tries to buy Impulse Robotics by entering a new limit order to buy 1,000 shares at £10.07 per share or better, good for one day. That day, 700 shares are bought at £10.07 per share. Commissions and fees for this trade are £14. Shares for Impulse Robotics close at £10.08 per share on Wednesday.No further attempt to buy Impulse Robotics is made, and the remaining 300 shares of the 1,000 shares the portfolio manager initially specified are never bought.

Illustrate the calculation of implementation shortfall

Correct Answer:

The paper portfolio traded 1,000 shares on Tuesday at £10.00 per share. The return on this portfolio when the order is canceled after the close on Wednesday is the value of the 1,000 shares, now worth £10,080, less the cost of £10,000, for a net gain of £80. The real portfolio contains 700 shares (now worth $700 \times £10.08 = £7,056$), and the cost of this portfolio is $700 \times £10.07 = £7,049$, plus £14 in commissions and fees, for a total cost of £7,063. Thus, the total net gain on this portfolio is -£7. The implementation shortfall is the return on the paper portfolio minus the return on the actual portfolio, or £80 -(-£7) = £87. More commonly, the shortfall is expressed as a fraction of the total cost of the paper portfolio trade, or £87/£10,000 = 87basis points.

Paper portfolio: 理想状态, 即能够在自己满意的价格成交自己需要的成交量, 且不考虑交易成本, paper portfolio's net gain=(10.08 - 10.00)×1000=80

Actual return: 现实世界, 考虑了各类成本的损益情况, actual return net gain=(10.08-\$10.07)×700-14=-7

We can break this implementation shortfall down further:

- Commissions and fees are calculated naturally as £14/£10,000 =0.14%. (Explicit costs)
- Realized profit/loss reflects the difference between the execution price and the relevant decision price (here, the closing price of the previous day). The calculation is based on the amount of the order actually filled

(700/1000)×(10.07-10.05)/10.00=0.14% (Realized profit/loss) (周三 10.07 买入,比周二的收盘价 10.05 高,有损失)

• Delay costs reflect the price difference due to delay in filling the order. The calculation is based on the amount of the order actually filled:

 $(700/1000) \times (10.05-10.00)/10.00=0.35\%$ (Delay or slippage cost)

• Missed trade opportunity cost reflects the difference between the cancellation price and the original benchmark price. The calculation is based on the amount of the order that was not filled:

 $(300/1000) \times (10.08-10.00)/10.00=0.24\%$ (Missed trade opportunity cost)

- Implementation cost as a percent is 0.14% + 0.14% + 0.35% + 0.24% = 0.87%, or 87 bps.
- ◆ ★VWAP vs. implementation shortfall: 按成交量加权的平均价格与执行落差的对比

	Advantage	Disadvantage
	Easy to compute; Easy to understand	Does not account for costs of trades delayed
	Can be computed quickly to assist traders	or canceled
	during the execution	Becomes misleading when trade is a
VWAP	Works best for comparing smaller trades in	substantial proportion of trading volume
	non-trending markets	Not sensitive to trade size or market
		conditions
		Can be gamed by delaying trades
	Links trading to portfolio manager activity;	Requires extensive data collection and
	can relate cost to the value of investment	interpretation
	ideas	Imposes an unfamiliar evaluation
	Recognizes the tradeoff between immediacy	framework on traders
Implementation	and price	
Shortfall	Allows attribution of costs	
	Can be built into portfolio optimizers to	
	reduce turnover and increase realized	
	performance	
	Cannot be gamed	

- ◆ Econometric models:将 Implementation Shortfall 的四个元素放入经济模型中,有两种用法:
 - 事先预估交易成本(pre-trade estimate of the cost of trading),评估执行质量(assess execution quality)
 - 帮助基金经理衡量正确的交易规模(gauge the right trade size to order)
- ◆ Major trader types: 主要的交易员类型
 - Information-motivated traders: 信息驱动型交易员(基于信息进行交易决策/a large block)
 - Value-motivated traders: 价值驱动的交易员(对标的资产有明确的估值)
 - Liquidity-motivated traders:流动性驱动的交易员(以流动性为交易目的,例如:建仓或清仓)
 - Passive traders:被动的交易员(复制指数)

Trader	Motivation	Trading time horizon	Time versus price preference
Information-motivated	New information	Minutes to hours	Time
Value-motivated Perceived valuation errors		Days to weeks	Price
Liquidity-motivated	Invest cash or divest securities	Minutes to hours	Time
Passive	Rebalancing, investing/divesting cash	Days to weeks	Price
Dealers and day traders	Accommodation	Minutes to hours	Passive, indifferent

◆ Algorithmic trading: 算法交易

- Logical participation strategies:
 - ✓ Simple logical participation strategies:
- ❖ Volume-weighted average price strategy: 根据预先指定的成交量分割订单 (pre-specified volume profiles)
- ❖ Time-weighted average price strategy: 按时间均匀分配成交量进行交易(a flat volume profile and trades in proportion to time)
- ❖ Percentage-of-volume strategy: 按照整体市场成交量的一定比例进行交易,直到完成 (takes place in proportion to overall market volume)
- ✓ Implementation shortfall strategy: 通过执行落差模型最小化交易成本 (minimizes trading costs)
- Opportunistic participation strategies: 找到好的参与机会的策略(不考)
- Specialized strategies: 定制化/独创的策略(不考)
- ◆ Trading tactics: 交易策略

- Liquidity-at-any-cost trading focus: 关注流动性,不关注成本的交易策略
- Costs-are-not-important trading focus: 不过份关注成本的交易策略
- Need-trustworthy-agent trading focus: 需要依靠可信赖的中介的交易策略(broker/经济商)
- Advertise-to-draw-liquidity trading focus: 依靠广告吸引流动性(IPO roadshow)
- Low-cost-whatever-the-liquidity trading focus: 关注低成本,不关注流动性(safety cushion)

◆ Best execution: 最优执行

- Four characteristics of best execution: 最优执行的四个特征
- ✓ Best execution is intrinsically tied to portfolio-decision value and <u>cannot be evaluated</u> independently: 最优执行与投资决策有内在联系,无法被独立判断(投资决策是基金经理制定的,而非交易员)
- ✓ Best execution is a prospective, statistical and qualitative concept that <u>cannot be known with</u> <u>certainty ex-ante</u>: 最优执行是一个前瞻性、统计性和定性的概念,不能预先确定
- ✓ Best execution has aspects that may be measured and analyzed over time on an ex post basis, even though such measurement on a trade-by-trade basis <u>may not be meaningful in isolation</u>: 最优执行有些可以在事后进行测量和分析的方面,即使在每笔交易的基础上进行这样的度量可能是孤立无意义的
- ✓ Best execution is interwoven into <u>complicated</u>, <u>repetitive</u>, <u>and continuing</u> practices and relationships: 最优执行与复杂的、重复的、持续的实践有关系
- Problems with defining a best execution: 定义最优执行的问题
 - ✓ Difficult to define a good benchmark: 定义一个好的基准是困难的
 - ✓ Hard to measure implicit costs (market impact/opportunity costs): 难以度量隐性成本
- ✓ Institution break large block trades over different small trades, making it difficult to assess their execution: 机构会将大单分割成不同的小交易,很难评估他们的执行情况
 - ✓ Difficult to define "best" for all kinds of trading: 难以定义各类交易的"最优"

R32 Monitoring and Rebalancing: 监督和再平衡

- ◆ Fiduciary duty of portfolio manager: 基金经理的受托责任,基金经理应该跟踪所有可能影响客户投资组合的因素 (track everything affecting the client's portfolio)
- ◆ 基金经理需要监控的三类问题:
 - Investor circumstances, including wealth and constraints:投资者的境况(财富,限制)
 - ✓ Changes in investor circumstances and constraints: 投资者境况和限制的改变
 - ✓ Changing liquidity requirements: 流动性要求的改变
 - ✓ Changing time horizons: 投资期限的改变
 - ✓ Tax circumstances: 税收环境
 - ✓ Changes in laws and regulations: 法律和监管的改变
 - ✓ Unique circumstances: 独特的情况的改变
 - Market and economic changes: 市场和经济的改变
 - ✓ Changes in asset risk attributes: 资产风险属性的改变
 - ✓ Market cycles: 市场周期
 - ✓ Central bank policy: 央行政策
 - ✓ The yield curve and inflation: 收益率曲线和通胀
 - The portfolio itself: 组合自身
 - ✓ Monitoring the Portfolio: 持续的监控组合(以及再平衡)
- ◆ ★Benefit of Rebalancing:再平衡的好处(关注大类资产的 rebalancing)
 - Maintaining investor's desired risk exposure: 保持投资者期望的风险敞口
 - Rebalancing also <u>provides discipline</u>. The client may want to react to temporary market conditions rather than follow a long-term, disciplined approach: 再平衡提供了纪律性,客户可能希望对临时的市场状况作出反应,而不是采取长期、有纪律的做法
- ◆ ★Costs of Rebalancing:再平衡的成本

- Transaction costs: 交易成本
- Market impact: 市场的影响(一买就涨,一卖就跌,冲击成本)
- ◆ Rebalancing strategies: 再平衡策略
 - calendar rebalancing: 定期进行再平衡 (periodic basis: monthly, quarterly, semiannually, annually)
 - ✓ The primary benefit: 主要好处
 - ❖ <u>simplest</u> rebalancing discipline: 最简单的再平衡纪律
 - ❖ It <u>does not involve continuously monitoring</u> portfolio values within the rebalancing period: 在 再平衡区间内不需要持续的监控组合
 - ✓ The drawback: 缺点
 - ❖ It is <u>unrelated to market behavior</u>: 与市场行为无关,组合可能偏离最优比例(<u>far away from optimal proportions</u>)
 - **√** percentage-of-portfolio rebalancing: 根据整体组合权重的百分比再平衡
 - **♦** Corridors=target ± (target allocation×P%)

★注意:组合中只要有一个资产大类的权重超出了 corridor,此时再平衡要将<u>所有的资产大类</u>调整成为原来的权重

◆ ★Optimal corridor width: 最优通道宽度

Factor Effect on corridor width		Explanation					
	Factors positively related to optimal corridor width						
Transaction	The <u>higher</u> the transaction costs. the <u>wider</u>	High transaction costs set a high hurdle rate					
costs	the optimal corridor	for rebalancing benefits to overcome					
Dialy talamanaa	The <u>higher</u> the risk tolerance the <u>wider</u> the	High risk tolerance means tolerance for					
Risk tolerance	optimal corridor	divergences from target					
Correlation with The <u>higher</u> the correlation,the <u>wider</u> the		High correlation means divergence from					
rest of portfolio	optimal corridor	targets is less likely					
	Factors negatively related to optima	al corridor width					
Asset class	The higher the egget along valetility the	High volatility relative to the rest means					
	The <u>higher</u> the asset class volatility the	more likelihood to diverge from original					
volatility	<u>narrower</u> the optimal corridor	allocation					
Volatility of rost	The higher the volatility of rest of portfolio,	High volatility of the rest means more					
Volatility of rest		likelihood to diverge from original					
of portfolio	the <u>narrower</u> the optimal corridor	allocation					
★corridor 控制原则: 容易偏离就严格(narrow),不容易偏离就宽松(wide)							

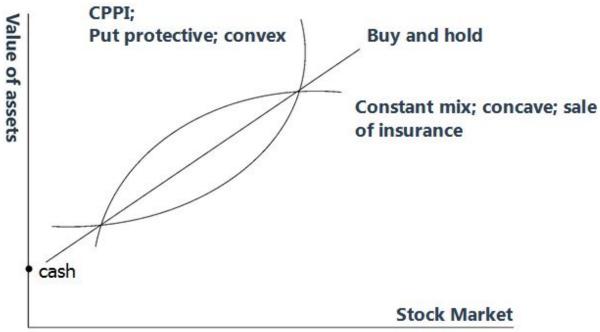
◆ ★★Dynamic rebalancing strategies:动态再平衡策略

- **Buy and hold:** 买入并持有,资产大类权重不再进行调整(passive strategy),大类资产内可调仓 换股
- Constant-mix:根据之前的设定,保持稳定的比例(反向操作:上涨止盈,下跌加仓)
- Constant-proportion portfolio insurance(CPPI): (追涨杀跌)
 - ✓ ★Target investment in stocks=m×(Portfolio value Floor value)

例如:构建一个市值\$100的组合,equity 占 40%,cash 占 60%,按 CPPI 的方法进行构建,其中 m 作为系数(fixed constant),假设 m=2,此时投资在 equity 上的金额为\$40×2=\$80,而 cash 配置\$20,并以之前组合设定的 cash \$60 作为 floor value(组合的整体市值不能低于\$60,即 floor value 不能被击穿),假设股票涨 10%和跌 10%,根据 CPPI 的公式进行再平衡

T0	T0 T1 rebalancing	
Equity: \$80	\$80×(1+10%)=\$88,上涨 10%	(\$88+\$20-\$60)×2=\$96, equity=\$96
Cash: \$20	Cash: \$20	equity: +\$8(追涨); cash: -\$8
Equity: \$80	\$80×(1-10%)=\$72,下跌10%	(\$72+\$20-\$60)×2=\$64, equity=\$64
Cash: \$20 Cash: \$20		equity: -\$8 (杀跌); cash: +\$8

◆ ★Linear, concave, and convex rebalancing strategies: 再平衡策略的线性,凹性,凸性



- 1. Buy and hold: liner
- 2. CPPI: convex
- 3. constant-mix: concave

Flat but oscillating (mean reversion): constant mix>buy and hold> CPPI

在平稳但有震荡的市场(震荡市,均值复归),业绩表现: constant mix>buy and hold> CPPI

No reversal (trend): CPPI >buy and hold> constant mix

在不均值复归的市场(单边市,一直涨或一直跌),业绩表现: CPPI >buy and hold> constant mix

SS 17: PERFORMANCE EVALUATION AND ATTRIBUTION

R33: Evaluating Portfolio Performance: 评估组合的业绩

一. Performance Measurement: 业绩衡量

Sponsor: 资助人 (sponsor is defined as an owner of large pools of investable assets),例如: 社保基金

- ◆ Fund Sponsor's Perspective: 站在 sponsor 的角度(负责战略性/大类资产配置,战术性/风格型资产配置,选择基金经理),做业绩归因的目的(宏观归因 macro): feedback, control mechanism
 - identifies an investment program's strengths and weaknesses: 确定投资计划的优点和缺点
 - assists the fund sponsor in reaffirming a commitment to successful investment strategies, and it helps to focus attention on poorly performing operations: 协助基金资助人对成功投资策略的委托的再确认,并有助于把注意力集中在业绩不佳的业务上
 - attributes the fund's investment results to various key decisions: 将基金的投资结果归因于各种关键决策
 - Indicates where other, <u>additional strategies can be successfully applied</u>: 表明其它附加策略被成功应用的可能性
 - it provides evidence to fund trustees that the investment program is being conducted in an appropriate and effective manner: 它为基金受托人提供了证据,表明投资计划正以适当和有效的方式进行

总结: 衡量战略性和战术性资产配置的效果; 衡量基金经理的表现; 作为给基金经理发放绩效资金的依据

- ◆ Investment Manager's Perspective: 站在基金经理的角度(选股,选行业,交叉项),做业绩归因的目的(微观归因 micro):
 - In many cases, performance evaluation simply takes the form of reporting investment returns, perhaps presented alongside the returns of some designated benchmark: 在许多情况下,绩效评估是简单的报告投资收益的形式,也许是与某些指定的基准收益一起呈现
 - Some investment managers may seriously wish to <u>investigate the effectiveness</u> of various elements of their <u>investment processes</u> and examine the relative contributions of those elements: 一些基金经理可能认真地希望调查其投资过程的各种要素的有效性,并检查这些要素的相对贡献

总结: 衡量 a 来自于哪里(行业选的好,股票选的好,两者兼而有之,称为交叉项)

- ◆ Three Components of Performance Evaluation: 业绩归因的三个部分:
 - performance measurement: 业绩的衡量(计算组合的收益率)
 - performance attribution:业绩的归因(找合适的基准,进行宏观/微观分析)
 - performance appraisal: 业绩考核
- ◆ 计算组合收益率的方法:
 - TWRR (Time-Weighted Rate of Return) vs MWRR (Money-Weighted Rate of Return) =IRR
 - LIRR
 - Data Quality
- ◆ WTRR: 不考虑 external CF 的影响, 计算时需要知道当 external CF 流入或流出时, 组合新的市值是 多少
- 基金的现金流分为两类:外部现金流(external CF),即申购和赎回;内部现金流(internal CF),即基金的投资收益
- 对基金的收益率产生影响的是内部现金流,应该剔除申购和赎回的现金流
- ◆ Return Calculations: 收益率的计算(公式中 CF 代表 external CF)

★external cash flow at the beginning of the evaluation period (外部现金流发生在期初)

$$r_{\rm t} = \frac{MV_1 - (MV_0 + CF)}{(MV_0 + CF)}$$

★ contribution is received at the end of the evaluation period (外部现金流发生在期末)

$$r_t = \frac{\left(MV_1 - CF\right) - MV_0}{MV_0}$$

注意:如果外部现金流发生在期间,此时应该将投资期间分为两个阶段,期间的外部现金流可以作为第一 阶段的期末,也可以做为第二阶段的期初,此时可计算出两个阶段的收益率为 r1 和 r2,而整个期间的收 益率为 Rp=(1+r1)×(1+r2)-1,这种方法称为 TWRR(Time-Weighted Rate of Return)

注意: TWRR 剔除了外部现金流的影响,如果投资期间超过1年要开方,例如:投资期间1.5年,期间共 有 2 笔外部现金流,因此将投资期限分为三个阶段,分别计算收益率为 r1、r2、r3,再开 1.5 次根减 1, 其 原理为: (1+r1)×(1+r2)×(1+r3)=(1+RP)^{1.5}

★★实例: Let us assume that the account received two cash flows during month t: a contribution of \$30,000 on day 5 and a contribution of \$20,000 on day 16. Further, assume that we use a daily pricing system that provides us with values of the Mientkiewicz 'account (inclusive of the contributions) of \$1,045,000 and \$1,060,000 on days 5 and 16 of the month, respectively. We can then calculate three separate subperiod returns using the rate-of-return computation applicable to situations when external cash flows occur at the end of an evaluation period.

Correct Answer:

• Subperiod 1 = Days 1-5
$$r_{t,1} = \frac{(1,045,000-30,000)-1,000,000}{1,000,000} = 1.50\%$$

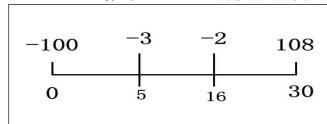
• Subperiod 2 = Days 6-16
$$r_{t,2} = \frac{(1,060,000 - 20,000) - 1,045,000}{1,045,000} = -0.48\%$$

• Subperiod 3 = Days 17-30
$$r_{t,3} = \frac{(1,080,000-1,060,000)}{1,060,000} = 1.89\%$$

Continuing with the Mientkiewicz account, its TWR is(投资期限只有一个月,不需要开根)

$$r_{twr} = (1+1.5\%)(1+-0.48\%)(1+1.89\%)-1=2.92\%$$

MWRR: 考虑了 external CF 的影响,其本质就是 IRR,外部现金流入越多,收益率就会越高



IRR=> CF0=-100 C01=0, F01=4, C02=-3, F02=1 C03=0, F03=10, C03=-2, F04=1 C05=0, F05=13, C06=108, F06=1

CPT IRR (计算出一天的 IRR, 即 IRR 天)

IRR 月= (1+IRR 天) ^30-1

IRR 年=(1+IRR 月)^12 -1

结论: 在计算组合收益时,使用 TWRR 或 MWRR 哪种方法,取决于基金经理能否控制外部现金流,**如果** 基金经理不能控制外部现金流,应该使用 TWRR;如果基金经理能够控制外部现金流,应该使用 MWRR

★TWRR 的特点:

- TWRR 不考虑外部现金流的影响(not affected | MWRR 考虑了外部现金流的影响 by external cash flows)
- 计算时需要知道 MVt
- TWRR 对数据敏感,估值、成本高(data intensive and expensive)
- 基金经理无法控制外部现金流时(manager can not controls the timing of external cash flows),使用TWRR计算收益率

★MWRR 的特点:

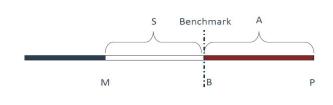
- 对外部现金流的规模和时间敏感(sensitive to the size and timing of external cash flows)
- 基金经理可以控制外部现金流的时间时 (manager controls the timing of external cash flows),使用 MWRR 计算收益率
- MWRR 只需要知道期初和期末的估值(only requires a beginning and end of period market value)
- **LIRR**: linked internal rate of return, **原理**: 例如一个基金, 在 0-30 天的时间内, 有多笔的现金流进入,

将每 10 天作为一个阶段,分别计算出三个阶段的 IRR,即 IRR1、IRR2、IRR3,再将三者使用 WTRR 的方法计算收益率,即 R_P =(1+IRR1)(1+IRR2)(1+IRR3)-1,其优点是结合了 TWRR 和 MWRR 的优点,且计算的结果与 TWRR 比较接近,需要的估值数据比 TWRR 更少,节约成本。另外要注意,如果每 笔外部现金流都比较大(大于总市值的 10%),则计算出的 LIRR 与 TWRR 的值相差会比较大

- ◆ **Data Quality**:数据质量,在计算 TWRR 时要对每个 MVt 估值,要考虑两个因素: 1)资产流动性差, 其估值不准确; 2)债券的估值要考虑 clean price+accrued interest,即 trading date accounting
 - illiquid and infrequently priced assets (**liquidity**)
 - thinly traded fixed-income securities (**liquidity**)
 - Highly illiquid securities (liquidity)
 - Account valuations should include trade date accounting (accrual basis)

结论: trade date accounting (including <u>accrued interest and dividends</u>) 更好,更像 accrual basis; settlement date accounting 更像 cash basis

★★二. Performance Attribution: 业绩归因



M: the market index(不记提奖金)

S: manager's investment style (不记提奖金)

A: management's active management decisions(记提奖金)

P: investment manager' s portfolio return P=M+S+A; P=M+(B-M)+A; B=M+S

实例: Suppose the account earns a total return of 3.6% in a given month, during which the portfolio benchmark has a return of 3.8% and the market index has a return of 2.8%.

Correct Answer:

Then the return due to the portfolio manager's style is S = B - M = 3.8% - 2.8% = 1% and the return due to active management is A = P - B = 3.6% - 3.8% = -0.2%

注意: broad market fund(全市场基金),即大盘/小盘全都会投资的基金,此时 Style=0%,benchmark 就是 Rm,即 benchmark=market index 时,style=0%

- ◆ ★★Benchmark properties (SAMURAI): 基准的七大特征(定性/优点):
 - **Specified in advance:** The benchmark is specified <u>prior to the start of an evaluation period</u> and known to all interested parties: 事先可确定性,例如 HF 的 absolute benchmark
 - **Appropriate**: The benchmark is <u>consistent with the manager's investment style or area of expertise</u>: 合 适性,基准要与投资风格和专业领域相一致(R_B与 R_P 的风险与收益要像)
 - **Measurable**: The benchmark's return is <u>readily calculable on a reasonably frequent basis</u>: 可测算,基准是可以计算出来的
 - ★ Unambiguous: The identities and weights of securities or factor exposures constituting the benchmark are clearly defined: 清晰的,这个基准的构成是清晰的,构成基准的各个成份和权重已知
 - Reflective of the manager's current investment opinions: The manager has current investment knowledge (be it positive, negative, or neutral) of the securities or factor exposures within the benchmark: 反应基金经理的投资意见/思想,例如基金经理认为将来利率会下降,此时配置的债券都是久期比较大的,如果选的基准都是久期比较小的组合,则不能反应基金经理的思想
 - **Accountable:** The investment manager should be aware of and accept accountability for the constituents and performance of the benchmark. It is encouraged that the benchmark be embedded in and integral to the investment process and procedures of the investment manager: 负责任的,选择的基准必须是资助人和基金经理共同接受的基准(acceptable)
 - ★Investable: It is possible to forgo active management and simply hold the benchmark: 可投资的,真正可以买到与基准一样的成份

注意: investable 的一定是 unambiguous 的;但 unambiguous 的不一定是 investable 的(流动性差的资产买不到)

- ◆ ★★Benchmark Types: 基准的类型 (考点: 七种基准的优缺点):
 - Absolute: An absolute benchmark is a return objective (e.g., aims to exceed a minimum target return): 绝对的基准 (satisfy Specified in advance、Measurable)
 - ✓ Advantage: <u>Simple</u> and straightforward benchmark: 简单直观
 - ✓ **Disadvantages**: <u>Not an investable</u> alternative: 不可投资的
 - ★Manager Universes: 所有基金经理业绩排名的中位数(median)(satisfy Appropriate、Measurable)
 - ✓ Advantage: Measurable (可测算的)
 - ✓ Disadvantage:
 - ❖ survivor bias: 只统计还存活没有被清盘的基金经理,因此其结果被高估
 - **❖ rely on compiler's representations**: 依赖编制者的陈述,统计的准确与否依赖编制者的报告是否准确
 - ❖ Cannot be identified or specified in advance: 事先不可知
 - ❖ Not an Unambiguous and not Investable:不清晰且不可投资
 - Broad Market Indices: 大盘指数(上证综指、SP500)
 - ✓ Advantages:
 - ❖ Well recognized, easy to understand, and widely available
 - **❖** Unambiguous investable measurable specified in advance
 - **appropriate** to use
 - ✓ **Disadvantage:** Manager's style <u>may be different from the index style</u> (基金经理的风险与指数的风格不同)
 - ★Style Indices: 风格指数
 - ✓ Advantages:
 - ❖ Well recognized, easy to understand, and widely available
 - ❖ If the index reflects the manager's style and it is **investable**, it is an **appropriate** benchmark
 - ✓ Disadvantages:
 - ❖ <u>larger than considered pr</u>udent: 不够谨慎
 - ❖ <u>Differing definitions of investment style</u> can produce quite different benchmark returns: 对风格指数不同的定义会带来不同的基准收益率
 - ❖ In these cases they are not appropriate benchmarks: 有些情况不是合适的基准
 - ★Factor-Model-Based: 基于多因素模型(例如: <u>历史业绩与各种因素进行回归分析</u>,得到基金 经理的业绩受到哪些因素的影响,以历史业绩作为基准,将来业绩比历史业绩好,可计提绩效奖金)
 - ✓ Advantage:
 - ❖ Useful in performance evaluation: 可用于业绩评估
 - ❖ They capture the systematic <u>sources of return</u> that affect an account's performance, they help managers and fund sponsors better understand a manager's investment style: 捕获影响账户业绩的系统性收益来源,帮助基金经理和基金资助人更好的了解基金经理的投资风格
 - ✓ Disadvantages:
 - ❖ they are <u>not always intuitive</u> to the fund sponsor and particularly to the investment managers: 对基金资助人不总是直观的,特别是投资经理
 - ❖ data and modeling are **not always available** and may be **expensive**: 历史数据或模型不可得或成本高
 - ❖ It may be **ambiguous** because different factor models can produce different output: 可能是模糊的,因为不同的因素模型可提供不同的输出结果
 - ★Returns-Based: 特殊的 Factor-Model-Based, 结合了 Style Indices 和 Factor-Model-Based 的特点, 用<u>固定的四个风格指数</u>回归所得到的多因素模型,R_B=b0+b1×R_{LV}+b2×R_{LG}+b3×R_{SV}+b4×R_{SG}+ ε (satisfy Unambiguous、Investable)

✓ Advantage:

- ❖ generally easy to use and are intuitively appealing: 通常易于使用和直观的显示
- ❖ satisfy most benchmark validity criteria: 满足大多数基准的有效性标准(好的基准)
- ◆ particularly useful in situations where the only information available is account returns: 特别适用于只知道账户收益率信息的情况

✓ Disadvantages:

- ◆ may hold positions in securities and economic sectors that a manager might find unacceptable: 可能持有的证券头寸和基金经理找到的经济因素是不可接受的
- ❖ require many months of observation to establish a statistically reliable pattern of style exposures: 需要几个月的观察来建立一个统计上可靠的风格敞口模式
- Custom Security-Based: 定制化的基准

✓ Advantage:

- ❖ Meets all of the required benchmark properties and <u>satisfies all of the benchmark</u> validity criteria: 满足基准特性的所有要求,所有的基准都是有效标准的
 - ❖ Allows continual monitoring of investment processes: 允许持续的监控投资过程
- ❖ Allow fund sponsors to effectively allocate risk across investment management teams: 允许基金的资助人有效的在投资管理团队分配风险

✓ Disadvantages:

- ❖ Can be <u>expensive</u> to construct and maintain:构建和维护的成本比较贵
- ❖ Lack of transparency: not composed of published indexes:缺乏透明度:不是公开的指数

summary	Absolute	Manager Universes	Broad Market Indices	Style Indices	Factor-Model -Based	Returns-Based	Custom Security- Based
Specified in advance	√	×	√	√			√
Appropriate		√	√	√			√
Measurable	√	√	√	√		√	√
Unambiguous		×	√	√	×	√ ·	√ ·
Investable	×	×	√	√	×	√	√

◆ ★★Tests of benchmark quality: 测试基准的质量: 6 种基准的(定量的)测试方法

- ★Minimum systematic bias:系统化偏误,越低越好
- ✓ <u>Regress the portfolio returns on the benchmark returns</u>, if the beta differs significantly from 1, benchmark not appropriate: 组合收益率和基准收益率做回归,如果 beta 显著的不同于 1,则基准是不合适的(beta 接近于 1 是比较好的基准,意味着基准上涨,组合也跟着同比上涨,因此是好的基准)
- ✓ **A=(P—B) and S=(B—M)**: A should be uncorrelated with the manager's investment style: 主动 投资收益与投资风格不相关
- ✓ **E=(P—M):** a good benchmark will have a statistically significant positive correlation coefficient between S (B-M) and E: 好的基准在统计上有显著的 S 和 E 的正相关性

结论: ρ (**A,S**)=**0**, ρ (**S,E**)=**1** 是好的基准,**解释**: A 和 S 无相关性,说明与基金经理劳动不相关的部分选择的准确,此时 A 更能体现基金经理劳动的能力; E=A+S,如果 S 和 E 的相关性接近于 1 ,说明 S 上涨,A+S 也等比上涨,此时 S 和 A 是无关的,因此体现了基金经理劳动的能力

● ★Minimum tracking error: 最小跟踪误差, 其值越小越好

判断条件(不考): $\sigma_{RP-RB} < \sigma_{RP-RM}$,则表示跟踪误差小,解释: RP 和 RB 的标准差比较小,说明两者比较像,因此基准体现了组合的特点; RP 和 RM 的标准差比较大,说明 RB 比 RM 更好的匹配了组合的收益率

● **Risk characteristics**: An account's exposure to systematic sources of risk should be very similar to those of the benchmark: 账户的系统性风险与基准的系统性风险的来源是类似的

- ✓ Coverage ratio: The coverage ratio is the market value of the securities that are in both the portfolio and benchmark as a percentage of the total market value of the portfolio.: 即基准与组合成份重合的部分是 多少,其值越大越好
- ✓ Turnover: Benchmark turnover is the proportion of the benchmark' s total market value that is bought or sold (i.e., turned over) during periodic rebalancing: 基准的 turnover 越小越好,即不需要频繁的 调仓换股
- ✓ **Positive active position:** An active position is the difference between the weight of a security or sector in the managed portfolio versus the benchmark: 正的主动头寸,其值越大越好,例如: A 股票在 基准中的权重是 5%,而基金经理在组合中配置的权重是 8%,因此正的主动头寸就是+3%,说明基金 经理认可基准中的成份(Reflective of the manager's current investment opinions)
- Performance measure methods of Hedge Fund: 对冲基金业绩衡量的方法:
 - 对冲基金可能先做空,拿到资金再去做多某标的,因此其可能期初投入成本为0,long的头寸和 short 的头寸分开计算收益率
 - 评估对冲基金的业绩可使用 value-added 的方法,即: Rv=Rp-RB
 - 对冲基金可能会使用 absolute return 做为基准
 - 对冲基金可能没有固定的风格或者基金经理也可能存在 style drift,例如:一段时间做多空,一段 时间做市场中性策略
 - 对冲基金的收益率可能不服从正态分布,因此 sharpe ratio 可能不可用
- Framework of Performance Attribution: 业绩归因的框架
 - ✓ Macro Attribution(stock): 宏观归因,站在 sponsor 角度(考计算)
 - Micro Attribution: 微观归因,站在 manager 的角度
 - ★★Allocation/Selection Attribution(stock)(考计算)
 - ★Fundamental Factor Model (stock) (考概念)
 - ★Fixed-income Portfolio Return Attribution (bond) (考概念)
- Macro Performance Attribution 的输入变量:
 - Policy Allocations: 战略型/战术型资产配置的权重
 - Benchmark Portfolio Returns: 基准的组合收益率(R_B)
 - Fund Returns, Valuations and External Cash Flows: 基金的收益率(RP), 估值和外部现金流
- 宏观归因分析中, sponsor 的收益率的来源分为 6 类: (站在 sponsor 角度)
 - 1) Net Contributions: 净贡献,指组合的收益率为 0,即什么都没有做(do nothing)
 - 2) Risk-Free Asset: 无风险资产, 所有资产配置在无风险资产上(例如: 买入 90-day Treasury bills)
 - 3) Asset Categories: 大类资产配置,即 pure-indexing strategy,例如:组合中股票配置了 70%, 债券配置了30%,股票和债券的指数称为RMi,另外权重称为Wi

$$R_{AC} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} (w_i) (R_{M,i} - R_F)$$

 $R_{AC} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} (w_i)(R_{M,i} - R_F)$ 计算通过大类的资产配置所获得的收益,即各大类资产的权重乘以大类市场收益与无风险收益的差(**剔除无风险收益的增值部分**)

备注: 如果没有进行大类资产配置,则只能获得无风险收益

4) Benchmarks level: 完成大类资产配置后,再大类内部进行不同风格的资产配置,风格的权重 称为Wi,j,而风格的指数称为 R_Bi,j (第i大类下的第j个类细分资产)

$$R_{B} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{m} (w_{i}) \left(w_{i,j} \right) \left(R_{B,i,j} - R_{M,i} \right)$$

$$R_{B} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (w_{j}) \left(R_{B,j} - R_{M,i} \right)$$

Only one manager per category

计算通过大类的资产配置中不同风格所获得的收益,即各 大类资产的权重乘以大类中不同风格的权重再乘以风格 收益与大类收益的差(剔除大类市场收益的增值部分)

备注: 如果只进行大类资产配置, 而不做不同风格的细节 配置,则只能获得 RMi 的收益

5) Investment Managers: 基金经理所带来的 active return, 其中基金经理的真实收益: Rp,i,j

$$R_{IM} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{m} (w_i) (w_{i,j}) (R_{P,i,j} - R_{B,i,j})$$

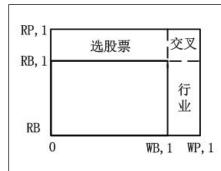
计算基金经理主动管理的业绩,即各大类权重乘以 $R_{IM} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{m} \left(w_i \right) \left(w_{i,j} \right) \left(R_{P,i,j} - R_{\mathrm{B,i,j}} \right)$ 大类中不同风格的权重再乘以每个风格组合中基金经理的直实业绩 $\mathrm{Roi}\,\mathrm{i}\,\mathrm{j}$ 与风格指数的差 金经理的真实业绩 Rpi,j 与风格指数的差

备注: 如果资助人没有请基金经理人去管理不同大 类下的不同风格的资产,则只能获得 R_Bi,j 的收益

● 6) Allocation Effects: 调平项

注音: R_P=Net Contributions+Risk-Free Asset+Asset Categories+Benchmarks level+Investment Managers, 如果等式两边不平,则相差的部分记入 Allocation Effects

- ◆ **微观归因中第一类归因方法:** Allocation/Selection Attribution, value-added return 来源自以下三个方面(站在基金经理的角度)
 - pure sector allocation: 行业选的好(权重的差别)
 - allocations-selection interaction: 交叉项(即选了好行业,又选了行业中的好股票)
 - within-sector selection: 选股选的好(收益的差别)



选行业的 $\alpha: (W_{P}, 1 - W_{B}, 1) \times (R_{B}, 1 - R_{B})$

选股票的 $\alpha: W_{B}, 1 \times (R_{P}, 1 - R_{B}, 1)$

交叉项的 a: (W_P,1 - W_B,1)×(R_P,1 - R_B,1)

★★注意:基金经理在做业绩归因时,业绩的起点是 R_B,而不是 0

选行业的总 α : $\Sigma(W_P, 1 - W_B, 1) \times (R_B, 1 - R_B)$

选股票的总 α : $\Sigma W_{B,1} \times (R_{P,1} - R_{B,1})$

交叉项的总 α : $\Sigma(W_P, 1 - W_B, 1) \times (R_P, 1 - R_B, 1)$

总的超额收益:即为上面三项相加

Overweight outperforming sector	positive contribution	
Underweight outperforming sector	negative contribution	
Overweight underperforming sector	negative contribution	
Underweight underperforming sector	positive contribution	

- ◆ 微观归因中第二类归因方法: Fundamental Factor Model Micro Attribution (回归的分析方法)
 - 考点 1: 模型的输入变量(Input/factor):
 - ✓ Total market timing: 择时
 - ✓ Total fundamental risk factors: 基本面
 - ✓ Total economic sectors: 行业
 - ✓ Specific (unexplained): 调平项(不考)
 - 考点 2: α的计算,α=Rp-Rp:Actual portfolio return—Normal portfolio return
 - **考点 3: 模型的原理:** 通过因子与基准和组合进行回归,得到两者的回归方程,再用 R_P-R_B 得到 超额收益的回归方程

$R_B=b0+b1\times F1+b2\times F2++bn\times Fn+\epsilon$	Portfolio Exposure=b1' R _P 的系数
$R_P=b0'+b1'\times F1+b2'\times F2++bn'\times Fn+\epsilon$	Normal Exposure=b1 R _B 的系数
$\alpha = R_P - R_B = (b0' - b0) + (b1' - b1) \times F1 + (b2' - b2) \times F2 + + (bn' - bn) \times Fn$	Active Exposure=(b1'-b1) α的系数
结论1: 系数越大,这个因子对超额收益的贡献就越大	Active Impact=(bn'-bn)×Fn
结论 2: 某一个因子对超额收益的影响(impact): (bn'-bn)×Fn	

● **考点 4: 考法:** 判断某个因子对超额收益的贡献大或小,通过 a 回归方程系数的大小进行判断

	Allocation/selection Attribution	Fundamental Factor Model Attribution		
	1. Decompose the performance as sectors and	1. Consider other factors, like fundamental		
Strengths	securities	factors/例如: 择时		
	2. Easy to calculate			
	1. Identify an suitable benchmark is necessary	1. Factors should be predetermined		
Weelmag	2. Knock-on effect/join effect (重复的影响,	2. Could be quite complex and problematic		
Weakness	例如:交叉项,但其值小意义有限) will			
	happen on security selection			

- ◆ 微观归因中第三类归因方法: Fixed-income Portfolio Return Attribution(回归的分析方法)
 - 考点 1: 模型的输入变量(Input/factor):

- ✓ Interest Rate Effect: 基准利率的影响
- ✓ Interest Rate Management Effect: 利率管理的影响: 管理 duration、convexity、yield curve
- ✓ Other Management Effects: 其它方面的管理(选行业,选债券)
- ✓ Trading activity return: 调平项 (不考)
- 考点 2: bond portfolio benchmark: 特指 YTM of treasury bond (长期国债的收益率)

注意: 国债 <u>Interest Rate Effect</u>影响,因此其 <u>Interest Rate Management Effect</u>和 <u>Other Management Effects</u>的影响都为 0

- 考点 3: Interest Rate Effect 对所有债券组合与基准(portfolio 与 benchmark)的影响是一致的
- **考点 4:考法**:给出一种结论,通过数据判断这种结论是否正确,例如:结论为基金经理先债券的能力强,数据显示基金经理的 bond selectivity 为 0.12,结论正确
- 三. Performance Appraisal: 业绩评估(基于 risk-adjusted performance)
- ◆ Performance Appraisal Measures: 业绩评估的度量
 - Ex-Post Alpha: 即 Jensen's alpha, 事后收益减去期望收益(期望收益即为要求回报率,通过 CAPM 模型计算),公式: Jensen's alpha=R_{AT}—E(R)
- ✓ A portfolio that generates a positive alpha would plot above the SML: 正超额收益在 SML 线上方
- ✓ A portfolio that generates a zero alpha would plot on the SML: 零超额收益在 SML 线上
- ✓ A portfolio that generates a negative alpha would plot below the SML: 负超额收益在 SML 线下方 注意: Ex-Post Alpha/Jensen's alpha 用于衡量分散化(diversification)的组合,因为 Ex-Post Alpha/Jensen's alpha 只考虑了系统性风险,因此只能是充分分散化的组合才只有系统性风险
- Treynor Ratio: 分子: 组合收益减去无风险收益,分母: beta,公式: T_A=(R_P—Rf)/β_P
 注意: Treynor ratio 用于衡量分散化 (diversification) 的组合,因为 Treynor ratio 只考虑了系统性风险
- Sharpe Ratio: 分子: 组合收益减去无风险收益,分母: 组合标准差,公式: SR=(R_P—Rf)/σ_P
 注意: Sharpe ratio 考虑的是总风险,用于衡量集中的(concentrated)的组合
 - Information Ratio: 分子: 组合收益减基准收益,即超额收益,分母: 超额收益的标准差(衡量承担每单位的 active risk 所获得的 active return),公式: IR=(R_P—R_B)/σ_(RP—RB)
- M^2 : 公式: $M^2=RF+[(R_P-Rf)/\sigma_P]\sigma_M$, 其值越大越好,另外 sharpe ratio 高,则 M^2 也高**注意**: M^2 考虑的是总风险,用于衡量<u>集中的(concentrated)</u>的组合

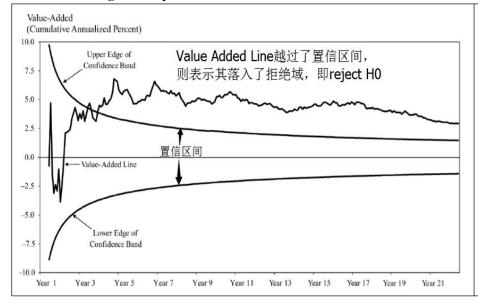
考试技巧:考试让计算 M^2 最高的组合,只需要计算 sharpe ratio 最高的即可,因为两者排序相同 **经济学解读**:无风险收益+承担与市场组合相同的风险所获得的风险溢价(期望收益)

总结: well-diversified: 用 Jensen's alpha、Treynor Ratio 衡量; concentrated: 用 Sharpe Ratio、M² 衡量

★Quality Control Charts: 质量控制图,即通过假设检验验证基金经理是否真的产生了超额收益

 H_A :: The manager adds positive value: 即 $\alpha > 0$ (基金经理表现好)

H₀: The expected value-added return is zero: 即 α =0 (基金经理表现差)



备注: reject H_0 表示基金经理产生了超额收益

- ◆ Manager Continuation Policy (MCP): 基金经理的录用政策
 - One performance period (or too few periods) insufficient to determine whether good or not: 一个业绩评估期(或过少的业绩评估期)不足以决定基金经理的好坏
- ◆ ★Type I error and type II error: 一类错误和二类错误(最二的错误,更严重)

Type I error: keeping managers with zero value-added(拒真,拒绝真的原假设,即拒绝了基金经理业绩差的情况,结果: 留用业绩差的基金经理)

Type II error: firing managers with positive value-added(存伪,接受错的原假设,接受了基金经理业绩差的假象,结果:开除业绩好的基金经理)

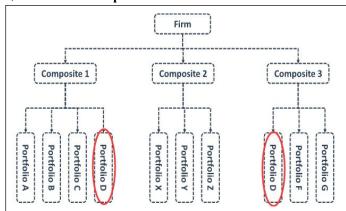
总结: 一类错误相当于拿回一袋垃圾; 二类错误相当于丢弃一袋金子

SS 18: GLOBAL INVESTMENT PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

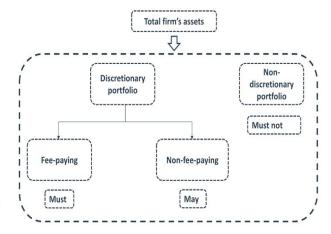
R34 Overview of the Global Investment Performance Standards: 全球投资业绩标准概览 GIPS 的核心是投资业绩的标准化(Standardized Investment Performance)

- ◆ The goals of the GIPS: GIPS 的目标
- ★The GIPS are <u>voluntary</u>(自愿),<u>minimum standards</u>(最低标准)for performance presentation **备注**: GIPS 是自愿遵守(voluntary);ethics 是强制遵守(mandatory)
- ◆ Edition of GIPS: GIPS 的版本
 - ★目前使用的 GIPS 标准是 2010 年版本,生效日期为 2011 年 1 月 1 日 (effective date for the 2010 edition of the GIPS standards is 1 January 2011), 新增风险的衡量 (related to risk)
- ◆ Implementation of GIPS: GIPS 的实施
 - ★ In cases in which laws and/or regulations conflict with the GIPS standards, firms are required to comply with the laws and regulations and make full disclosure of the conflict in the compliant presentation: GIPS 与法律、法则相冲突时,应遵循法律、法规,并披露所有的冲突
- ◆ Glossary of GIPS: GIPS 的术语
 - ✓LINK: 只能 LINK actual performance
- ✓ **Mathematical Linking**:数学上的关联,例如:TWRR 计算中 TWRR=(1+r1)(1+r2)-1,即将两段收益率关联在一起
- ✓ Presentational Linking:将若干年的历史业绩连同当年业绩一同展示
- ★ GROSS-OF-FEES: The return on investments reduced by any <u>TRANSACTION EXPENSES</u> incurred during the period: 扣减交易费用的收益率
- ★ NET-OF-FEES: The GROSS-OF-FEES return reduced by <u>INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT</u> <u>FEES</u>(including <u>PERFORMANCE-BASED FEES</u> and <u>CARRIED INTEREST</u>).: 扣減交易费和管理费,以及绩效资金的收益率
- ★TRADE DATE ACCOUNTING: GIPS 遵循 TRADE DATE ACCOUNTING (类似 accrual basis)
- ✓ 在对 bond 进行估值时,要考虑 clean price + accrual interest
- ✓ 在 T+3 日以内,确认资产和负债的情况就满足 TRADE DATE ACCOUNTING
- SETTLEMENT DATE ACCOUNTING: 类似 cash basis
- ◆ 9 sections of GIPS: GIPS 的 9 个主要组合部分(其中 0-5 是重要的部分)
- 0. Fundamentals of compliance: 遵循 GIPS 规定最基本的要求
- 1. Input data: 计算收益的数据基础和要求
- 2. Calculation methodology: 有了数据之后采用什么方法计算
- 3. Composite construction: 有了计算方法之后如何构建 composite
- 4. Disclosure: 完成了准备工作之后, 具体应该如何披露
- 5. Presentation and reporting: 完成了准备工作之后,具体应该如何显示及报告
- 6. Real estate: 针对房地产投资的补充准则
- 7. Private equity: 针对私募股权投资的补充准则
- 8. Wrap fee/Separately Managed Account(SMA) Portfolios: 针对独立核算/专户投资的的补充准则
- **备注**: GIPS 条款分为 A 和 B 两类,其中 A: requited (要求); B: recommendation (推荐), **注意**: 推荐的规则更为严格
- ◆ GIPS Framework: GIPS 的框架(金程重新编排,关注 0-5 sections)
- 一. Part1 Compliance Standards: 符合的标准
- ★0.A.1 Comply with all the requirements of the GIPS standards: 遵循 GIPS 的所有要求,不能部分遵循
- ★ 0.A.2 Comply with all applicable laws and regulations regarding the calculation and presentation of performance: 遵循所有关于计算和业绩展示所适用的法律法则(GIPS 与法律、法则相冲突时,应遵循法律、法规,并披露所有的冲突)
 - ✓ 4.A.22 Laws/regulations that conflict with GIPS: fact and how

- **√**0.A.5 Firms must <u>document policies and procedures</u> used in establishing and maintaining compliance with the GIPS standards: 企业必须记录制定和维护 GIPS 标准的过程中使用的政策和程序
 - ✓ GIPS 要求最少披露 <u>10 年的业绩</u>记录,如果是已经清盘的基金(terminated portfolio)也要披露至 少 5 年的业绩
- 二.Part2 Compliance Width:GIPS 遵循的范围(以 Investment Firm 为单位)
- **♦** Part 2.1 Compliance Width Firm



- 结构: Firm→composite→portfolio
- 业绩报告单位为: composite (组合组,将 风险、特征、收益、投资目标相类似的组 合放在一起)
- Composite 的划分标准是灵活的(flexible), 只要能够说明划分逻辑及规则即可,例如: 按行业划分,按风格划分
- 如果某个portfolio同时满足多个composite 的定义时,要将这个portfolio同时放入这些composite中(防止cherry picking)
- **√**0.A.4 The GIPS standards must be applied on a firm-wide basis: 以公司为基础遵循 GIPS 标准
- ✓ 0.A.12 Firms must be defined as an investment firm, subsidiary, or division held out to clients or prospective clients as a distinct business entity: 公司必须被定义为一个投资公司,子公司或部门作为一个独立的商业实体呈现给客户或潜在客户
 - ✓ Firm 的定义: A unit, division, department, or office that is <u>organizationally and functionally segregated</u>: 一个单位、部门,部门或办公室,组织和功能独立(有自主决策权)的单位,部门,办公室都可被称为 firm(母公司不遵循 GIPS 时,只要子公司是 discretionary 的,则子公司可以单独遵循 GIPS)
- ★0.A.13 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, <u>total firm assets</u> must be the aggregate <u>fair value</u> of all discretionary and non-discretionary assets managed by the firm. this includes both fee-paying and non-fee-paying portfolios: 从 2011 年 1 月 1 日开始,公司总资产必须是公司管理的所有可自主决策资产和非自主决策资产的总公允价值。这包括付费和非付费投资组合
- **♦** Part 2.2 Compliance Width Composite
- 【3.A.4 Composites must be defined according to investment mandate, objective, or strategy. ★Composites must include all portfolios that meet the composite definition. ★Any change to a composite definition must not be applied retroactively.★The composite definition must be made available upon request: composite 必须基于投资指令,目标,策略进行定义。组合组必须包含符合组合组定义的所有投资组合(★投资组合至少放进一个组合组)。任何组合组定义的改变必须不能追溯调整历史业绩,例如:组合组的定义发生变化时,某个投资组合已经不符合本组合组,需要将其移出此组合组,但这个投资组合的历史业绩不能被移出。客户想要关于组合组定义的资料时,公司要提供
- ★3.A.1 All actual, fee-paying, discretionary portfolios must be included in at least one composite. Although non-fee-paying discretionary portfolios may be included in a composite (with appropriate disclosure), non-discretionary portfolios must not be included in a firm's composites: 所有真实付费自主决策的投资组合必须被包含进至少一个组合组。虽然非付费自主决策的投资组合可以放进组合组(适时披露),但是非自主决策的投资组合不能被包含进公司的组合组



注意: 一旦决定将 non-fee-paying discretionary portfolios 放进组合组中时,需要额外披露非付费自主决策

的投资组合占整个组合组的百分比

- **√**0.A.10 Firms must provide a complete list of composite descriptions to any prospective client that makes such a request. **√** Firms must include terminated composites on the firm's list of composite descriptions for at least five years after the composite termination date: 公司必须提供组合组描述的完整列表给任何潜在客户。在组合组终止日期后至少五年内,公司必须将终止的组合组列入公司组合组的清单中
- 4.A.11 Firm's list of composite descriptions is available upon request: 公司的组合组描述清单要求提供 给客户(只要客户想要)
- **√**3.A.2 Composites must include only <u>actual assets</u> managed by the firm: 组合组必须只能包含公司真实管理的资产
- ★3.A.3 Firms must not link performance of <u>simulated or model</u> portfolios with actual performance: 公司必须不能将模拟或模型回测的投资组合与真实的投资组合的业绩关联在一起
 - ✓ **注意**:模拟和模型回测的业绩可以放进补充信息(supplementary information)
- 3.A.5 Composites must include <u>new portfolios</u> on a timely and consistent basis after each portfolio comes under management: 公司管理的每一个新的投资组合应以及时且一致的基础加入组合组
- **♦** Part 2.3 Compliance Width Portfolio
- **√** 0.A.14 Total firm assets must include assets assigned to a sub-advisor provided the firm has <u>discretion</u> over the selection of the sub-advisor: 如果次要投资人的选择权属于公司,那么次要投资人的资产也必须包含进公司的资产(由客户指定的次要投资人,其管理的资产,不能包含进主要投资人的总资产中)
- 3.A.8 For periods >= 2010, a <u>carve-out</u>(本意: 挖出,译为: 复制) must not be included in a composite unless the carve-out is managed separately with its own cash balance: 2010 年以后,必须不能将投资组合复制进新符合其定义的组合组,除非是有独立核算管理账户(非资金池)的投资组合
 - ✓ 4.A.23 Before 2010, disclose policy used to allocate cash to carve-outs
 - ✓ 5.A.5 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2006 and ending prior to 1 January 2011, if a composite includes carve-outs, the firm must present the <u>percentage of composite assets represented by</u> carve-outs as of each annual period end

2010 年以前,非独立核算管理账户的投资组合也可以复制进新的组合组,但要披露两个信息:现金分配政策(cash allocation policy),即资产池的剩余现金如何分配的政策;复制出的投资组合占整体组合组的百分比

- ★3.A.9 If the firm sets a <u>minimum asset level for portfolios</u> to be included in a composite, the firm must not include portfolios below the minimum asset level in that composite. Any changes to a composite-specific minimum asset level <u>must not be applied retroactively</u>: 公司可以设置组合组中投资组合的最小资产规模,低于最小资产规模的投资组合不能被包含进组合组中。任何组合组的最小资产规模的改变都必须不能追溯调整历史业绩。
- **√**3.A.7 Portfolios must not be switched from one composite to another unless documented changes to a portfolio's investment mandate, objective, or strategy or the redefinition of the composite makes it appropriate. The historical performance of the portfolio must remain with the original composite. Changes to composite definitions must not be applied retroactively: 投资组合必须不能从一个组合组转移到另一个组合组除非投资组合的投资指令,目标,策略发生改变或者组合组被合适的重新定义。投资组合的历史业绩必须保留在以前的组合组中。组合组定义的改变必须不能追溯调整历史业绩。
- ✓3.A.6 <u>Terminated portfolios</u> must be included in the historical performance of the composite up to the <u>last full measurement period</u> that each portfolio was under management: 业绩不足一年,一定不能将收益率进行年化,这种情况下可进行两种方法的业绩披露: 1.披露 HPY; 2.披露上一个完整的计量期间的业绩
- ★3.A.10 Firms that wish to remove portfolios from composites in cases of <u>significant cash flows</u> must define "significant" on an ex-ante, composite-specific basis and must consistently follow the composite-specific policy: 存在大额现金流量情况下,公司希望从组合组中移除投资组合,必须在事前、基于特定组合组并且遵循特定组合组政策的情况下,定义何为重大现金流

例如:一个组合组的市值为10亿,当前有一个新的客户要投资5亿现金到这个组合组,因为大额现金

流的进入会使得组合组的收益率偏离(cash drag),因此有两种处理方法:

- **Best solution**:成立临时账户(new, temporary, subaccount)将 5 亿现金存入,并经过 3 个月的建仓期,购买可投资资产,3 个月后将临时账户并入之前的组合组再披露业绩(不影响业绩的披露)
- Alternative solution: 直接将 5 亿现金并入组合组,通过接下来的 3 个月作为建仓期进行资产配置,在这 3 个月内暂停计算组合组的业绩,3 个月之后再进行业绩的计算(影响业绩的披露)

◆ Part 2.4 Compliance Width -No partial comply

● 0.A.6 If the Firm does not meet all the requirements of the GIPS standards, the must not represent or state that it is "in compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards except for..." or make any other statements that may indicate partial compliance with the GIPS standards: 如果公司没有全部符合 GIPS 标准的所有要求,则必须不能宣称"遵循了 GIPS 标准,除了..."或者其它声明去表明部分遵循了 GIPS

三. Part 3 Return Calculation: 收益率的计算

- ◆ Part 3.1 Return Calculation -Basic Principle
- ✓ 1.A.2 For periods beginning on or after 1 January 2011, PORTFOLIOS MUST be valued in accordance with the definition of <u>FAIR VALUE</u>: 从 2011 年 1 月 1 日之后,投资组合的估值必须基于公允价值
- ★4.A.12 FIRMS MUST disclose that policies for valuing PORTFOLIOS, calculating performance, and preparing COMPLIANT PRESENTATIONS are <u>available upon request</u>: 公司必须披露投资组合估值,计算业绩和准备组合组展示的政策,如果这些信息客户需要,就一定要提供(**这句话一定要在业绩披露的文件中呈现**)
- 【1.A.6 Accrual accounting must be used for fixed-income securities and all other investments that earn interest income. The value of fixed-income securities must include accrued income: 权责发生制记账必须被用于固定收益证券和全部其它可以获得利率收入的投资品。固定收益证券的估值必须包含应计利息
- 【4.A.27 When >= 2011, disclose use of subjective unobservable inputs for valuing portfolio: 2011 年以后,要披露投资组合估值中使用的主观不可预测的输入数据(例如:投资品的公允价值不能可靠获得时,需要用到主观的估计,根据可靠性进行排序 1-4)

	1) Market value: 市场价格(交易活跃)
objective	2) Quoted prices for less actively traded identical or very similar investments: 交易不活跃的
	报价或相似投资品的报价
	3) Using market-based inputs to estimate price: 使用基于市场的输入数据的估计的价格(利
gubicativa	用 P/E 或 dividend yield 通过模型进行估值)
subjective	4) Price estimates based on not directly observable inputs: 基于不直接客观的输入数据进行
	估值(discounted free cash flow)

● 【4.A.28 When>=2011, disclose if composite's valuation hierarchy materially differs: 2011 年之后,如果 组合组的估值等级发生重大差异,需要披露出来(例如:觉得 1 不能很好代表资产价值时,使用 2 价值就视为 hierarchy materially differs,通常只允许估值变的更低的情况下使得 hierarchy 发生改变)

◆ Part 3.2 Return Calculation - Calculation Frequency-Portfolio Return

- ◆2.A.2 Firms must calculate time-weighted rates of return that adjust for external cash flows. Both periodic and sub-period returns must be geometrically linked. External cash flows must be treated according to the firm's composite-specific policy. At a minimum: 公司必须计算 TWRR 去调整外部现金流的影响。定期的和子周期的收益率两者都必须几何关联。外部现金流必须基于特定的组合组策略进行处理,收益率计算期限的最小要求:
 - ✓ ★a. For periods >= 2001, must calculate portfolio returns at least <u>monthly</u>: 2001 年之后,必须至少每个月计算投资组合的收益率
 - ✓ ★b. For periods >= 2005, must calculate portfolio returns that adjust for <u>daily-weighted external cash</u> flows: 2005 年以后,必须计算调整了按天为权重的外部现金流影响的投资组合收益率
- ★1.A.3 Firms must value portfolios in accordance with the composite-specific valuation policy. Portfolios must be valued: 公司必须依据特定的组合组策略对投资组合进行估值,投资组合的估值必须:
 - ✓ ★For periods >= 2001, at least monthly: 2001 年以后,至少每个月披露业绩

✓ ★For periods >= 2010, on the date of <u>all large cash flows</u>. Firms must define large cash flow for each composite to determine when portfolios in that composite must be valued: 2010 年以后,在出现大额现金流的当日估值,公司必须为每个组合组定义大额现金流的规模,当出现大额现金流时要马上对投资组合进行估值

2001 2005 Ovininal Dieta	$R_P = [MV_1 - (MV_0 + CF)]/(MV_0 + CF \times 0.5)$
2001-2005 Original Dietz	假设: 所有 external CF 发生在 mid-point, 因此 CF 对期初的影响是 50%
2005-2010 Modified Dietz	$R_{P}=[MV_{1}-(MV_{0}+CF)]/(MV_{0}+CF\times\Sigma Wi)$
2005-2010 Modified Dietz	Wi=(30-t)/30,考虑了 external CF 按时间加权的影响
>=2010 TWRR	$R_P=(1+r1)(1+r2)-1$

注意: significant CF 是站在 composite 角度的大额现金流; large CF 是站在 portfolio 角度的大额现金流

- 1.A.5 For periods >= 2005, firms must use trade date accounting: 2005 年以后,公司必须类似权责发生制的方式进行记账
- 1.A.4 For periods >= 2010, firms must value portfolios as of the <u>calendar month end or the last business day</u> of the month: 2010 年以后,公司必须在每个月的月底或每个月的最后一个交易日进行估值

Geometric Linking:	注意: TWRR=Daily valuation method	
每季度: R _Q =[(1+R _{M1})(1+R _{M2})(1+R _{M3})]-1	每年: R _{YR} =[(1+R _{Q1})(1+R _{Q2})(1+R _{Q3})(1+R _{Q4})]-1	

- ◆ Part 3.3 Return Calculation Calculation Frequency-Composite Return
- 2.A.6 Composite returns must be calculated by asset-weighting the individual portfolio returns using beginning-of-period values or a method that reflects both beginning-of-period values and external cash flows: 组合组的收益率必须以期初估值或反应期初估值和外部现金流的模型的资产估值为权重的每个投资组合的收益率来计算
- 2.A.7 Composite returns must be calculated
 - ✓ a. For periods>= 2006, by asset weighting at least <u>quarterly</u>: 2006 的以后,最少每季度使用资产加权的方式对组合组进行估值
 - ✓ ★b. For periods>= 2010, by asset-weighting at least <u>monthly</u>: 2010 的以后,最少每个月使用资产加权的方式对组合组进行估值
- ◆ Composite 的 return 的三种计算方法:
- 1) BMV: beginning market value-weighted method

 \mathbf{R}_{P} = \mathbf{W}_{1} × \mathbf{R}_{1} + \mathbf{W}_{2} × \mathbf{R}_{2} +...+ \mathbf{W}_{n} × \mathbf{R}_{n} ,只考虑期初估值,各投资组合以资产为权重加权求和

2) BMV+CF: beginning market value plus cash flow method

 $R_P=W_1\times R_1+W_2\times R_2+...+W_n\times R_n$,考虑了期初估值和外部现金流

Portfolio	BMV	CF t=5	CF t=10	CF t=15	Valuation	weighting
A	15	5			$15+5\times25/30=V_A$	$W_A = V_A / (V_A + V_B + V_C)$
В	10		5		$10+5\times20/30=V_{\rm B}$	$W_B=V_B/(V_A+V_B+V_C)$
С	5			5	$5+5 \times 15/30 = V_C$	$W_C = V_C / (V_A + V_B + V_C)$

注意: Wn 的计算要考虑外部现金流的影响

- 3) **aggregate method**: 原理:将 composite 整体视为一个 portfolio,使用 modified Dietz 方法计算这个整体 portfolio 的收益率(各 portfolio 的 BMV 和 EMV 叠加,期间所有 CF 作为整体 portfolio 的外部现金流)
- ◆ Part 3.4 Return Calculation Calculation Frequency-Fee Issues
- ✓ 2.A.4 All returns must be calculated after the deduction of the <u>actual trading expenses</u> incurred during the period. Firms must not use estimated trading expenses: 所有收益必须在计算之前扣减期间真实发生的交易费用。公司必须不能估计交易费用
- \star 2.A.5 If the actual trading expenses cannot be identified and segregated from a <u>bundled fee</u>:
 - ✓ For gross-of-fees returns, returns must be reduced by the entire bundled fee or the portion of the bundled fee that includes the trading expenses: 关于 gross-of-fee 的收益率必须扣減 bundled fee 或者 bundled fee 中包含 trading expense 的部分

bundled fee: 打包费用,将 trading expense、management fee、carried interest、administration fee、custodian

fee 等细分费用打包在一起收取,这个整体费用就称为打包费

注意:如果 bundled fee 中 trading expense 是已知的,此时在披露 cross-of-fee 业绩时,也需要将 trading expense 扣减掉;如果 bundled fee 中 trading expense 是未知的,此时在披露 cross-of-fee 业绩时,要将 bundled fee 都扣减掉(保守原则)

- ★5.A.6 If a composite includes non-fee-paying portfolios, the firm must present the <u>percentage</u> of composite assets represented by <u>non-fee-paying portfolios</u> as of each annual period end: 如果组合组包含非付费投资组合,公司必须每年底展示非付费投资组合在整个组合组中的百分比
- ★ 5.A.7 If a composite includes portfolios with bundled fees, the firm must present the <u>percentage</u> of composite assets represented by portfolios with <u>bundled fees</u> as of each annual period end: 如果组合组包含有打包费(trading expense 未知)的投资组合,公司必须第年底展示有打包费的投资组合占整个组合组的百分比(用于向投资人披露,这种情况下收益率是低估的)

四. Presentation & Disclosure: 业绩展示与披露

- ◆ Part 4.1 Presentation & Disclosure- Basic Information (必须要展示的部分)
- ◆ Definitions: 定义
 - 4.A.2 Definition of Firm: 公司的定义
 - 4.A.3 <u>Composite</u> description: 组合组的描述
 - 4.A.4 Benchmark description: 基准的描述(组合组和基准要同时披露以作比较)

◆ Fee: 费率

- 4.A.5 Gross-of-fees: any other fees deducted in addition to trading expenses: 对于 gross-of-fee, (包含)扣减交易费用以外的其它任何费用
- 4.A.6 Net-of-fees returns: any other fees in addition to investment mgt fees and trading expenses; if model or actual investment mgt fees are used; if net of performance-based fees: 对于 net-of-fee, (包含) 扣减管理费和交易费用的其它任何费用
- ◆ 4.A.9 Fee Schedule: 费率结构(费率的百分比)
- ◆ 4.A.7 Currency: 货币计量单位
- **♦** Part 4.2 Presentation & Disclosure- Return Presentation
- **√**0.A.16 When the firm jointly markets with other firms (联合营销), the firm claiming compliance with the GIPS standards must be sure that it is clearly defined and separate relative to other firms being marketed, and that it is clear which firm is claiming compliance: 当公司存在联合营销的情况,公司宣称遵循了 GIPS 标准,则必须明确定义和分离另一个公司,说明是哪一个公司遵循了 GIPS
- **√**5.A.4 Returns for periods of <u>less than one year must not be annualized</u>: 不足一年的业绩不得年化(两种方法: 1.披露 HPY; 2.披露上一个完整年度的业绩)
- ◆ 5.A.3 Firms must <u>not link non-GIPS-compliant</u> performance for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2000 to their GIPS-compliant performance. Firms may link non-GIPS-compliant performance to GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods beginning on or after 1 January 2000: 2000 年 1 月 1 日之后遵循 GIPS 标准的组合组与未遵循 GIPS 标准 的组合组的业绩不能关联(需要先将未遵循 GIPS 标准的组合组业绩按 GISP 标准进行调整之后再关 联),2000 年 1 月 1 日之前未遵循 GIPS 标准的组合组可以与遵循 GIPS 标准的组合组的业绩相关联



▶ √ 5.A.8 a. Performance of a past firm or affiliation must be linked to or used to represent the historical

performance of a new or acquiring firm if the three conditions are met, on a composite-specific basis: 过去的公司或附属机构的业绩必须与一个新收购的公司的历史业绩相联系展示,如果在特定的组合组具体基础上,三个条件被满足:

- ✓ substantially all of the <u>investment decision makers</u> are employed by the new or acquiring firm (e.g., research department staff, portfolio managers, and other relevant staff): 投资决策的制定者基本被继续雇佣
- ✓ the decision-making process remains substantially intact and independent within the new or acquiring firm: 决策的流程基本上保持原来的样子
- ✓ the new or acquiring firm has <u>records</u> that document and support the performance: 新公司和并购公司要有业绩的记录和归档做支持
- ★5.A.2 For periods <u>beginning on or after 1 January 2011</u>, firms must present, as of each annual period end: 2011 年 1 月 1 日之后,公司必须每年低披露(关于风险):
 - ✓ a. The <u>three-year annualized ex-post standard deviation</u> (using monthly returns) of both the (7) <u>composite</u> and the (8) <u>benchmark</u>: 使用月度收益率计算的组合组和基准的过去三年事后的年化标准差(external risk,站在 composite 角度)
- ★ Internal dispersion: a measure of the spread of the annual returns of individual portfolios within a composite. It allows clients to see how consistently the firm implemented its strategy across individual portfolios: 衡量单一投资组合与组合组的年化收益的差值,它允许客户了解公司单一投资组合中如何贯彻其策略(internal risk,站在 portfolio 角度)
 - ✓ Highest and lowest returns earned by portfolios that were in the composite for the full year: 组合组中将投资组合全年的收益率最高的和最低的相减(优点:简单;缺点:易受 outlier 影响)
 - ✔ High/low range: 最高的收益除以最低的收益(优点: 简单; 缺点: 易受 outlier 影响)
 - ✓ The equal-weighted stand deviation of returns to portfolios in the composite: 组合组中投资组合的等权重的收益率标准差
 - ✓ The asset-weighted stand deviation: 以资产规模加权的收益率标准差
 - ✓ The interquartile range: 1/4 分位数排名减去 3/4 分位数排名(优点:最不容易受 outlier 影响)

♦ Part 4.3 Presentation & Disclosure-Benchmark

- ✓4.A.29 Disclose if no benchmark: why: 披露如果没有基准的原因(例如: hedging fund)
- ★4.A.30 Disclose if changes the benchmark: date, description, reason: 如果基准发生变化,需要披露,变化的日期,相关描述以及原因
 - ✓ In most cases, the benchmark is changed from one benchmark to another on a <u>prospective basis only</u>: 多数情况下,基准的改变只能是基于前瞻性的(不能追溯调整基准)
 - ✓ there may be times when a firm determines that it is appropriate to change the benchmark for <u>a given</u> composite retroactively: 当公司认为修改后的基准比以前的基准更为适合时,可以基于特定的组合组进行追溯

♦ Part 4.4 Presentation & Disclosure-Compliance Presentation

- Verification: 外部验证,站在 firm 角度
 - ✓ 通过独立第三方(independent third party)验证公司层面是否真的遵守了 GIPS 的全部标准
 - ✓ 外部验证是自发性的(voluntary)
 - ✓ 必须先进行 verification 再进行 examination

Verification	Examination	GIPS
√	√	
√	×	符合 GIPS 标准
×	×	

- ✓ 关于遵循 GIPS 标准的宣称文件有三种不同情况的标准段,其中除了公司名和日期,其它的内容都必须完全一致
- ✓ 如果公司做了 verification,独立第三方会出具 verification report,只要客户想要,我要提供给客户
- Examination: 内部验证, 站在 composite 角度, 验算 composite 业绩的计算是否遵循了 GIPS 的标准并

计算正确

- 5.A.1 The following items must be presented in each compliant presentation: 必须展示
 - ✓ a. At least 5 years of performance (or since inception if less than five years) that meets the requirements of the GIPS standards. After a firm presents a minimum of five years of GIPS compliant performance, the firm must present an additional year of performance each year, building up to a minimum of 10 years of GIPS compliant performance: 一个公司宣称遵循了 GIPS 的标准,至少要展示自成立之日起或至少近 5 年的业绩(历史业绩可能需要按 GIPS 调整),之后要继续累加,展示最少 10 年的业绩
- ★5.A.1 The following items must be presented in each compliant presentation: 必须展示
 - ✓ ★e. The total return for the (2) <u>benchmark</u> for each <u>annual period</u>. The benchmark must reflect the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the composite: 每年展示基准的总收益率,基准必须反应组合组的投资指令,目标,策略
 - ✓ ★ f. The (3) <u>number of portfolios</u> in the composite as of each annual period end. If the composite contains <=5 portfolios at period end, the number of portfolios is not required: 每年底展示组合组中包含的投资组合数量。如果组合组中小于 5 个投资组合(展示 <=5),此时不需要展示组合组中投资组合的数量
 - ✓ ★g. (4) Composite assets as of each annual period end: 每年底展示组合组中总资产的公允价值
 - ✓ ★h. (5) Either total firm assets or composite assets as a percentage of total firm assets, as of each annual period end: 每年底展示公司总资产的公允价值或组合组占公司总资产公允价值的百分比
 - ✓ ★i. A measure of (6) <u>internal dispersion</u> of individual portfolio returns for each annual period. If the composite contains <=5 portfolios for the full year, a measure of internal dispersion is not required: 每年展示单一投资组合收益率的内部风险。如果组合组中全年投资组合的数量小于 5 个,可以不展示

◆ Retroactively: must not Composite definition Composite minimum asset level Benchmark(一般不可追溯调整,特殊情况下可以)

◆ Available upon request: Composite definition/description Composite policies for valuing Verification report (或有)

◆ Percentage: non-fee-paying portfolios/composite carve-out portfolio/composite bundled fee portfolio/composite external valuation portfolio/composite

- ◆ 6.Real Estate: 房地产 (适用 REITS, 分为 open-ended REITS 和 close-ended REITS)
- ✓下列各项不适用 GIPS 的 real estate 准则: (适用于 0-5 section)
 - ✓ Publicly traded real estate securities: 房地产公司的股票
 - ✓ Commercial mortgage-backed securities (CMBS/商业地产的证券化产品)
 - ✓ Private debt investments, including commercial and residential loans: 私人贷款投资,包括商业或住宅地产贷款(把钱借给房地产公司)
- ◆ open-ended REITS: 开放式房地产投资依托基金
- **√**6.A.1 For periods>= 2011, valued in accordance with the definition of <u>fair value</u>: 2011 年之后,基于公允价值进行估值
- ★6.A.2 For periods>= 2008, be valued at least <u>quarterly</u>: 2008 年之后,(内部)至少每季度估值
- ✓ 6.A.4 Must have an external valuation: 必须有外部估值(独立第三方的估值)
 - ✓ a. Before 2012, at least once every 36 months: 2012 年之前最少每 36 个月
 - ✓ b. After 2012, at least once every 12 months: 2012 年之后最少每 12 个月

Portfolio and composite: monthly real estate: internal: quarterly; external: annually PE: annually

- **√**6.A.7 All returns must be calculated after the deduction of <u>actual transaction expenses</u> incurred during the period: 期间所有的收益率计算必须扣减真实的交易成本
- ✓ 6.A.8 After 2011, <u>income returns</u> and <u>capital returns</u> (component returns) must be calculated separately using <u>geometrically linked time-weighted rates of return</u>: 2011 年以后,利率类收益率和资本利得收益率必须按时间加权几何关联的方式独立计算

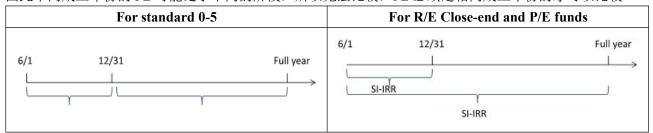
注意: 房地产业绩要披露 total return,同时披露 component returns,包括: capital return 和 income return,并披露两者对 total return 的百分比

- ✓ 6.A.10 g) adjustments to make the sum of the income return and the capital return equals the total return 调整 income return 和 capital return 的累加值(geometrically linked),使得两者相加等于 total return
- ★6.A.11 >=2006 GIPS and non-compliant performance may not be linked: Prior to this date, any such link must be disclosed: 2006 年以后遵循 GIPS 和未遵循 GIPS 的组合组不可关联 (按 GIPS 标准追溯调整后可关联); 2006 年之前的可以以关联 (无需追溯调整),但必须披露
- ★6.A.15 Firms must not link non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods >= 2006 to their GIPS-compliant performance. Firms may link non-GIPS-compliant performance to their GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods >= 2006



- ✓ 6.A.14 Firms must present component returns in addition to total returns. Composite component returns must be clearly identified as gross-of-fees or net-of-fees: 除了 total return 公司也必须披露 component returns,组合组的 component returns 必须清晰的表明是 gross-of-fees 或者 net-of-fees
- ★6.A.16 The following items must be presented in each compliant presentation: 必须展示
 - ✓ b. As of each annual period end, the percentage of composite assets valued using an external valuation during the annual period: 每年底披露,做过外部估值的投资组合占组合组的资产价值的百分比(比例越高,说明估值的客观性和独立性越强)
- ◆ close-ended REITS: 封闭式房地产投资依托基金(基金经理对现金流有一定控制力)
- 6.A.17 Firms must calculate annualized **since inception internal rates of return (SI-IRR)**: 公司必须每年 计算自成立之日起的 IRR(另外还需要披露 TWRR 的业绩)

披露 SI-IRR 的原因: 因为封闭式基金的基金经理对现金流有一定的控制权,再者封闭式 PE 的存续周期中,前期为投资期,期间几乎没有现金流流入,后期为退出期,期间开始出现大量现金流流入,因此如果以每年 link 的方式计算收益率,前期可能都是负数,不能很好的代表 PE 的业绩,另外 PE 分为前后两个阶段,因此不同成立年份的 PE 可能处于不同的阶段,所以无法比较, PE 必须是相同成立年份的才可以比较

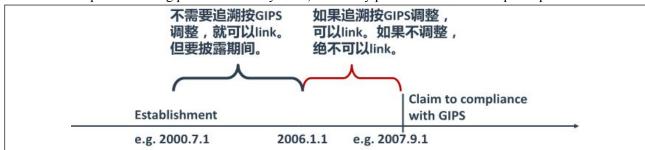


- **√**6.A.19 Composites must be defined by <u>vintage year</u> and investment mandate, objective, or strategy. The composite definition must remain consistent throughout the life of the composite: 组合组的定义必须基于成立年份和投资指令,目标,策略。组合组的定义在整个组合组的生命周期中必须保持一致
- 6.A.23 The following items must be presented in each compliant presentation: 必须展示
 - ✓ a. <u>Net-of-fees SI-IRR</u> of the composite, 5 years of <u>performance</u>, Each subsequent year, <u>an additional</u> <u>year of performance</u>: **close-ended REITS 要披露 Net-of-fees 的 SI-IRR**, 5 年的业绩(每年累加)
- ★6.A.25 Firms must present, as of each annual period end: 必须展示
 - ✓ a. composite since inception paid-in capital: 自成立之日起的实际支付的资本
 - ✓ b. composite since inception distributions: 自成立之日起的累计分配的利润
 - ✓ c. composite cumulative committed capital: 累计的承诺出资

- ✓ d. <u>TVPI</u>; e- <u>DPI</u>; f- <u>PIC</u>; g-<u>RVPI</u>: TVPI: total value/paid-in capital; DPI: distributed/paid-in capital; PIC: paid-in capital; RVPI: residual value/paid-in capital
- ✓ 6.A.26 SI-IRR of the benchmark through each annual period end. The benchmark must: 必须每年底披露 基准的 SI-IRR, 基准必须满足:
 - ✓ a.) reflect the investment mandate, objective, or strategy of the composite: 反应组合组的投资指令,目标和策略
 - ✓ b) same time period: 相同的时间期间
 - ✓ c) same vintage year: 相同的成立年份(成立年份不同的 PE 不可比较)
- ◆ 7.Private Equity: 私募股权基金(绝大多数条款与 close-ended REITS 相同)

PE 分为: primary funds (直投基金) and fund of funds (基金的基金)

- Private equity open-end and evergreen funds (类似 open-end) must follow Sections 0 5: 开放式 PE 必须 匹配 0-5 sections
- Real estate closed-end funds must follow Section 6: 房地产的封闭式 PE 必须匹配 6 section
- **√**7.A.1 After 2011, PE must be valued in accordance with the definition of fair value: 2011 年之后, PE 必须基于公允价值进行估值
- ★7.A.2 PE must be valued at least <u>annually</u>: PE 必须至少每年进行估值
- ✓7.A.3 Calculate annualized SI-IRR: 计算年化的自成立之日起的 IRR(另外还要计算 TWRR)
- **√** 7.A.9 Primary funds must be included in at least one composite defined by <u>vintage year</u> and <u>investment mandate</u>, <u>objective</u>, <u>or strategy</u>: 直投基金必须至少包含一个基于成立年份,投资指令,目标,策略所定义的组合组
- √7.A.21 a. <u>Both the net-of-fees and gross-of-fees SI-IRR</u>. <u>5 years of performance</u>. Each subsequent year, firms must present an additional year of performance. composite returns must be clearly identified as gross-of-fees or net-of-fees: 私募股权基金要披露 net-of-fees 和 gross-of-fees, 5 年的业绩
- 7.A.23 Just as 6.A.25: 必须披露 TVPI、DPI、PIC、RVPI
- 7.A.24 Just as 6.A.26: 每年底披露基准的 SI-IRR(相同成立年份,反应投资指令,目标和策略)
- ◆ ↑7.A.28 Firms must not present non-GIPS-compliant performance for periods ending on or after 1 January 2006. For periods ending prior to 1 January 2006, firms may present non-GIPS-compliant performance:



8.Wrap Fee/SMA Portfolio: 打包费用/专户投资

- ★8.A.6 Performance must be presented net of the entire wrap fee: 业绩展示: 1) 扣除真实交易费用; 2) 披露 bundled fee 中真实交易费用的百分比; 3) 真实交易费用未知则直接扣除 bundled fee(谨慎原则)
- ★ 8.A.7 Firms must not link non-GIPS-compliant performance after 2006 to their GIPS-compliant performance. firms may link non-GIPS-compliant performance to their GIPS-compliant performance provided that only GIPS-compliant performance is presented for periods after 2006



- ◆ Further Topics: 进一步(讨论的)主题
- Verification 针对 Firm; Examination 针对 composite
- 必须先做 Verification 再做 Examination
- Verification 和 Examination 都是自发性的,非强制要求
- 三种报告的标准段
- 关于 GIPS 估值的规定: 从好到坏,从客观到主观分为 1-4 类
- ◆ ★GIPS Advertising Guidelines: GIPS 广告准则
- ★GIPS 对广告的定义(1 对多发布): Any written material (other than one-on-one presentations and individual client reporting) distributed to maintain existing clients or solicit new clients for an advisor is considered an advertisement: 任何纸制的资料的分发,为了维护现有客户,吸引新客户都被认为是广告(除了 1 对 1 展示或向个别客户报告)
- ★All advertisements that include a claim of compliance with the GIPS standards by following the GIPS Advertising Guidelines MUST disclose the following: 打广告没有披露 composite return 的情况:
 - ✓ 1. The definition of the firm: 公司的定义
 - ✓ 2. How a prospective client can <u>obtain a compliant presentation</u> and/or the firm's list of composite descriptions: 潜在客店如何得到遵循 GIPS 规则的业绩展示和公司组合组的描述
 - ✓ 3. The GIPS compliance statement for advertisements: 广告中遵循 GIPS 的声明(使用广告标准段)
- ★All advertisements that include a claim of compliance with the GIPS Advertising Guidelines and that present performance results MUST also include the following information: 打广告且披露 composite return 的情况: 除了上述 1, 2, 3 项, 还要包括
 - ✓ 4. The composite description: 组合组的描述
 - ✓ ★5. Composite total returns according to one of the following: (Note: Returns for periods of less than one year MUST NOT be annualized): 基于下列项目的组合组的总收益率(业绩少于 1 年不得年化)
 - ❖ 1-,3-,5- annualized composite returns (or since the composite inception date): 1 年期, 3 年期, 5 年期年化的组合组收益率(或从组合组成立之日起)
 - ❖ Period-to-date composite returns + 1-,3-,5- annualized composite returns (or since ..): HPY+1 年期,3年期,5年期年化的组合组收益率(或从组合组成立之日起)
 - ❖ Period-to-date composite returns + 5 years of annual composite returns (or since…): HPY+过去 5 年每年的年化组合组收益率(或从组合组成立之日起)
 - ✓ 6. Performance is gross and/or net of fees: 业绩展示基于 gross-of-fee 或 net-of-fee
 - ✓ 7. Total return for <u>Benchmark</u>: 基准的总收益率
 - ✓ 8. Benchmark description: 基准的描述
 - ✓ 9. If no benchmark, why: 如果没有基准,是什么原因
 - ✓ 10. The currency for performance: 业绩的货币计量单位
- ◆ Challenges Related to Calculation of After-tax Returns:关于税后收益率计算的挑战
- GIPS standards do <u>not require</u> compliant firms to present after-tax returns for composites: GIPS 标准不要求公司展示税后的组合组业绩(没有合适的税后的基准)
- Challenges: 挑战
 - ✓ 1) Two methods: 两种方法
 - ❖ ✓ pre-liquidation: unrealized capital gains are untaxed ->understate the tax effect: 所有未实现的资本利得和损失都不征税,低估税收的影响
 - **❖ √** mark-to-liquidation: **all gains are taxed -> overstate the tax effect**: 所有利得都要征税,高估税收的影响
 - ❖ Not consider future gains or losses, thus not measure portfolio's true economic value: 没有考虑未来的利得和损失,没有衡量投资组合真正的经济价值
 - ✓ 2) no appropriate benchmark: 没有合适的(税后的)基准,可自定义一个基准
 - ✓ 3) client-directed trades that out of manager's control: 客户直接交易不受基金经理控制